



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

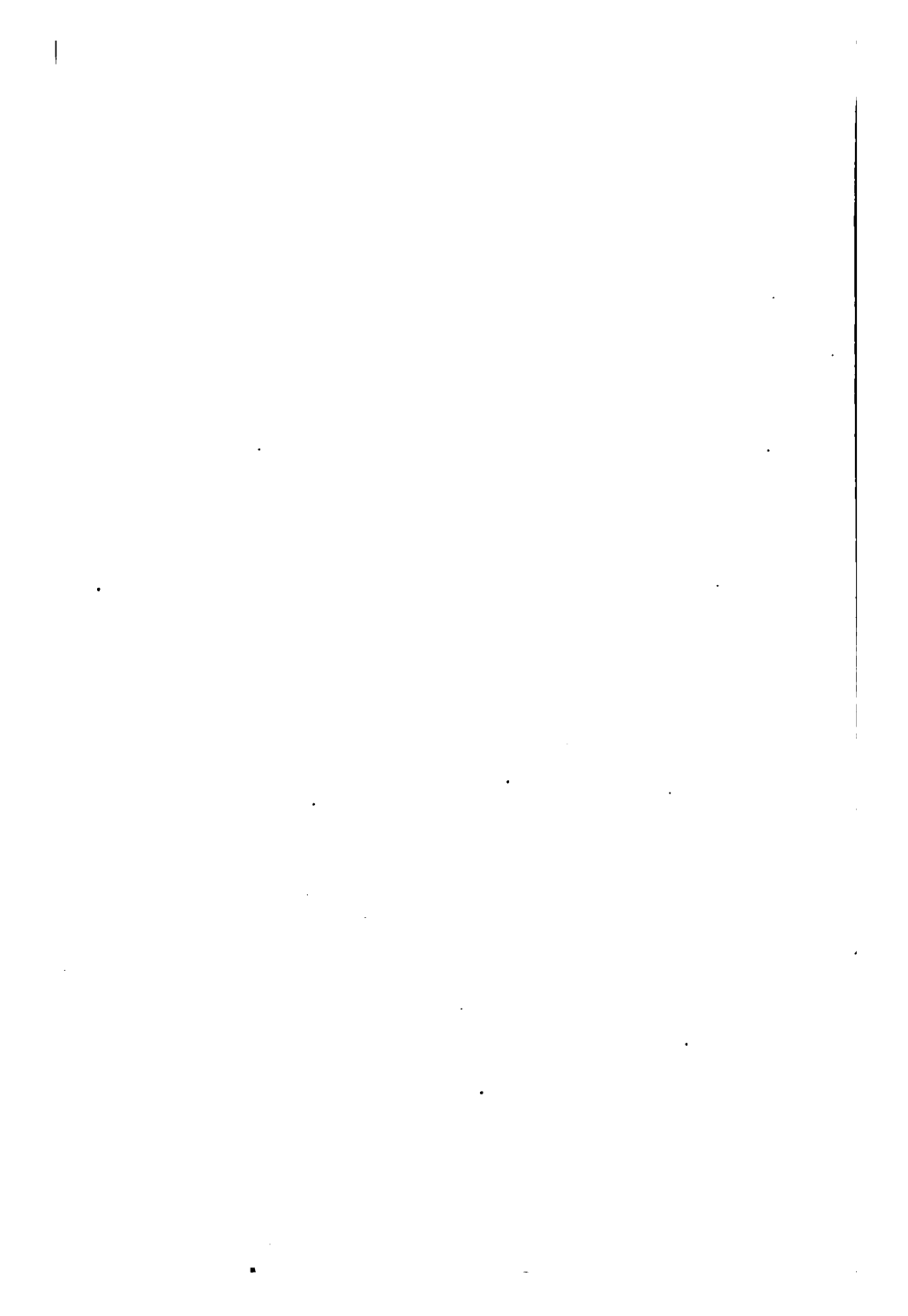
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

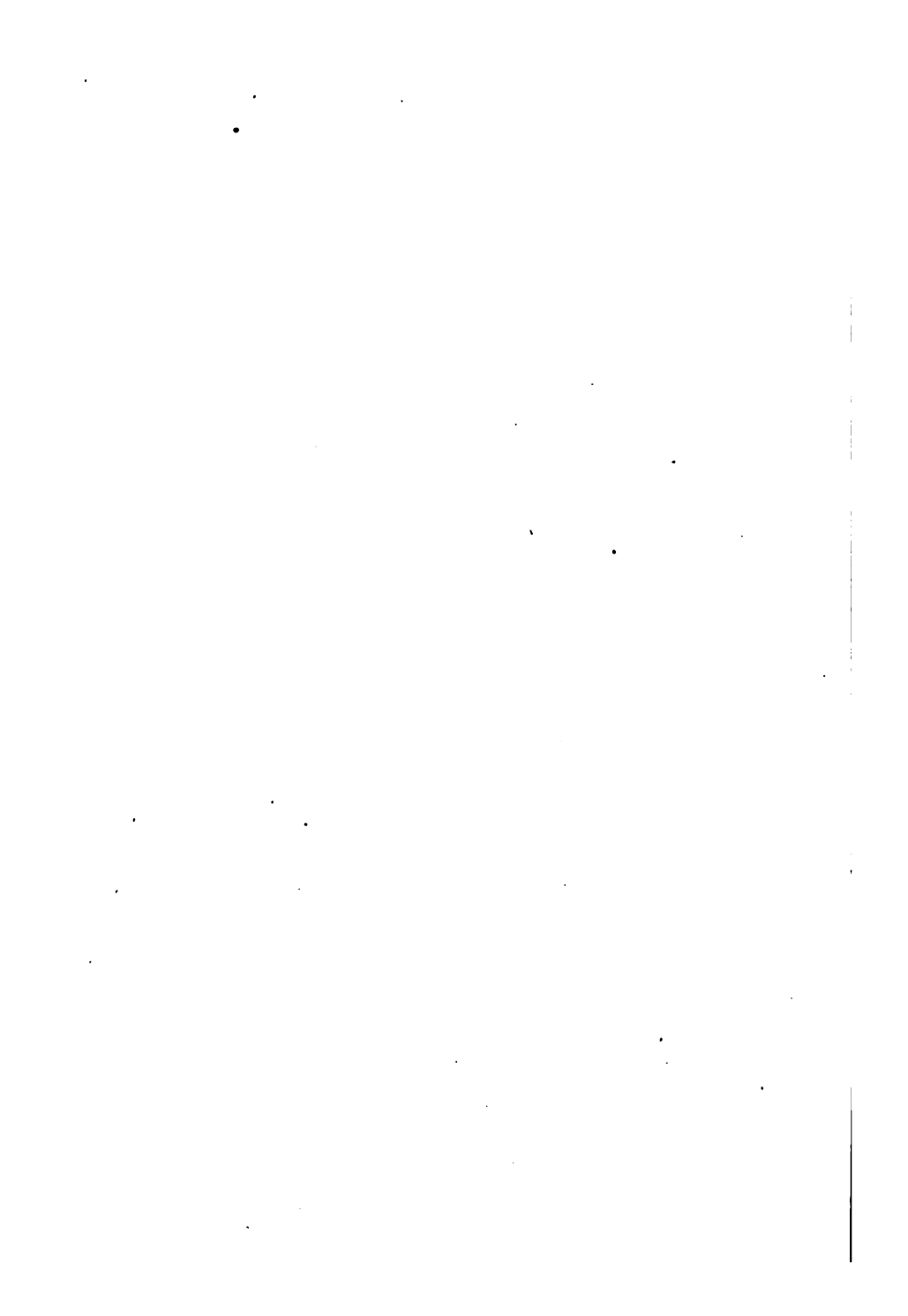
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



3 2044 097 074 496









JULIUS CAESAR.

Naples.

A FIRST YEAR LATIN COURSE

BY

JAMES B. SMILEY, A.M.

PRINCIPAL, LINCOLN HIGH SCHOOL, CLEVELAND, OHIO

AND

HELEN L. STORKE, A.B.

ASST. PRINCIPAL, WEST HIGH SCHOOL, CLEVELAND, OHIO



AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK

CINCINNATI

CHICAGO

~~F 113-8433~~
Educ T 919.14.785

Dept. of

JUN 21 1915

TRANSFERRED TO
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
JUNE 12 1929

COPYRIGHT, 1914, BY
JAMES B. SMILEY AND HELEN L. STORKE.

COPYRIGHT, 1914, IN GREAT BRITAIN.

FIRST YEAR LATIN COURSE.

E. P. I

PREFACE

THE aim of this book is to furnish to the pupil an adequate preparation for the intelligent reading of Caesar. Its vocabulary consists almost entirely of words used at least five times in the *Gallic War* or the *Civil War*. Many of them are common to Caesar, Nepos, and the *Viri Romae*, and many are found also in Cicero and Vergil. They are mostly of concrete signification and include a number of compound verbs whose meanings are easily derived from those of the primitive verb and the prepositional prefix. Their conquest will afford an efficient help in the sight reading of the second year, as well as in the translation of Caesar.

The selection of words has been made by the authors from the texts themselves, and these words have been verified by reference to Lodge's *Vocabulary of High School Latin*, and Browne's *Latin Word-List*. The special vocabularies have been gathered into lists which appear at intervals throughout the book, giving opportunity for the study of English derivatives and for almost unlimited exercises in form and construction.

The noun and the verb have been treated in alternating series of lessons in such a way as to give variety and scope to the work. The passive voice appears in the twelfth lesson and is used constantly in connection with the active voice to the end of the book. The subjunctive mood has been introduced quite early, and repeated practice in its use provided. The infinitive and the participle have been devel-

oped gradually and their uses clearly defined. The bases of nouns and the several verb stems are so clearly presented that the learning of forms is greatly simplified.

The constructions introduced are, with few exceptions, those most frequently used by Caesar. We have not hesitated, however, to include in these exceptions the conditional sentence, the active periphrastic conjugation, and the former and latter supine; but we have so placed and treated these that any teacher who desires to omit them can do so without detriment to the rest of the work.

Special attention has been given to the explanation of the Ablative Absolute and Indirect Discourse. Repeated examples and exercises illustrate and clinch these difficult subjects, and clear directions emphasize the difference between the English and the Latin idioms.

The personal, demonstrative, reflexive, and possessive pronouns have been discussed carefully and thoroughly and the distinctions in their use made very evident.

Reading lessons, forty-six in number, occur at intervals at first, and later in successive lessons throughout the book. They increase in difficulty by easy stages and are gradually led up to by vocabulary, forms, and constructions found in preceding lessons. They are, with two exceptions, either adapted from Caesar or taken directly from the easier portions of his text.

The Latin syntax has been presented from the English point of view. It has not been thought best to assume the pupil's previous knowledge of even the simplest facts of English grammar. The space occupied by this feature of the book is fully offset by the greater ease with which the student will grasp the subject.

Word formation and derivation, suggested and carried

forward by the use of the word lists, are systematically treated in Lessons 45 and 46 and illustrated in brief exercises in the succeeding lessons. Attention to these subjects will greatly aid the pupil in acquiring a Latin vocabulary and will keep constantly before his mind the debt our language owes to the Latin.

Every lesson not only contains new material, but is in itself a review of preceding lessons. In addition special reviews occur from time to time, and a general review of forms and constructions is found in the concluding lessons of the book.

The appendix contains 77 pages of supplementary matter, including tables of forms, a classified statement of rules of syntax, a list of abbreviations, the general vocabularies, and a carefully prepared and complete index.

Numerous illustrations bring before the eyes of the pupil the arms and utensils which the Romans used, their homes and camps, the way they lived, the country they inhabited, the things they did, the wars they fought, the conquests they won, the triumphs they celebrated. The historical and cultural value of such illustrations is self-evident.

We send forth this book in the belief that, by preparing the student gradually and surely for the work of the later years of his school life, it will accomplish the purpose for which it was written.

JAMES B. SMILEY,
HELEN L. STORKE.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS	11
HINTS TO PUPILS	13
LESSON	
1. The Alphabet — Pronunciation	15
2. Syllables — Quantity — Accent	16
3. The Sentence — Parts of Speech	19
4. Inflection — Case; Nominative, Accusative, Genitive	21
5. Case (<i>Continued</i>) — Direct and Indirect Object — Number — Verb Agreement	27
6. Case (<i>Continued</i>) — The Ablative and the Vocative	30
7. Gender — Adjective Agreement	33
8. The First Declension	37
9. Verb Inflection — Present Tense of <i>vocō</i> , Active Voice, In- dicative Mood	39
10. Principal Parts — The First Conjugation — Active Voice, In- dicative Mood, Imperfect and Future Tenses — Review 59-63, 65-69	43
11. The Second Conjugation — Active Voice, Indicative Mood, Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses — Order of Words	48
12. First and Second Conjugations — Passive Indicative, Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses — Predicate Nominative and Appositive	52
13. Use of Word Lists — Word List I — How to Translate — Reading Lesson	57
14. The Second Declension, Nouns in <i>-us</i> and <i>-um</i>	59
15. The Second Declension (<i>Continued</i>), Nouns in <i>-ius</i> and <i>-ium</i>	62
16. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions in <i>-us</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> — Reading Lesson	64
17. The Third Conjugation — Active Indicative, Present, Imper- fect, and Future Tenses — The Ablative of Separation	68

CONTENTS

7

LESSON	PAGE
18. The Second Declension (<i>Continued</i>), Nouns in <i>-er</i> and <i>-ir</i> — The Complementary Infinitive — The Infinitive as Subject and Object — Reading Lesson	73
19. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions in <i>-er</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> — The Ablative of Means or Instrument — Word List II	77
20. The Third Declension, Consonant Stems — Reading Lesson	81
21. The Third Declension, Consonant Stems (<i>Continued</i>)	85
22. The Fourth Conjugation — Active Indicative, Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses — The Ablative of Specification	88
23. The Third Conjugation — Verbs in <i>-iō</i> — Active Indicative, Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses — <i>sum</i> — The Dative of the Possessor — Reading Lesson — Word List III	91
24. The Third and Fourth Conjugations — Passive Indicative, Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses — The Ablative of the Personal Agent — Review of Forms in Lesson 12	96
25. The Third Conjugation — Verbs in <i>-iō</i> — Passive Indicative, Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses — Synopses	100
26. The Third Declension, I-Stems — The Ablative of Accompaniment — Reading Lesson	103
27. Review of the Third Declension — Two Accusatives — Adjectives used as Nouns — Classes of Sentences	108
28. Adjectives of the Third Declension — The Present Participle — Reading Lesson — Word List IV	111
29. The First Conjugation — Active Indicative, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses — The Ablative and Genitive of Description	116
30. The Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations — Active Indicative, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses — The Ablative of Manner — Reading Lesson	122
31. Simple Examples of Indirect Discourse	127
32. The Participle — The Ablative Absolute	130
33. The Demonstrative Pronoun <i>is</i> — The Possessive Pronouns — Reading Lesson	136
34. The Fourth Declension — The Relative Pronoun — Reading Lesson	142

LESSON	PAGE
35. The Passive Voice, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses — The Ablative of Cause	147
36. The Subjunctive Mood — <i>sum</i> — Independent Uses of the Subjunctive — Reading Lesson — Word List V	152
37. The Subjunctive Mood, First Conjugation — Sequence of Tenses — Reading Lesson	158
38. The Subjunctive Mood, Second Conjugation — Adverbial and Adjectival Clauses of Purpose	162
39. The Cardinal Numerals — The Accusative of Time and Space — Reading Lesson	165
40. The Subjunctive Mood, Third Conjugation — Substantive Clauses of Purpose with <i>ut</i> and <i>nē</i> — The Double Dative — Reading Lesson	169
41. The Subjunctive Mood, Fourth Conjugation and <i>-iō</i> Verbs of the Third — Review of Purpose Clauses — Verbs of Fearing	174
42. The Third Declension, General Rules for Gender — Irregular Nouns — Reading Lesson	177
43. The Ordinal Numerals — The Fifth Declension — The Ablative of Time — Reading Lesson — Word List VI	181
44. The Classes of Pronouns — Personal and Reflexive Pronouns	186
45. Word Formation	191
46. Word Formation (<i>Continued</i>) — Root <i>duc-</i>	193
47. Comparison of Adjectives, Regular — Constructions with Comparatives — Reading Lesson — Root <i>spec-</i>	197
48. Tenses of the Infinitive — Indirect Discourse (<i>Continued</i>) — <i>possum</i> — Reading Lesson — Root <i>mit-</i>	202
49. The Comparison of Adjectives, Irregular — The Dative with Adjectives — Reading Lesson — Root <i>fac-</i>	208
50. Adverbial and Substantive Clauses of Result — Review of the Subjunctive Mood — Reading Lesson — Word List VII — Root <i>leg-</i>	213
51. Irregular Adjectives — Review of Comparison — Subjunctive of Characteristic — Reading Lesson — Root <i>ac-</i>	218
52. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs — Review of Comparison of Adjectives — Reading Lesson — Root <i>sta-</i>	223

CONTENTS

9

LESSON	PAGE
53. The Interrogative Pronoun — Direct and Indirect Questions — Reading Lesson — Root <i>fā-</i>	226
54. Review of the Passive Voice — Questions with <i>nōnne</i> , <i>num</i> and <i>-ne</i> — Reading Lesson — Root <i>dic-</i>	230
55. Deponent Verbs — The Ablative with Certain Deponents — Reading Lesson — Root <i>es-</i> — Word List VIII	233
56. Semi-Deponents — Dative with Special Verbs — Reading Lesson — Root <i>da-</i>	238
57. The Demonstrative and Intensive Pronouns — Reading Les- son — Root <i>ag-</i>	241
58. The Gerund — Reading Lesson — Root <i>ten-</i>	246
59. The Gerund and Gerundive — Some Ways of Expressing Purpose — Reading Lesson — Root <i>cap-</i>	250
60. Prepositions — Review of Means and Agency — Reading Lesson — Root <i>reg-</i> — Word List IX	255
61. Constructions of Place — Root <i>man-</i> , <i>ma-</i>	260
62. Review of Cardinals and Ordinals — Ablative of Degree of Difference — <i>cum</i> Causal and Concessive — Reading Lesson — Root <i>lūc-</i>	264
63. Compounds of <i>sum</i> — Review of Purpose and Result Clauses — Reading Lesson — Root <i>mu-</i> , <i>mov-</i>	267
64. The Irregular Verb <i>ferō</i> and its Compounds — The Dative with Compounds — Reading Lesson — Root <i>fer-</i>	271
65. The Indefinite Pronoun — The Genitive of the Whole — Reading Lesson — Root <i>iug-</i>	277
66. The Irregular Verb <i>volō</i> and its Compounds — Temporal Clauses — Reading Lesson — Root <i>ped-</i>	282
67. The Irregular Verbs <i>ōō</i> and <i>fiō</i> — Review of the Irregular Verbs — Reading Lesson — Root <i>i-</i> — Word List X	288
68. Noun and Adjective Review — The Conditional Sentences — Conditions of Fact — Reading Lesson — Root <i>clā-</i>	293
69. Noun and Adjective Review (<i>Continued</i>) — Conditions Con- trary to Fact — Reading Lesson — Root <i>voc-</i>	297
70. Noun Review — Review of Conditions of Fact and Contrary to Fact — Conditions of Possibility — Reading Lesson — Root <i>flu-</i>	301

LESSON	PAGE
71. The Imperative Mood — Review of Nouns Completed — Reading Lesson — Root <i>cad-</i> — Word List XI	304
72. Pronoun Review — The Imperative Mood, Irregular Verbs — Reading Lesson — Root <i>col-</i>	309
73. General Verb Review — The Supine — Expressions of Pur- pose — Reading Lesson — Root <i>hab-</i>	313
74. Review of Agreement — The Periphrastic Conjugations — Reading Lesson	317
75. Review of Case Constructions — Complex Sentences in In- direct Discourse — Reading Lesson	322
76. Review of Case Constructions (<i>Continued</i>) — Reading Lesson	327
77. Review of Clause Constructions, Gerund, Gerundive, Supine — Reading Lesson — Word List XII	329
 TABLES OF DECLENSIONS	 333
TABLES OF CONJUGATIONS	342
RULES OF SYNTAX	358
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS	368
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	369
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	392
INDEX	405

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS

1. Every Latin exercise should be carefully pronounced by the pupils.

2. Groups of words in common phrases should be committed to memory and frequently recited, and brief passages in Latin prose should be learned by the pupils.

3. No word should be accepted as correctly written unless every syllable long by nature has its mark of quantity.

4. Constant attention should be called to related words.

5. The word lists should be made in each case a separate lesson and used for emphasizing suggestion 4, as well as for drill in remembering words.

6. "Vocabulary and form" should be made a daily watchword, and frequent attention should be called to the terminal parts of inflected words as showing their relation to others.

7. Rapid oral work should be demanded in translating from Latin into English and from English into Latin.

8. Easy sight sentences and dictation exercises in Latin may very profitably be given to the pupil.

9. No pupil should be allowed in translating to violate in the slightest degree the purity of the English idiom.

10. Stories of Roman life should be told in the class and the pupils encouraged in every way to learn more of the people whose language they are studying; Caesar,

Cicero, Pompey, and other eminent Romans should be made living personalities to them.

11. Some ideas of the house and of the home life of the Romans should be given to the pupils.

12. The Roman arms, armor, and utensils should be described and, as far as possible, shown in pictures and models. The illustrations in this book could be made the basis of profitable study along these lines.



ARCH OF CONSTANTINE.



A ROMAN SCHOOL.

HINTS TO PUPILS

1. Observe closely every word, form, and construction as you meet it in your work. In your written work mark the quantity of all vowels long by nature.

2. Study every note and follow up every reference, grasping and remembering each point discussed.

3. Learn each lesson with absolute thoroughness.

4. Connect each lesson with the preceding one by a systematic review in thought of its prominent points. No teacher's assigned review can benefit you so much.

5. Compare words with one another and note carefully those that are related in form and meaning.

6. Observe the turn in meaning given to the body or root of a word by the various prefixes and suffixes.

7. Try to gain an idea of a new sentence or paragraph by seeing the words in the Latin order. Think your way into the meaning. Use your imagination to guide you in deciding what a person would be likely to say under the circumstances.

8. Consult the general vocabulary sparingly, and never until you have used your utmost endeavor to discern the meaning of a word through association or connection.

9. Observe sharply and pronounce accurately such words as you must look up, and make them thoroughly your own. Then turn to the vocabulary for their meaning.

10. Learn to use all helps in the most effective way. Look up all references and learn them. Never shirk the effort to understand and use every suggestion made in note and example.

11. Read these hints frequently and follow the instructions here given.

A FIRST YEAR LATIN COURSE

LESSON 1

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet has twenty-four letters, and is the same as the English, except that it lacks *j* and *w*. The character *i* has the force of both a vowel and a consonant; *k* is seldom used; *y* and *z* occur chiefly in words borrowed from the Greek.

2. **Vowels.** — The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*; the other letters are consonants.

3. Vowels may be either long or short. In this book long vowels are marked (-); all others are to be regarded as short.

PRONUNCIATION

4. The vowels are pronounced as follows:—

ā like the second *a* in *aha'* *a* like the first *a* in *aha'*

ē like *e* in *prey* *e* like *e* in *met*

ī like *i* in *machine* *i* like *i* in *pin*

ō like *o* in *tone* *o* like *o* in *obey*

ū like *oo* in *tool* *u* like *oo* in *took*

y is pronounced like the German *ü*, a sound intermediate between *u* and *i*.

5. The diphthongs are pronounced as follows : —

ae like *ai* in *aisle*

oe like *oi* in *toil*

au like *ou* in *our*

eu nearly like *eu* in *feud*¹

ei like *ei* in *eight*

ui nearly like *ui* in *quit*¹

6. Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. The following points are to be emphasized : —

c is like *c* in *can*

ch, ph, and th are like *k, p,*
and *t*, followed by a faint

g is like *g* in *go*

h sound ; cf. Eng. *uphill*

i consonant² is like *y* in *yes*

n before **c, g, gu,** is like *ng*
in *bringing*

s is like *s* in *so*

t is like *t* in *tin*

v is like *w* in *wine*

gu and **qu,** sometimes **su** be-
fore a vowel, are like *gw,*
qw, and *sw* ; here **u** is not
a vowel

x is like *x* in *extra*

bs is like *ps* in *lips*

bt is like *pt* in *apt*

h is a mere breathing

NOTE. — Doubled consonants stand for distinct sounds and should be pronounced separately with a slight pause between them ; *ges'-sus*. In all consonant combinations each letter should have its distinct sound.

LESSON 2

SYLLABLES — QUANTITY — ACCENT

7. **Syllables.** — Each Latin word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels and diphthongs.

¹ But with both vowels pronounced.

² **i** is usually a consonant when it stands between two vowels, or before a vowel at the beginning of a word ; *cuius*, pronounced *coo'-yus* ; *iam*, pronounced *yam*.

8. A single consonant between two vowels is joined with the following vowel: **a'-ni-mus**, *mind*.

9. Doubled consonants are always separated: **pu-el'-la**, *girl*.

10. When two or more consonants stand between two vowels, the division is made after the first; but a consonant is never separated from **l** or **r** immediately following: **e-pis'-tu-la**, *letter*; **mag'-nus**, *great*; but **tri'-plex**, *triple*; **ma-gis'-tri**, *masters*. In compounds the component parts are separated: **sub'-levō**, *I lift up*.

11. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before that, the *antepenult*.

12. **Quantity of Vowels.** — The quantity of a vowel or a syllable is determined by the time used in pronouncing it. A long syllable requires twice the time of a short syllable. Difference in the quantity of a vowel represents also an actual difference in sound.

NOTE. — A few general rules for determining the lengths of vowels are here given, but in many cases the quantity can be learned from observation only. The pupil should carefully observe and learn the length of each vowel in every Latin word as it first occurs in this book. Too much stress cannot be laid upon this point.

1. A vowel before another vowel or **h** is short: **cō'-pi-a**, *abundance*; **mi'-hi**, *to me*.

2. A vowel before **nd** and **nt** is short, also before final **m** and **t**; and before final **l** and **r**, except in words of one syllable: **sūm**, *I am*; **vō'-cāt**, *he calls*; **a'-ni-māl**, *animal*; **a'-mōr**, *love*; but **sōl**, *sun*; **pār**, *equal*.

3. A vowel formed by contraction is long: **nīl**, contracted from **nī'-hil**, *nothing*.

4. A vowel before **nf**, **ns**, **nx**, **nct**, is long : **in'-fe-rō**, *bring in* ; **in'-su-la**, *island* ; **iūn'-xl**, *I joined* ; **iūnc'-tus**, *joined*.

5. Diphthongs are long : **cāū'-sa**, *cause*.

13. **Quantity of Syllables.** — 1. A syllable is short if it ends in a short vowel. In the case of final syllables, the short vowel may be followed by a single consonant ; as, in **ā-mā'-bām** the first and last syllables are short.

2. A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is long by nature : **āē'-dēs**, *temple*.

3. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by a double consonant, or by two or more consonants, is long by position, but the vowel retains its short sound : **mīt'-tō**, *I send* ; **vo'-cānt**, *they call*. In these words **i** and **a** are short, as marked ; but the syllables in which they stand are long.

14. **Accent.** — 1. Words of two syllables are accented on the penult : **mā'-ter**, *mother* ; **pa'-ter**, *father*.

2. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult : **a-mī'-cus**, *friend* ; **vo-can'-tur**, *they are called* ; but **do'-mī-nus**, *master*.

3. The ultima is never accented.

4. Certain words, like **-ne**, sign of a question, **-que**, *and*, and **-ve**, *or*, called enclitics and always attached to some other word, draw the accent to the syllable next preceding, whether this is long or short : **vo-cās'-ne**, *do you call?* **vo-cat'-ne**, *does he call?* **rē-gī-na'-que**, *and the queen*.

15. The following list of words should be divided into syllables, accented, and properly pronounced : —

bene, <i>well</i>	idem (neut.), <i>the same</i>	mihi, <i>to me</i>
cotidiē, <i>daily</i>	inferō, <i>I bring in</i>	modo, <i>only</i>
dēbeō, <i>I owe</i>	insula, <i>island</i>	pater, <i>father</i>
enim, <i>for</i>	ita, <i>thus</i>	quia, <i>because</i>
etiam, <i>also</i>	Italia, <i>Italy</i>	quidam, <i>a certain</i>
ferē, <i>almost</i>	item, <i>likewise</i>	one
filius, <i>son</i>	magistri, <i>masters</i>	rēgina, <i>queen</i>
idem (masc.), <i>the</i> <i>same</i>	māter, <i>mother</i>	rēgnō, <i>I rule</i>
		sagitta, <i>arrow</i>

LESSON 3

THE SENTENCE—PARTS OF SPEECH

16. **The Sentence.**—A thought expressed in words is called a sentence: *agricola arat, the farmer plows.* The words which make up sentences are grouped in classes called Parts of Speech.

17. **Parts of Speech.**—1. A noun is the name of a person, place, or thing: *puella, girl; Rōma, Rome; rosa, rose.*

2. A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun to avoid repetition. John studies Latin, *he* is an able boy; *ego, I; quis? who?*

3. An adjective is used to describe a noun or pronoun, or to limit its meaning: *puella bona, a good girl; ille puer, that boy; fossa est alta, the ditch is deep.*

4. A verb is a word used to express an act or state (of some person, place, or thing): *nauta nat, the sailor swims; mūsa est dea, the muse is a goddess.*

5. An adverb is a word used to modify a verb, adjective,

or other adverb: *agricola saepe nat*, *the farmer often swims*; *nimis acer*, *too keen*; *nimis acriter*, *too keenly*.

6. A preposition is a word used to show the relation of a word to some noun or pronoun: *nauta ā ripā properat*, *the sailor hastens from the river bank*.

7. A conjunction is a word used to connect words or groups of words: *nauta et agricola nant*, *the sailor and the farmer swim*. The English words *when*, *where*, etc., and their Latin equivalents, are often used as conjunctions.

8. An interjection is a word used to show some sudden emotion: *heu!* *alas!*

18. **Subject and Predicate.**—Every sentence has two parts, the subject and the predicate. The subject is that of which something is asserted, and is therefore a noun, or some word or group of words which can fill the same office. The predicate is that which is asserted of the subject, and is a verb with or without modifying or connected words.

SUBJECT	PREDICATE
<i>agricola</i> ¹	<i>arat</i>
<i>the farmer</i>	<i>plows</i>
<i>mūsa</i>	<i>est dea</i>
<i>a muse</i>	<i>is a goddess</i>

19. In the sentence, *The queen loves her² daughter*, *Rēgina filiam amat*, the act expressed by *loves*, *amat*, passes over from the subject, *queen*, *rēgina*, to another word *daughter*, *filiam*, called the object. Such verbs are said to

¹ The words *a* or *an*, and *the*, called articles in English, do not occur in Latin; *agricola* means *farmer*, *a farmer*, or *the farmer*.

² Such words as *my*, *his*, *her*, etc., called possessive adjectives, are not translated into Latin except for emphasis or clearness.

be transitive. When the act does not pass over to an object, the verb is intransitive. Certain verbs, like **est**, *is*, **vidētur**, *seems*, are used to join the subject with some other word. Such verbs are called copulative: **mūsa est dea**, *a muse is a goddess*.

In the following sentences, name the parts of speech; subjects, predicates, transitive, intransitive, and copulative verbs:—

1. We learn Latin most easily when we learn our daily lessons perfectly.
2. "That life is long which answers life's great end."
3. "O Rome! my country, city of the soul!"
4. He came on the following day from the forest into the camp by the side of the river.

LESSON 4

INFLECTION—CASE; NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, GENITIVE

20. **Inflection.**—Certain words change their form to show some change in meaning or use. This change is called inflection. The inflection of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called declension. The inflection of verbs is called conjugation: *girl*, **puella**; *girl's*, **puellae**; *star*, **stella**; *stars*, **stellae**; *who?* **quis?** *whose?* **cuius?** *was*, **erat**; *will be*, **erit**.

21. **Stem.**—That part of a word to which terminations are attached is called the stem. These terminations cannot in all instances be separated from their combination with the final vowel of the stem, which is frequently

lost or changed before them. In this book the term "case ending," or simply "ending," is used to represent this combination of the final vowel of the stem with the termination.

22. **Base.**— That part of a word which remains unchanged in inflection is called the base. A noun is declined by joining to the base the proper case endings.

23. **Case.**— The form of a noun, pronoun, or adjective used to show its relation to other words gives what we call case. In the sentence, *The farmer plows*, *farmer* is the subject; in its Latin translation, **Agricola arat**, **agricola** is the subject (18). Words so used are said to be in the nominative case. This relation is indicated in such words as **agricola** by the case ending **-a**. **Agricol-**, the part to which the case ending is added, is the base.

24.

RULE

Case of the Subject.— *The subject of a finite¹ verb is in the nominative case.*

25. **The Genitive Case.**— In the expression, *the sailor's anchor*, the word *sailor's* limits the word *anchor*, shows the possessor of the anchor, and is in the possessive case. The sign of the possessive case is 's or the simple apostrophe. In the Latin translation, **ancora nautae**, the relation of **nautae**, the possessor, to **ancora**, the thing possessed, is shown by the ending **-ae**. The case used is called the genitive and corresponds in many of its uses to the English possessive, or to the objective with *of*.

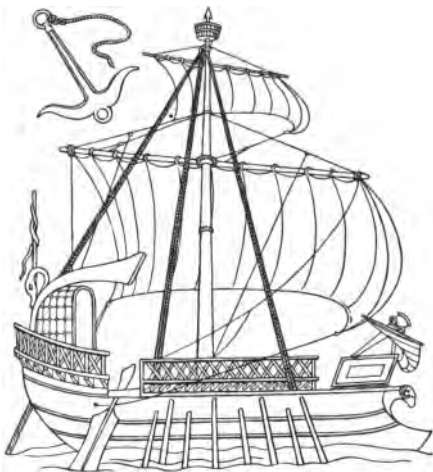
¹A finite verb is one used in the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Imperative Mood. These terms will be defined later.

26.

RULE

The Possessive Genitive. — *A noun denoting the owner or possessor of a thing limits the word denoting the thing possessed, and is in the genitive case.*

27. The Accusative Case. — In the sentence, *The queen gives money*, the word *money* is the direct object of *gives* and is in the objective case. In the Latin translation, **Rēgīna pecūniam dat, pecūniam** is the direct object of **dat** and is in the accusative case, which in many of its uses corresponds to the English objective. This relation is shown, in words having the nominative in *-a* and the genitive in *-ae*, by the case ending *-am*.



ROMAN WAR GALLEY AND ANCHOR.

28. The object in English has the same form as the subject, except in the case of a few pronouns, as: *whom, him, me*. The order of the words shows their relation. In Latin the order of words does not in general affect the meaning in this way, as is shown by the following sentences, each of which means, *The queen loves the girl*.

- a. 1. Rēgīna puellam amat.
2. Rēgīna amat puellam.
3. Puellam rēgīna amat.

In the following, however, each means, *The girl loves the queen.*

- b. 1. *Puella rēginam amat.*
2. *Puella amat rēginam.*
3. *Rēginam puella amat.*

Note carefully the endings of the subjects and objects in the above sentences.

29.

RULES

Case of Direct Object. — *The direct object of a transitive verb represents that to which something is done, and is in the accusative case.*

Case Relations. — *Case relations in Latin are shown by case endings, not by the order of words.*

30. Learn the following list of words, being careful to give the correct pronunciation and accent. Divide the words into syllables.

NOM.	GEN.	MEANING	NOM.	GEN.	MEANING
agricola	agricolae	farmer	fuga	fugae	flight
ancora	ancorae	anchor	nauta	nautae	sailor
Diāna	Diānae	Diana	puella	puellae	girl
filia	filiae	daughter	rēgina	rēginae	queen
rosa	rosae	rose	sagitta	sagittae	arrow

amat,¹ *he loves*

arat, *he plows*

laudat, *he praises*

portat, *he carries*

31. We have already seen that the base of a noun is the part which remains unchanged in inflection. It is found by dropping any case ending. What is the base of each of the above nouns? What are the endings of the nom-

¹ amat means: *he loves, she loves, it loves, or, with a noun as subject, simply loves.* So, also, of other verbs.

inative, genitive, and accusative cases? The accusative forms of these nouns?

32.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Sagitta Diānae, ancora nautae, rosa puellae, filia rēginae, fuga agricolae. 2. Puella sagittam portat.



ROMAN PLOW.

3. Puella sagittam Diānae portat. 4. Rēgina puellam laudat. 5. Rēgina sagittam portat. 6. Puella rēginam laudat.

II. 1. The girl's rose, the sailor's flight, Diana's arrow.
2. The farmer praises the sailor. 3. The girl carries an arrow.
4. The sailor praises the farmer. 5. The queen loves the girl.

Write 2 and 4, using three different arrangements of the words and paying careful attention to the case endings.



DIANA OF THE LOUVRE.

LESSON 5

CASE (*Continued*) — DIRECT AND INDIRECT OBJECT —
NUMBER — VERB AGREEMENT

33. The Dative Case. — In the sentence, *The queen gives her daughter money*, *daughter* is the indirect object of *gives*, and *money* the direct object. This sentence may also be written, *The queen gives money to her daughter*. In Latin one form only is used: **Rēgina filiae pecūniam dat.** Here *filiae* is the indirect object of **dat** and is in a case called the dative. The relation of indirect objects, in words having the nominative in **-a** and the genitive in **-ae**, is expressed by the ending **-ae**. Observe that **pecūniam**, the direct object, is used to denote the thing given, in connection with the indirect object denoting the person to whom it is given. The indirect object usually precedes the direct.

34.

RULES

1. The Indirect Object. — *The indirect object is in the dative case with verbs of giving, telling, and announcing, and others of similar meaning, to denote the person to whom anything is given, told, announced, etc.*

2. The Direct and Indirect Object. — *A direct object may be used in connection with an indirect object of the same verb.*

CAUTION. — Do not use the dative case to express motion to a person, place, or thing. Prepositions with the accusative case show this relation.

35. Number. — In English when we mention one person, place, or thing, we use a word in a certain form. When

we mention more than one we change this form, generally by adding *-s* or *-es* to the word: *boy*, pl. *boys*; *box*, pl. *boxes*. In Latin for the same purpose we change the form by adding certain case endings to the base. This distinction in form is called number. In Latin, as in English, there are two numbers, the singular and the plural.

36. In the following table name base and case endings:—

PLURAL

NOM. **puellae**, *the girls* (as subject)

GEN. **puellārum**, *of the girls, the girls'*

DAT. **puellis**, *to or for the girls*

ACC. **puellās**, *the girls* (as object)

What case endings already given are like that of the nominative plural? Does this ending always show the same relation? Prove your answer.



SILVER COINS OF CAESAR, SHOWING GALLIC TROPHIES.

cōpia, *abundance*

dat, *gives*

mūsa, *muse*

nāvigat, *sails*

pecūnia, *money*

nūntiat, *announces, reports*

parat, *prepares, prepares for, provides*

37. Learn the above list of words. Write in a table like the following the declension of the nouns through the four cases already learned.

rēgina, queen, base rēgin-

	SINGULAR	ENDING
N.	rēgīna, <i>the queen</i> (as subject)	-a
G.	rēgīnae, <i>of the queen, the queen's</i>	-ae
D.	rēgīnae, <i>to or for the queen</i>	-ae
Ac.	rēgīnam, <i>the queen</i> (as object)	-am

	PLURAL	ENDING
N.	rēgīnae, <i>the queens</i> (as subject)	-ae
G.	rēgīnārum, <i>of the queens, the queens'</i>	-ārum
D.	rēgīnis, <i>to or for the queens</i>	-is
Ac.	rēgīnās, <i>the queens</i> (as object)	-ās

Decline the same words orally, giving base, cases, forms, case endings, and meanings of forms.

38. Agreement of Verb. — When the subject changes from the singular to the plural, the verb also changes its form and is said to agree with its subject: **nauta nat**, *the sailor swims*; **nautae nant**, *the sailors swim*. Here -t is a singular, -nt a plural, ending. These endings show also that the subject is the person or persons spoken of (the third person), as distinguished from the speaker (the first person) and the person spoken to (the second person). They are therefore called personal endings.



ROMAN SILVER
COIN USED IN
GAUL, SHOWING
HEAD OF GAL-
LIC WOMAN.

39. RULE

Verb Agreement. — *A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

40.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Pecūnia rēginārum, rosae agricolārum, cōpia pecūniae. 2. Puella mūsās amat.

3. Nautae puellis rosās dant. 4. Agricola rēginis fugam nautārum nūntiat. 5. Nautae fugam parant. 6. Rēgina nautis pecūniam dat.



COINS OF LITAVICOS AND EPASNACTUS,
GERMAN CHIEFTAINS.

II. 1. The farmers (as subject), of the farmers, to the farmers, the farmers'. 2. The girls give roses to the queens. 3. The farmer gives money to the sailors. 4. The queen's daughters

give money to the girls. 5. The farmer reports to the queen the flight of the sailors. 6. The sailor reports to the queen the flight of the farmers.

LESSON 6

CASE (*Continued*)—THE ABLATIVE AND THE VOCATIVE

41. **The Ablative.**—This case is used in Latin, sometimes with and sometimes without a preposition, to express relations shown in English by the use of *from*, *with*, *by*, *in*, and some other prepositions. Nouns with their nominative

singular in *-a* and their genitive singular in *-ae*, form their ablative singular in *-ā* and their ablative plural in *-is*. How does the ablative singular differ in form from the nominative singular? From the ablative plural? The dative plural? What is the quantity of the vowel *-a* in the ending of the accusative plural? The genitive plural? The accusative singular? Of *-i* in the dative plural? The ablative plural? Write a table of the endings of these cases in the singular and plural.

42. Prepositions with the Ablative. — Some of the prepositions most frequently used with the ablative case are: —

- a. { 1. *ā*¹ or *ab*, *away from, from*
 2. *dē*, *down from, from*
 3. *ē*¹ or *ex*, *out of, from*

These express separation or source.

b. *cum*, *with*

This expresses accompaniment, association.

c. *in, in, on, upon, over, among*

This expresses position.

Learn these prepositions with their meanings and associate them with the ablative case. Use them wherever they are appropriate with the nouns in the vocabulary of this lesson.

43. The Vocative Case. — Another case, called the vocative or case of address, is like the nominative in most words: *rēginam, filia, amā, daughter, love the queen*. The vocative seldom stands first in a sentence.

¹ The forms *ā, ē*, are used before words beginning with a consonant; *ab* and *ex* before words beginning with either a consonant or a vowel.

Write the declension of **mūsa**, base **mūs-**, and **insula**, base **insul-**, adding the vocative and ablative cases and using the model in 37. Notice the cases having like endings.

Decline the nouns in the following vocabulary and state the quantity of the final syllable in each case, singular and plural.



A ROMAN COUNTRY ESTATE, OR VILLA.
(Restoration.)

44.

VOCABULARY

cōpia , abundance; pl., supplies, <i>troops</i>	via , way, road
insula , island	villa , farmhouse
patria , country (native land)	est , ¹ he, she, or it is, there is
prōvincia , province	nant , they swim
silva , forest	nat , he, she, or it swims
	sunt , they are, there are

¹ See 30, note.

45.

EXERCISES

I. 1. In silvā, in silvīs, dē silvīs, dē silvā, ē silvīs, ē silvā. 2. Cum puellīs, cum puellā, in viā, in prōvinciīs, ā patriā. 3. Agricola est in insulā. 4. Nautae in silvā sunt. 5. Cōpia pecūniae in prōvinciīs est. 6. Nauta in villā agricolae est.

II. 1. In the forest, with the queen, with the queens, down from the roads. 2. In the queen's forests, with the girls, in the farmhouses. 3. The goddess is in the forest. 4. Out of the forests, out of the provinces. 5. The farmer gives the queen money. 6. The farmers give money to the queens. 7. There are troops in the forest.

LESSON 7

GENDER—ADJECTIVE AGREEMENT

46. **Gender.**—In English such words as *man*, *woman*, *forest*, are distinguished from each other in gender by their meaning; *man* is masculine, *woman* is feminine, *forest* is neuter. In Latin the gender is determined partly by the meaning (natural gender), but more largely by the termination (grammatical gender): **agricola**, masc., *farmer*; **puella**, fem., *girl*; **nihil**, neut., *nothing*; but **ager**, masc., *field*; **silva**, fem., *forest*; **flūmen**, neut., *river*.

47. **Gender of Nouns.**—1. Masculine are: names of males, winds, rivers, mountains, and months.

2. Feminine are: names of females, countries, cities, islands, trees, and plants.

3. Neuter are indeclinable nouns.

The gender of all nouns must be thoroughly learned. No success in Latin is possible without this. It is equally

necessary to learn the nominative and genitive singular. In future vocabularies the nouns will be given with these points indicated :

WORD	GEN. ENDING	GENDER	MEANING
ripa	-ae	f.	<i>river bank</i>

48. The Adjective. — In English the adjective has the same form when used with a noun of any gender, number, and case: *a good boy, good boys, a good girl's, to the good farmer, of a good answer.* In Latin an adjective has the same gender, number, and case as the noun to which it belongs, and is said to agree with it in these points: **puella bona, a good girl; puellis bonis, to or for good girls.** Name gender, number, and case of these adjectives.

49.**RULE**

Adjective Agreement. — *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

50. silva, base silv-, f., forest; dēnsa, base dēns-, f., dense

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS
N.	<i>silva dēnsa, the dense forest (as subject)</i>	-a
G.	<i>silvae dēnsae, of the dense forest</i>	-ae
D.	<i>silvae dēnsae, to or for the dense forest</i>	-ae
Ac.	<i>silvam dēnsam, the dense forest (as object)</i>	-am
V.	<i>silva dēnsa, O dense forest!</i>	-a
AB.	<i>silvā dēnsā, from, by, with, or in the dense forest¹</i>	-ā

	PLURAL	CASE ENDINGS
N.	<i>silvae dēnsae, the dense forests (as subject)</i>	-ae
G.	<i>silvārum dēnsārum, of the dense forests</i>	-ārum

¹ These translations hold in most instances only when prepositions are used with the case.

D.	silvis dēnsis, <i>to or for the dense forests</i>	-is
Ac.	silvās dēnsās, <i>the dense forests (as object)</i>	-ās
V.	silvae dēnsae, <i>O dense forests!</i>	-ae
Ab.	silvis dēnsis, <i>from, by, with, or in the dense forests</i> ¹	-is

Learn, with their specifications,² all words given in the paradigms³ and examples; also table of case endings.

51. Adjective Uses. — *Puella bona, a good girl; puella est bona, the girl is good.* Notice here two uses of the adjective, the first in direct connection with the noun, called the attributive use; the second after the copulative verb (19) *est*, called the predicate use. In both instances the adjective is in the same gender, number, and case as its noun (49).

52.

VOCABULARY⁴

<i>porta, -ae, f., door, gate</i>	<i>bona, -ae, f., good</i>
<i>ripa, -ae, f., river bank</i>	<i>clāra, -ae, f., bright, famous</i>
<i>stella, -ae, f., star</i>	<i>lāta, -ae, f., broad, wide</i>
<i>alta, -ae, f., high, deep</i>	<i>longa, -ae, f., long</i>

Which of the above words are nouns? Which are adjectives?

53.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Puella bona, puellae bonae, puellārum bonārum, portae lātae.* 2. *Stellam clāram, stellis clāris, stellae*

¹ See footnote 1, page 34.

² The term "specifications" is used to include all the points given in a vocabulary about a word.

³ A paradigm is a table of word forms, as given in 50.

⁴ In giving a vocabulary name the specifications in full: *porta, portae*, feminine, *door or gate*.

clārae, stella clāra. 3. Puellis bonis, cum puellis bonis, ripārum altārum, ripās altās, in viis longis. 4. Stellae sunt clārae. 5. Puella est bona. 6. Sagittae Diānae longae sunt.



ROMAN GATE.
(Porta Negra at Trier.)

II. 1. Long arrows, of a long arrow, to *or* for a long arrow. 2. The roads are long, on¹ a long road. 3. The road is broad, on a broad road. 4. The bright stars, the

¹ Use the proper preposition.

- stars are bright. 5. The sailor's arrows are long.
 6. The sailors' arrows are long. 7. The gate is high.
 8. The sailor is on ¹ the high river bank.

LESSON 8

THE FIRST DECLENSION

54. There are five declensions in Latin, distinguished by the ending of the genitive singular and the final letter of the stem (21).

55. **The First Declension.** — Latin nouns of the first declension end in *-a* in the nominative singular, and in *-ae* in the genitive singular. They are usually feminine, but some names of males occur which are masculine. The stem ends in *-ā*, and is found by dropping *-rum* of the genitive plural. The base is found by dropping the ending of any case.

a. Review declension of *silva dēnsa* (50).

b. Write the declension of *hasta*, *-ae*, *a spear*, and *terra*, *-ae*, *land*, stating stem, base, endings, and meanings of case forms. Decline *ripa alta* and *via longa*.

56.

VOCABULARY

dea, *-ae*, *f.*, *goddess*

filia, *-ae*, *f.*, *daughter*

fossa, *-ae*, *f.*, *ditch, trench*

Gallia, *-ae*, *f.*, *Gaul*, a country in Europe

hasta, *-ae*, *f.*, *spear, lance*

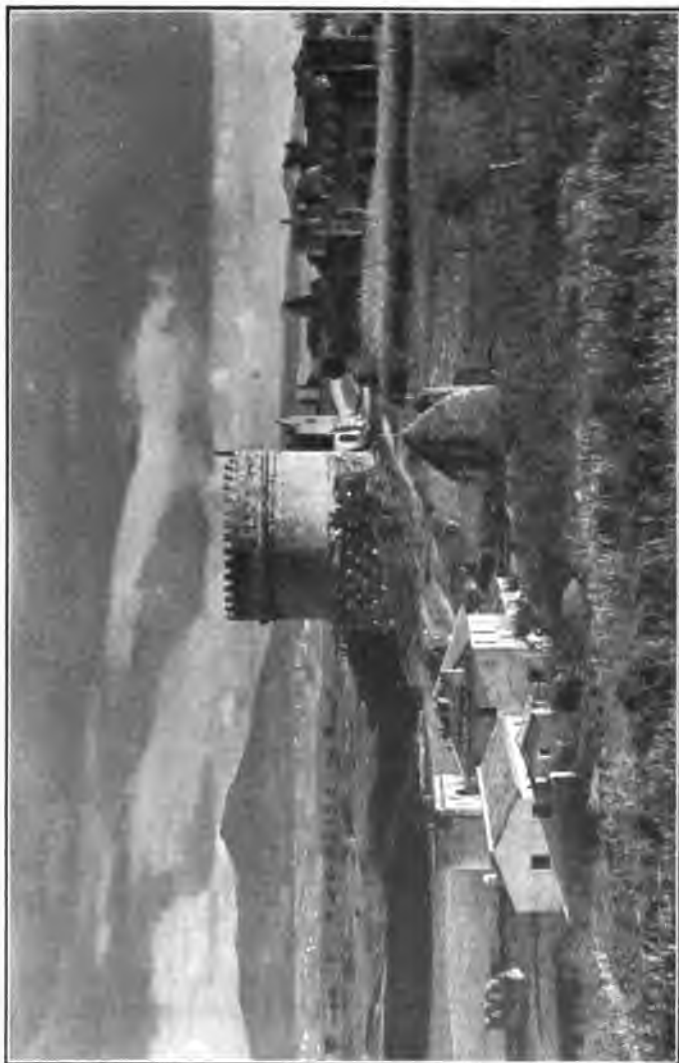
terra, *-ae*, *f.*, *land, country*

magna, *-ae*, *f.*, *large, great*

vocat, *he, she, or it calls*
et, *conj.*, *and*

57. *Filia* and *dea* add *-ābus* instead of *-is* to the base to form the dative and ablative plural : *pecūniam filiābus dat*,

¹ Use the proper preposition.



TOMB OF CECILIA METELLA ON THE VIA APPIA.

he gives money to his daughters ; arae deabus stant, altars stand for the goddesses.

Learn the above vocabulary thoroughly with all its specifications. Do the same with each vocabulary in the book, as you come to it, giving all forms in full. Name stem and base of each noun, and decline all but **dea** and **filia** like **silva**, translating the forms. Decline **dea** and **filia**.

58.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Silva dēnsa, dea bona, silva dēnsa est, porta lāta est, portae altae et longae sunt. 2. Viārum longārum, terrae magnae sunt. 3. Hasta nautae longa est. 4. Īnsulae rēgīnae magnae sunt. 5. In Galliā sunt silvae magnae et dēnsae. 6. Rēgīna filiābus pecūniam dat. 7. Rēgīnae filiābus pecūniam dant.

II. 1. High gates (nom. and acc.), a large island, on a large island, down from the high river bank. 2. The good queen of the island. 3. The queen of the large island. 4. A long way, a broad ditch, a long spear. 5. Gaul is large, the ditches are deep. 6. There are deep ditches in the large forest. 7. The gate is high and wide. 8. The sailor gives money to his daughters. 9. The farmers give money to their daughters.

LESSON 9

VERB INFLECTION—PRESENT TENSE OF **vocō**, ACTIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD

59. **Conjugation.** — As already stated (20), the inflection of a verb is called conjugation. In English we conju-

gate a verb partly by changing its form, but more largely by using with it personal pronouns and auxiliary verbs: *he praised, she was praised, they may praise, we shall be praised.* In this way we show differences in voice, mood, tense, person, and number. In Latin these differences are

shown by a change in the form of a verb: *vocavit, he praised; vocābimur, we shall be praised.*



ROMAN COMMON
SOLDIER.

60. Voice.— In the English sentence, *I call (am calling, or do call)*, the subject, *I*, is represented as performing the act of calling, and the verb is said to be in the active voice. In the sentence, *I am called (am being called)*, the subject is represented as having the act of calling performed upon it, and the verb is said to be in the passive voice.

61. Mood.— A change in the form of a word to show the manner of the action gives what is called its moods. In Latin there are three moods, the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative, besides other forms of the verb, to be explained later. Among these are the infinitive and the participle.

62. The Indicative Mood.— This mood states the action of the verb as a fact, or asks a question of fact: *he praises, laudat; who praises? quis laudat?*

63. The Infinitive.— This form of the verb states the action without limitation of person and number: *laudare,*

to praise, to be praising; laudāvīsse, to have praised, to have been praising.

64. The Participle. — A participle fills the office of both a verb and an adjective. As a verb it has tense and voice, and may govern an object; as an adjective it is inflected to agree in gender, number, and case with the word it modifies.

65. Tense. — Tense expresses, through different forms of the verb, the general idea of time as past, present, or future. There are six tenses in the indicative mood: the Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect.

66. The Present Tense. — This tense expresses what is occurring or regularly occurs at the present time: each of the forms, *I am praising, I praise, or I do praise*, is expressed in Latin by the single form *laudō*.

67. Person and Number. — In English the person and number of a verb are shown largely by the person and number of its noun or pronoun subject. In Latin they are shown by special endings having the meaning of pronouns, and called personal endings (38). Learn thoroughly the following table of active personal endings, associate their meanings with their forms, and remember that you must look at the end of a verb to know its number and person.



ROMAN COMMON
SOLDIER.

68.	SINGULAR	•	PLURAL
First person, -m or -ō , <i>I</i>			-mus , <i>we</i>
Second person, -s , <i>you</i> (one person)			-tis , <i>you</i> (more than one person)
Third Person, -t , <i>he, she, it</i>			-nt , <i>they</i>

69. **The Present Stem.** — In Latin the verb has three stems, the present, perfect, and the participial (21). In such verbs as we have had, the present stem ends in **-ā**, and is best found by dropping the ending **-re** of the present active infinitive: as, **laudāre**, *to praise*; present stem **laudā-**. All verbs whose present stem ends in **-ā** belong to the first conjugation. The present tense is formed by joining the personal endings directly to the present stem.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Pres. Stem	2d Per. Sing. Ending	Verb Form
laudō	laudāre	laudā-	-s	laudās, <i>you praise</i>

70. Present tense of **vocō**, *I call*.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Pres. Stem
vocō , <i>I call</i>	vocāre , <i>to call</i>	vocā-
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. vocō , <i>I call</i>		vocāmus , <i>we call</i>
2. vocās , <i>you call</i> (<i>thou call-est</i>)		vocātis , <i>you call</i>
3. vocat , <i>he calls</i>		vocant , <i>they call</i>

71. In English, present action is expressed in three different ways; as, *I call, I am calling, I do call*. In Latin one form, **vocō**, stands for all three of these expressions. Translate the above paradigm, using these three forms. Repeat the process in later work.

72. Instead of **-m**, **-ō** is generally used as the ending of the first person singular of the present indicative active.

In the first conjugation it absorbs -ā of the stem; as, **vocā + ō = vocō**.

a. Write the present stem and the present indicative active of the following verbs:—

arāre , to plow	nāvigāre , to sail
armāre , to arm	nūntiāre , to report, announce
nāre , to swim	parāre , to prepare, prepare for

Learn these words.

b. What are the meanings of -t, -mus, -nt, -m, -s, -ō? To what are they joined to form the present tense?

LESSON 10

PRINCIPAL PARTS—THE FIRST CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD, IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES—REVIEW 59-63, 65-69

73. The regular verb in Latin is inflected through four conjugations, distinguished from each other by the final vowel of the present stem. This vowel is best seen in the present infinitive active.

Conj.	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Pres. Stem	Stem Vowel
I.	vocō , I call	vocāre , to call	vocā	-ā
II.	moneō , I advise	monēre , to advise	monē	-ē
III.	regō , I rule	regere , to rule	rege	-e
IV.	audiō , I hear	audire , to hear	audi	-i

74. **Principal Parts.**—The principal parts of a Latin verb are certain forms which contain stems from which all forms of the verb may be made. They should be learned with every verb as it appears. They are:—

1. First Per. Sing. **vocō**, *I call*, etc.
 Pres. Ind. Act.
2. Pres. Inf. Act. **vocāre**, *to call*, etc.¹ Pres. Stem, **vocā-**
3. First Per. Sing. **vocāvī**, *I called*, Perf. Stem, **vocāv-**³
 Perf.² Ind. Act. *have called*
4. Perfect Participle² Passive **vocātus**, *called*, Participial Stem,
having been called **vocāt-**³

a. These may be named the first, second, third, and fourth principal parts, respectively, and are written in the vocabularies as follows: **vocō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**.

b. Be able to translate the principal parts of every verb you meet.

75. The present stem in all the conjugations may be found by dropping final **-re** of the present infinitive active (69).

76. **Tense Signs.** — In English, as we have already seen (59), we often use helping or auxiliary verbs to show a change in tense: *I shall go*, *I have gone*, *I shall have gone*. In Latin this change is made by joining tense signs to verb stems. In the indicative mood **-bā** is the sign of the imperfect tense. This tense is made up of the present stem + the imperfect tense sign **-bā** + the personal endings, as: —

Pres. Stem	Tense Sign	2d Per. Sing. Ending	Verb Form
vocā-	-bā	-s	vocābās , <i>you were calling</i> , etc.

¹ *To be calling.*

² This term will be explained later.

³ This stem will be treated as the work progresses.

a. The vowel of the tense sign is shortened before the endings **-m**, **-t**, and **-nt**: **vocābam**, *I was calling*.

77. The Imperfect Tense. — This tense is generally used to express an act as going on or repeated, or a state of things as existing in past time; as, **natābam**, *I was swimming*; **āra stābat in insulā**, *an altar stood on the island*. In English four forms are used to cover the idea expressed by the Latin imperfect indicative; as, **laudābam**, *I was praising, I praised, I did praise, or I used to praise*. Use these four forms in translating the imperfect tense as you meet it in the paradigms.

78. vocō, *I call*; present stem **vocā-**
Principal Parts: **vocō**, **vocāre**, **vocāvī**, **vocātus**

IMPERFECT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. vocābam , ¹ <i>I was calling</i> , etc.	vocābāmus , <i>we were calling</i> , etc.
2. vocābās , <i>you were calling</i> , etc.	vocābātis , <i>you were calling</i> , etc.
3. vocābat , <i>he was calling</i> , etc.	vocābant , <i>they were calling</i> , etc.

79. The Future Tense. — This tense represents an act as occurring in future time. Its tense sign in the first conjugation is **-bi**. The future tense consists of the present stem + the tense sign + the personal ending, as: —

Pres. Stem	Tense Sign	2d Per. Sing. Ending	Verb Form
vocā-	-bi	-s	vocābis , <i>you will call</i>

¹ In the imperfect **-m**, not **-ō**, is the personal ending of the first person singular.

Note in the following paradigm that **-i** of the tense sign is lost before **-ō**, and changed to **-u** before **-nt**.

80.

FUTURE TENSE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. vocābō, <i>I shall call or be calling</i> | vocābimus, <i>we shall call, etc.</i> |
| 2. vocābis, <i>you will call, etc.</i> | vocābitis, <i>you will call, etc.</i> |
| 3. vocābit, <i>he will call, etc.</i> | vocābunt, <i>they will call, etc.</i> |

81.

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|---|--|
| Belgae, ¹ -ārum, m. pl., <i>the Belgae, a people of Gaul</i> | erat, <i>he was, there was</i> |
| Celtae, ¹ -ārum, m. pl., <i>the Celts, a people of Gaul</i> | in, prep. with acc., <i>'into, against, among, used with verbs of motion</i> |
| convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>call together</i> | in, prep. with abl., <i>in, on, among, used with verbs of rest</i> |
| erant, <i>they were, there were</i> | rest |

a. Fix firmly in mind the difference between **in** with the accusative and **in** with the ablative. Recall examples of the latter use already given and notice, before translating, the meaning of both verb and preposition.

b. Inflect **laudō** and **convocō** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses with the proper forms of **agricola** and **nauta**, singular and plural, as objects.

82.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Nautās² convocānt, convocātis, convocābam, convocābō. 2. Agricolam laudat, laudābāmus, laudābās,

¹ Many proper names in Latin are translated by the Latin nominative form. These are pronounced as English words but with the Latin accent.

² Could such a form be the subject of a finite verb? What is its relation to **convocant**? How must you translate **convocant**?

laudābat, laudābunt. 3. In silvā, in silvam, in prōvinciam, in prōvinciās, in prōvinciā, in prōvinciis. 4. Nautae agricolās in silvam convocābunt. 5. Nauta in prōvinciā magnā erat. 6. Nautās in dēnsās silvās convocābimus. 7. Nautae in altā ripā erant. 8. Silva erat dēnsa et



GALLIC CHIEF AND FALLEN ROMAN.

magna. 9. Rēginās bonās laudābimus. 10. Belgae et Celtae in Galliā sunt.

II. 1. I was praising, you will praise, I do praise, they are praising, he praises, we shall praise. 2. In the province, into the province, on the island, into the forests. 3. He does love, we shall love, you were loving, he used

to love. 4. The sailor was calling the farmers together. 5. The farmers were in the dense forests. 6. The queen's province was large. 7. You will call the good girls together into the island. 8. You will give roses to the sailor's daughters.

LESSON 11

THE SECOND CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE, INDICATIVE MOOD, PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES—ORDER OF WORDS

83. All verbs whose present stem ends in *-ē* belong to the second conjugation.

84. *monēō, I advise or warn*; present stem *monē-*
Principal Parts:¹ *monēō, monēre, monui, monitus*

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>monēō, I advise, etc.</i> ²	<i>monēmus, we advise, etc.</i>
2. <i>monēs, you advise, etc.</i>	<i>monētis, you advise, etc.</i>
3. <i>monet, he advises, etc.</i>	<i>monent, they advise, etc.</i>

In the present tense the personal endings are joined directly to the present stem with shortening of the stem vowel before final *-ō, -t, -nt*.

IMPERFECT TENSE

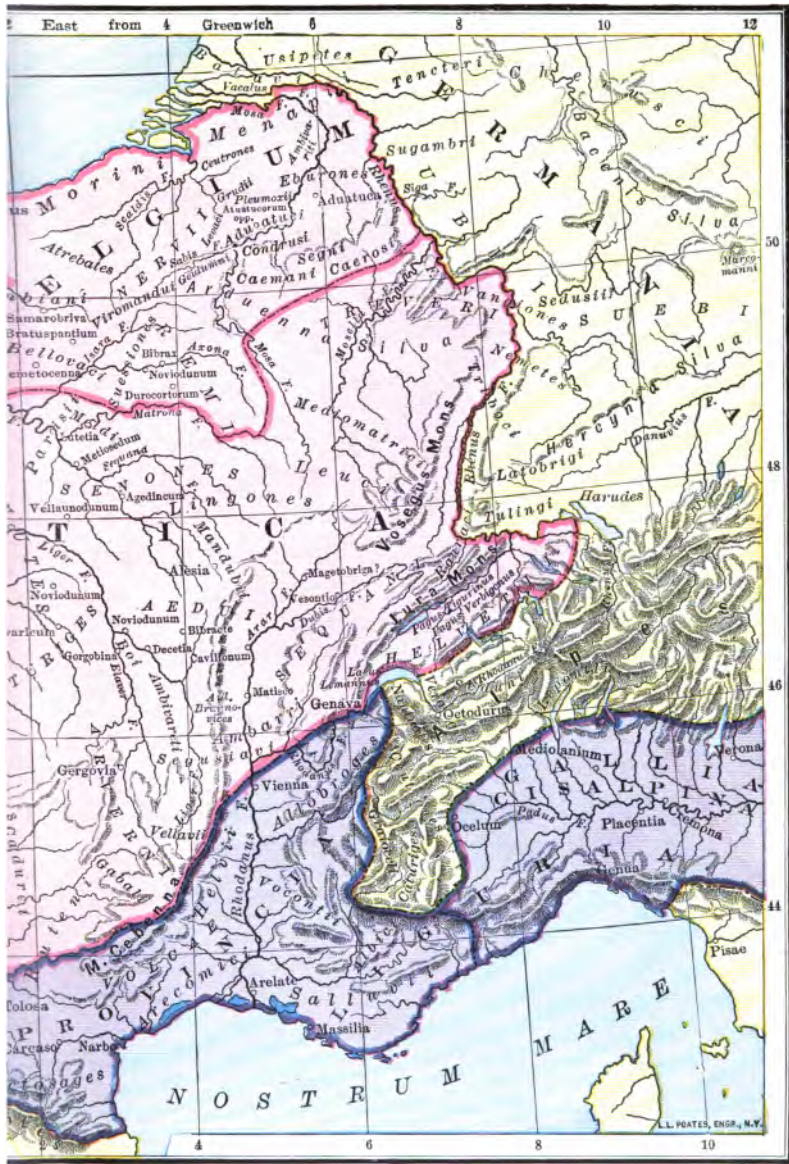
SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>monēbam, I was advising, etc.</i> ³	<i>monēbāmus, we were advising, etc.</i>
2. <i>monēbās, you were advising, etc.</i>	<i>monēbātis, you were advising, etc.</i>
3. <i>monēbat, he was advising, etc.</i>	<i>monēbant, they were advising, etc.</i>

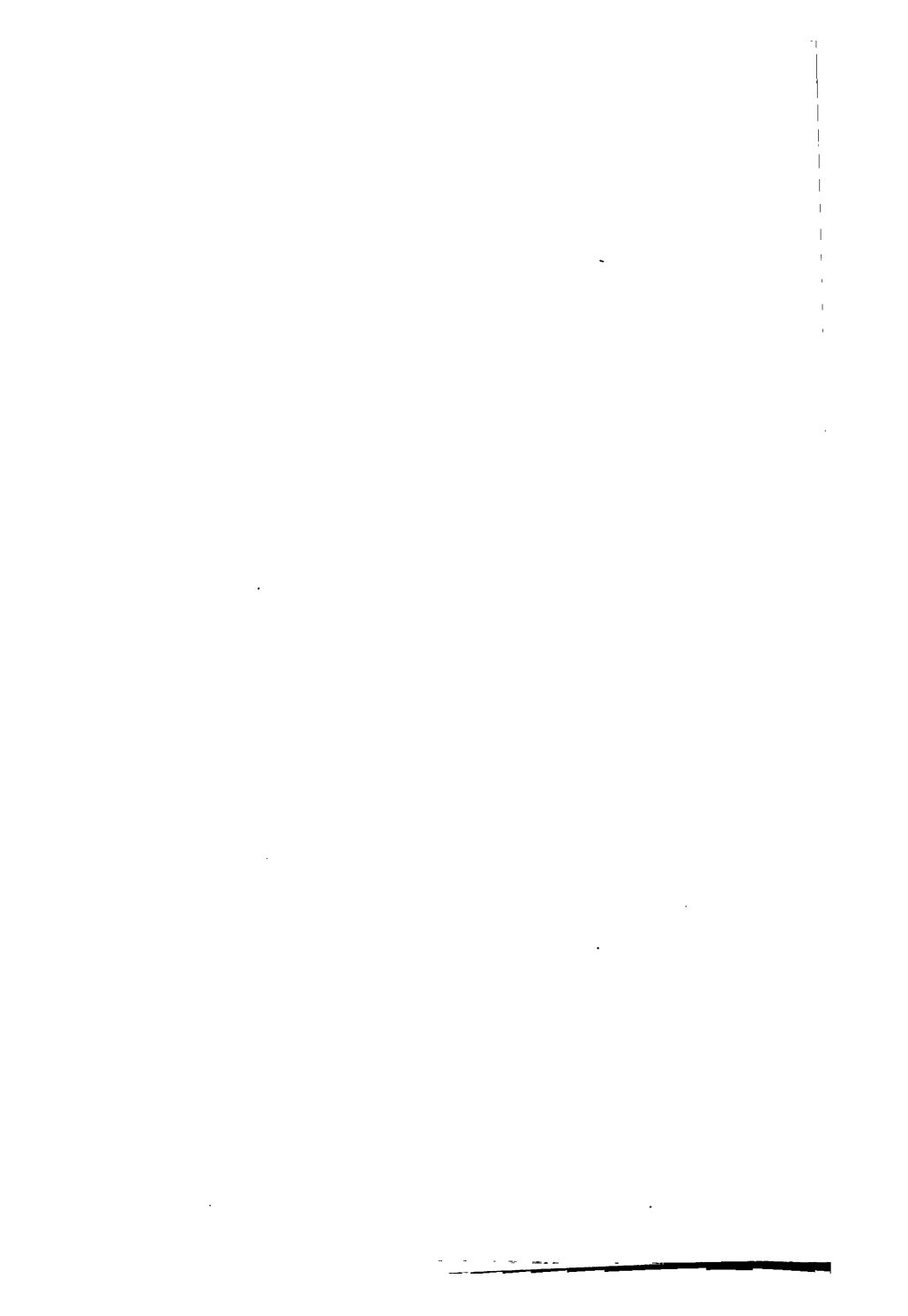
¹ Translate the principal parts (73).

² See 66.

³ See 77.







The imperfect tense, as in the first conjugation, consists of the present stem + the imperfect tense sign + the personal endings:—

Pres. Stem	Tense Sign	2d Per. Sing. Ending	Verb Form
monē-	-bā	-s	monēbās, you were advising

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1.	monēbō, <i>I shall advise,</i> etc. ¹	monēbimus, <i>we shall advise,</i> etc.
2.	monēbis, <i>you will advise,</i> etc.	monēbitis, <i>you will advise,</i> etc.
3.	monēbit, <i>he will advise,</i> etc.	monēbunt, <i>they will advise,</i> etc.

In the second conjugation, as in the first, the future tense sign is **-bi**. The future tense consists of the present stem + the future tense sign + the personal endings:—

Pres. Stem	Tense Sign	2d Per. Sing. Ending	Verb Form
monē-	-bi	-s	monēbis, you will advise

For the dropping of **-i** before **-ō** and its change to **-u** before **-nt** see 79.

85. Word Order.— We have seen (28) that the order of the words in a Latin sentence does not determine their relation, as subject, object, modifier, etc., to each other. The order of words is, however, a matter of great importance in reading and writing Latin, as will be seen in the following examples.

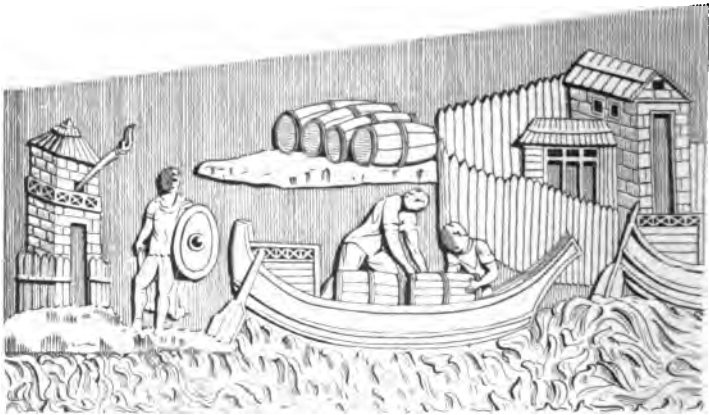
¹ See 80.

86. *The good farmer often gives roses to his daughter,* becomes in Latin : —

1. *Agricola bonus*¹ *filiae rosās saepe dat,* with no special emphasis on any word.

2. *Saepe bonus*¹ *agricola filiae rosās dat,* with special emphasis on *saepe* and *bonus*.

3. *Saepe dat agricola bonus*¹ *rosās filiae,* with emphasis on *dat* and *filiae*.



ROMAN CAMP AND BOATS.

(Column of Trajan.)

These examples suggest the following :—

87.

RULE

Order of Words. — *The normal order in a Latin sentence is: Subject, Modifiers of Subject, Indirect Object, Direct Object, Adverb, Verb. But this order is constantly changed for the sake of emphasis.*

¹ The masculine nominative of *bona*, used because *agricola* is masculine.

88. The most emphatic place in the sentence is the first, the next in importance the last, the least important the middle. A descriptive adjective normally follows its noun, but is made emphatic by being placed before it. The adverb as a modifier of the verb precedes it, but is made emphatic by separation from it by intervening words. The verb normally stands last, but is made emphatic by being brought to a position at or near the beginning of the sentence.

a. In Exercise 90, I, 6-10, name all words in emphatic positions. In II write the sentences in their normal order, then rewrite them, using emphasis and underscoring the words you have made emphatic.

89.

VOCABULARY

<i>cymba</i> , -ae, f., <i>boat, skiff</i>	<i>properō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>has-</i> <i>ten</i>
<i>fera</i> , -ae, f., <i>wild animal</i>	<i>pugnō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>fight</i>
<i>ōra</i> , -ae, f., <i>shore</i>	<i>videō</i> , -ēre, <i>vidi, visus, see</i>
<i>ōra maritima</i> , <i>seashore</i>	<i>ad</i> , prep. with acc., <i>to</i> , ¹ <i>to-</i> <i>ward, near</i>
<i>maritima</i> , adj., <i>belonging to</i> <i>the sea</i>	<i>per</i> , prep. with acc., <i>through,</i> <i>along</i>
<i>pulchra</i> , <i>beautiful</i>	<i>nōn</i> , adv., <i>not</i>
<i>habēō</i> , -ēre, -uī, -itus, <i>have,</i> <i>hold</i>	<i>saepe</i> , adv., <i>often</i>

90.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Habēmus, habēbimus, habēbāmus, vocābimus, vident.* 2. *Armant, vidētis, pugnābitis, pugnābis, habet, armābant.* 3. *In insulā, per pulchram insulam, in ōrā*

¹ Distinguish carefully between *to* as the sign of the indirect object and of the person or thing to which motion extends. In the latter case use *ad* with the accusative.

maritimā, in ōram maritimam, ad ōram maritimam. 4. Per prōvinciam properābant Belgae. 5. Nautās in prōvinciā saepe videō. 6. Nōn vocābant cōpiās in prōvinciam. 7. Nōn in viīs longis vidēbimus ferās. 8. Ad ōram maritimam nōn nāvīgābit agricola. 9. Vidēbāmus pulchrās ferās in silvā magnā. 10. Saepe properābant ad ōram maritimam.

II. 1. You have, were having, will have, they are having, did have, will have. 2. He sees, was seeing, will see the beautiful boats. 3. I hastened, we shall love, they called together. 4. We often saw wild animals in the forests of Gaul. 5. You will see the sailors in the boats. 6. We often saw farmers on the road. 7. The Belgae will often arm the troops in the forest. 8. You will not hasten to the seashore.

LESSON 12

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—PASSIVE INDICATIVE, PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES—PREDICATE NOMINATIVE AND APPOSITIVE

91. A verb in the passive voice (60) has the following principal parts :—

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
amor , <i>I am loved</i> or <i>being loved</i>	amāri , <i>to be loved</i>	amātus sum , <i>I was loved or have been loved</i>

92. The personal endings of the passive voice are :—

SINGULAR	PLURAL
-r , -or , <i>I</i>	-mur , <i>we</i>
-ris or -re , <i>you</i> (one person)	-mini , <i>you</i> (two or more persons)
-tur , <i>he</i>	-ntur , <i>they</i>

93. The tense signs of the imperfect and future are the same as in the active voice, and these tenses are formed in the same way, except that they use the passive personal endings instead of the active (68).

94. In the present **-or** is used in the first person singular as the personal ending, and in the first conjugation **-ā** of the stem is dropped before it. In the future the tense sign **-bi** is changed to **-be** in the second person singular, and to **-bu** in the third person plural.

95. The principal parts of **vocō** in the passive voice are: **vocor, vocāri, vocātus sum**; present stem **vocā-**.

The present stem in the passive of all conjugations is the same as in the active.

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. vocor , <i>I am called</i> , etc. ¹	vocāmur , <i>we are called</i> , etc.
2. vocāris (or vocāre), <i>you are called</i> , etc.	vocāmini , <i>you are called</i> , etc.
3. vocātur , <i>he is called</i> , etc.	vocantur , <i>they are called</i> , etc.

IMPERFECT TENSE

1. vocābar , <i>I was being called</i> , etc. ²	vocābāmur , <i>we were being called</i> , etc.
2. vocābāris (-re), <i>you were being called</i> , etc.	vocābāmini , <i>you were being called</i> , etc.
3. vocābātur , <i>he was being called</i> , etc.	vocābantur , <i>they were being called</i> , etc.

¹Or *am being called*.

²Or *was called*.

FUTURE TENSE

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. vocābor, <i>I shall be called</i> | vocābimur, <i>we shall be called</i> |
| 2. vocāberis (-re), <i>you will be called</i> | vocābimini, <i>you will be called</i> |
| 3. vocābitur, <i>he will be called</i> | vocābuntur, <i>they will be called</i> |

moneor, I am advised; present stem monē-
Principal Parts: moneor, monēri, monitus sum

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PRESENT TENSE	PLURAL
1. moneor, <i>I am advised,</i> etc.	monēmur, <i>we are advised,</i> etc.	
2. monēris (-re), <i>you are advised,</i> etc.	monēmini, <i>you are advised,</i> etc.	
3. monētur, <i>he is advised,</i> etc.	monentur, <i>they are advised,</i> etc.	

IMPERFECT TENSE

1. monēbar, <i>I was being advised,</i> etc.	monēbāmur, <i>we were being advised,</i> etc.
2. monēbāris (-re), <i>you were being advised,</i> etc.	monēbāmini, <i>you were being advised,</i> etc.
3. monēbātur, <i>he was being advised,</i> etc.	monēbantur, <i>they were being advised,</i> etc.

FUTURE TENSE

1. monēbor, <i>I shall be advised</i>	monēbimur, <i>we shall be advised</i>
2. monēberis (-re), <i>you will be advised</i>	monēbimini, <i>you will be advised</i>
3. monēbitur, <i>he will be advised</i>	monēbuntur, <i>they will be advised</i>



ARCH OF TRAJAN.
(Timgad, Algeria.)

Supply omitted translations in these paradigms.

96. Examine the following :—

1. **Agricolae sunt incolae Galliae**, *the farmers are inhabitants of Gaul.*

2. **In Aquitaniā, pulchrā terrā, multa bella gerunt**, *they wage many wars in Aquitania, a beautiful country.*

a. In 1, **incolae** is a predicate noun, refers to the same persons as the subject **agricolae**, and agrees with it in case ; in 2, **terrā** limits **Aquitaniā** directly, denotes the same place, and is in the same case. These uses are the same as in English.

97.

RULES

1. **Predicate Nominative.** — *A noun in the predicate with an intransitive or passive verb agrees with the subject in case.*

2. **Appositive.** — *A noun limiting another noun and denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in case.*

NOTE. — An appositive is always in the same part of the sentence — subject or predicate — as its noun. An adjective in the predicate agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case (49).

98.

VOCABULARY

Aquitānia , -ae, f., <i>Aquitania</i> , a country in Gaul	moveō , -ēre, <i>mōvi</i> , <i>mōtus</i> , <i>move</i>
incola , -ae, m. and f., <i>in-</i> <i>habitant</i>	contrā , prep. with acc., <i>against</i>
inopia , -ae, f., <i>lack, scarcity</i>	quoque , conj., <i>also</i> , following the word which it empha- sizes
appellō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>name, call</i>	
comparō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>prepare, provide</i>	

99.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Appellātur nauta, incolae Galliae appellāmur.
2. Laudābuntur, laudantur, laudābimini, laudāris.
3. Aquitānia pulchra terra appellātur. 4. Videor,
vidēbitur, vidēbantur, vidēre, armābor, armābar.
5. Armantur, armābāmini, armāmini, vidēris, vidēmur,
vidēmus. 6. Incolae Aquitāniae, pulchrae terrae, appel-
lābantur. 7. Nauta in pulchram insulam vocābitur,
nauta filiam in insulam vocābit. 8. Portae villae in viās
movēbantur. 9. Portās villae in viās movēbant.

II. 1. I provide, shall provide, was providing, was
praised, am praised, am praising. 2. They were advised,
they were advising, he shall be advised, they will be moved
from (out of) the forest. 3. He is being armed, he will
see the spear, the spear will be seen. 4. They were arm-

ing the farmers, inhabitants of Aquitania. 5. The sailors also are being armed against the farmers. 6. We do move the gates of the farmhouses to the road. 7. The gates of the farmhouses will be moved to the road. 8. The inhabitants of the land are sailors and farmers.

LESSON 13

USE OF WORD LISTS—WORD LIST I—HOW TO TRANSLATE—READING LESSON

100. Study the following list with great care. Give the specifications (50, footnote 2) of each word and be able to decline all the nouns and adjectives and to conjugate all the verbs in the list in all the forms so far given. Note all resemblances, in form and meaning, to English words. Do the same with succeeding word lists. Translate with equal facility from Latin into English and from English into Latin.

101.

WORD LIST I

ā <i>or</i> ab	Belgae	dea	fossa	laudō	nōn
ad	Celtae	dēnsa	fuga	longa	nūntiō
agricola	clāra	Diāna	Gallia	magna	ōra
alta	comparō	dō	habeō	maritima	parō
amō	contrā	ē <i>or</i> ex	hasta	moneō	patria
ancora	convocō	erat	in	moveō	pecūnia
appellō	cōpia	est	incola	mūsa	per
Aquitānia	cum	et	inopia	nauta	porta
armō	cymba	fera	insula	nāvigō	portō
arō	dē	filia	lāta	nō	properō

prōvincia	pulchra	ripa	sagitta	sunt	videō
puella	quoque	rosa	silva	terra	villa
pugnō	rēgina	saepe	stella	via	vocō

102. How to Translate. — 1. Read in the Latin the passage assigned, taking in at one view as many words as the eye can see.

2. Note the endings of all inflected words so as to see quickly the relation of subject, verb, and object, noun and agreeing adjective, preposition and the noun which it governs, etc., in order to arrive at the thought of the sentence before making any attempt at translation. In doing this follow strictly the Latin order, observing carefully the marks of punctuation.

3. Try to recall words previously given and study into the meaning of those related to them in form. Look up



A ROMAN BAKERY.

words that are new to you and find from their endings their connection with other words in the sentence.

4. Try to make sense by giving the full meaning of the forms, taken in their Latin order. If you do not succeed in making sense, repeat the process from the beginning.

5. Translate into clear and idiomatic English. To translate into idiomatic English is to take the thought of a writer in another language and put it into the kind of English we should use to express naturally the same thought; as, *rēginae est rosa* means, in idiomatic English, *the queen has a rose*, while its word for word translation reads, *there is a rose to the queen*.

103.

READING LESSON — GALLIA

Gallia est terra magna et pulchra. Est patria multōrum¹ agricolārum et nautārum. Agricolaē terram arant et nautae ad ōram maritimā in cymbis nāvīgant. In viīs lātīs et longīs ludunt² puerī³ et puellae. In lātīs et dēnsīs silvīs sunt magnae ferae, quās⁴ incolae saepe capiunt.⁵

LESSON 14

THE SECOND DECLENSION, NOUNS IN **-us** AND **-um**

104. Nouns of the second declension in **-us** are usually masculine, those in **-um** are neuter. The stem ends in **-o** and may be found by dropping **-rum** of the genitive plural and shortening the **-ō**. The base is found by dropping any

¹ of many; **multōrum** modifies **agricolārum**.

² **ludunt**, play; it agrees with its subjects **puerī** and **puellae**.

³ **puerī**, boys. ⁴ **quās**, which, object of **capiunt**. ⁵ **capiunt**, capture.

case ending. Nouns of all declensions are declined by adding the case endings to the base.

105. *légātus*, -i, m., *lieutenant, ambassador*; stem *légāto*, base *légāt-*

	SING.	PL.	CASE ENDINGS	
			SING.	PL.
N.	<i>légātus</i>	<i>légāti</i>	-us	-i
G.	<i>légāti</i>	<i>légātorum</i>	-i	-ōrum
D.	<i>légātō</i>	<i>légātīs</i>	-ō	-īs
Ac.	<i>légātum</i>	<i>légātōs</i>	-um	-ōs
V.	<i>légāte</i>	<i>légāti</i>	-e	-i
Ab.	<i>légātō</i>	<i>légātīs</i>	-ō	-īs

bellum, -i, n., *war*; stem *bello-*, base *bell-*

	SING.	PL.	CASE ENDINGS	
			SING.	PL.
N.	<i>bellum</i>	<i>bella</i>	-um	-a
G.	<i>belli</i>	<i>bellōrum</i>	-i	-ōrum
D.	<i>bellō</i>	<i>bellīs</i>	-ō	-īs
Ac.	<i>bellum</i>	<i>bella</i>	-um	-a
V.	<i>bellum</i>	<i>bella</i>	-um	-a
Ab.	<i>bellō</i>	<i>bellīs</i>	-ō	-īs

a. Learn the declension and table of case endings given above. The nominative, accusative, and vocative of neuters are alike in each number and end in -a in the plural. The vocative singular has a distinct form in -e for masculine nouns in -us, -ius; in all other nouns of all declensions the vocative is like the nominative.

106. Masculine adjectives of the second declension ending in -us are declined like *légātus*; those in -um are neuter and are declined like *bellum*. The feminine adjectives

corresponding to those of the second declension in **-us** and **-um** end in **-a** and belong to the first declension.

a. There are no feminine adjectives of the second declension.

Decline together: **puella bona**, a good girl; **légātus bonus**, a good lieutenant; and **bellum longum**, a long war.

Review order of words, 85–88.

107.

VOCABULARY

Casticus , -i, m., <i>Casticus</i> , a Gallic nobleman	tribūnus , -i, m., <i>tribune</i> , a Roman officer
iugum , -i, n., <i>yoke</i>	oppugnō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>attack, assault</i>
iūmentum , -i, n., <i>beast of burden, pack animal</i>	superō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>conquer, overcome</i>
mūrus , -i, m., <i>wall</i>	
oppidum , -i, n., <i>town</i>	

108.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Castici, mūri, mūrōrum, in mūris, ad mūrōs. 2. Iūmenta, iūmentis, iuga iūmentōrum, iugum iūmenti. 3. Tribūnī ad mūrūm oppidi properant, tribūnī in mūris oppidōrum sunt. 4. Movēs, movēbis, movēbātur, oppida oppugnābimus, Casticum vidēbimus. 5. Ad mūrūm oppidi, in mūris oppidōrum. 6. Iūmenta iuga portant,



IUMENTUM.

Casticus oppidum oppugnābat. 7. Nautae armābantur, agricolae quoque armābantur. 8. Tribūnus appellābitur.

II. 1. On the walls, along the wall, the walls of the towns, for the tribune, of the tribunes. 2. The yokes of the beasts of burden, you move, were moving, will move, will be moved. 3. You will be attacked, were seen, are being seen, they do see the tribunes on the walls. 4. We are hastening towards the towns of the Celts. 5. There were many beasts of burden near the walls of the towns. 6. The Belgae also were assaulting the towns of the Celts.

LESSON 15

THE SECOND DECLENSION, NOUNS IN *-ius* AND *-ium*

109. Nouns of the second declension in *-ius* and *-ium* end in the genitive singular in *-i* instead of *-ii* and have the accent on the penult: *gladius, gla'di, m., sword*; *praesidium, praesi'di, n., garrison*.

110. *gladius, gladi, m., cōnsilium, cōnsili, n., plan sword*

Stem *gladio-*, base *gladi-* Stem *cōnsilio-*, base *cōnsili-*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	<i>gladius</i>	<i>gladii</i>	<i>cōnsilium</i>	<i>cōnsilia</i>
G.	<i>gladi</i>	<i>gladiōrum</i>	<i>cōnsili</i>	<i>cōnsiliōrum,</i>
D.	<i>gladiō</i>	<i>gladiis</i>	<i>cōnsiliō</i>	<i>cōnsiliis</i>
Ac.	<i>gladium</i>	<i>gladiōs</i>	<i>cōnsilium</i>	<i>cōnsilia</i>
V.	<i>gladie</i>	<i>gladii</i>	<i>cōnsilium</i>	<i>cōnsilia</i>
Ab.	<i>gladiō</i>	<i>gladiis</i>	<i>cōnsiliō</i>	<i>cōnsiliis</i>

a. Compare the declension of these nouns with those in Lesson 14. -i of the base does not appear in the genitive singular of nouns in -ius and -ium.

b. Filius and proper names in -ius have the vocative singular in a single -i: O fili, O son; Vergili, Vergil.

c. Decline filius and Vergilius; auxiliium and maleficium.

III. VOCABULARY

aedificium, aedifici, n., *building*

auxiliium, auxili, n., *aid, help*

filius, fili, m., *son*

frūmentum, -i, n., *grain*; pl., *crops of grain*

Galli, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Gauls*

iniūria, -ae, f., *injury, injustice*

maleficium, malefici, n., *evil deed, wrong*

nūntius, nūnti, m., *messenger*

populus, -i, m., *people*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*

populus Rōmānus, *the Roman people*; always in this order, in the sing. only, with verb in the sing.



GALLIC SWORDS AND DAGGERS.

III. EXERCISES

- I. 1. Nūnti, nūntii, popule Rōmāne, magnae iniūriae, magni malefici. 2. Magna maleficia, auxiliō Gallōrum, O nūntie populi Rōmāni. 3. Nūntii populi Rōmāni ad ripam properant. 4. Multa aedificia in Ītaliā sunt. 5. Cōpia frūmentī in aedificia portābitur. 6. Agricola

cōpiam frūmenti in aedificia portābit. 7. Magna, O fili, est iniūria nautārum. 8. Gladius nūnti longus erat.

II. 1. The plans of the messenger, of aid, to (for) aid, O son! O messenger! O Roman people! 2. Of an evil deed, of evil deeds, of the messenger of the Roman people. 3. The evil deeds of the Gauls will be announced to the Roman people. 4. Help was being given to the sailors. 5. There were many buildings in the broad lands of the Roman people.

LESSON 16

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS IN -us, -a, -um — READING LESSON

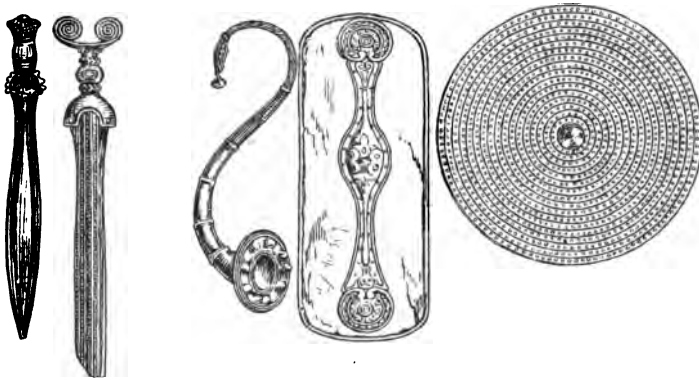
In the following table give the forms across the page. Do the same in declining all other adjectives.

113. *fidus*, m., *fida*, f., *fidum*, n., *faithful*
Stems: *fidō-*, m., *fidā-*, f., *fidō-*, n.; base *fid-*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	<i>fidus</i>	<i>fida</i>	<i>fidum</i>	<i>fidī</i>	<i>fidae</i>	<i>fida</i>
G.	<i>fidī</i>	<i>fidae</i>	<i>fidī</i>	<i>fidōrum</i>	<i>fidārum</i>	<i>fidōrum</i>
D.	<i>fidō</i>	<i>fidae</i>	<i>fidō</i>	<i>fidīs</i>	<i>fidīs</i>	<i>fidīs</i>
Ac.	<i>fidum</i>	<i>fidam</i>	<i>fidum</i>	<i>fidōs</i>	<i>fidās</i>	<i>fida</i>
V.	<i>fide</i>	<i>fida</i>	<i>fidum</i>	<i>fidī</i>	<i>fidae</i>	<i>fida</i>
Ab.	<i>fidō</i>	<i>fidā</i>	<i>fidō</i>	<i>fidīs</i>	<i>fidīs</i>	<i>fidīs</i>

a. Adjectives of this class are declined in the feminine like nouns of the first declension, and in the masculine and neuter like nouns of the second declension. They agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case, but not

always in form. An adjective of the first declension form never goes with a masculine or neuter noun. Most of the



GALLIC SWORDS, SIGNAL HORN, AND SHIELDS.

feminine adjectives so far given have masculine and neuter forms in **-us** and **-um**.

114.

SINGULAR

N.	rēgīna bona	nauta bonus
G.	rēgīnae bonae	nautae bonī
D.	rēgīnae bonae	nautae bonō
Ac.	rēgīnam bonam	nautam bonum
V.	rēgīna bona	nauta bone
Ab.	rēgīnā bonā	nautā bonō

PLURAL

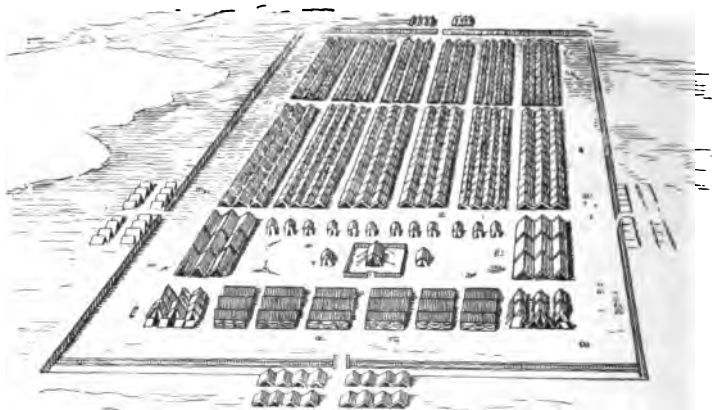
N.	rēgīnae bonae	nautae bonī
G.	rēgīnārum bonārum	nautārum bonōrum
D.	rēgīnis bonīs	nautīs bonīs
Ac.	rēgīnās bonās	nautās bonōs
V.	rēgīnae bonae	nautae bonī
Ab.	rēgīnis bonīs	nautīs bonīs

a. Decline together: *nauta fidus, frumentum bonum, carrus magnus*. Decline the Latin for *a faithful farmer*.

115.

VOCABULARY

<i>arma, -ōrum, n. pl., arms</i>	<i>dō,¹ dare, dedi, datus, give</i>
<i>carrus, -i, m., cart</i>	<i>habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,</i>
<i>castra, -ōrum, n. pl., camp</i>	<i>dwell, inhabit</i>
(in this meaning in pl. only)	<i>etiam, adv., also, still, even</i>
<i>multus, -a, -um, much; pl., many</i>	<i>nunc, adv., now, at this time</i>
	<i>semper, adv., always</i>



PLAN OF ROMAN CAMP.

116.

EXERCISES

1. *Dat, dabās, dabit, dabis, dās, dabō, dare, dant.*
2. *Dabitur, dabuntur, comparābitur, comparābant.*
3. *Est magna inopia frūmenti in castris populī Rōmāni.*

¹This verb does not belong to the first conjugation. The stem vowel is short except in the second person singular *dās* and two other forms to be given later.

4. Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum multa bella comparābunt. 5. Galli multōs carrōs incolis magni oppidi dant. 6. Filia agricolae boni nautis frūmenta dabat. 7. Nauta fidus in castris populī Rōmāni carrōs et iūmenta saepe videt.

II. 1. He gives, will give, was giving arms to the good lieutenants. 2. They are preparing, will prepare, were preparing arms for the faithful Gauls. 3. Aquitania, a large and beautiful country, is in Gaul. 4. The faithful farmers were providing much



GALLIC HELMETS.

The faithful farmers were providing much grain for the Roman people. 5. There is a great scarcity of grain in the large province. 6. The Roman people dwelt in a beautiful country.

117. READING LESSON — TERRA CLĀRA

In Italiā, terrā pulchrā populī Rōmāni, habitābant multī et clārī¹ virī, inter quōs² erant Caesar,³ Cicerō, Vergilius, aliī⁴ quoque quōs nōn nōminābimus.⁵ Caesar cum Celtis et Belgis saepe pugnābat et semper superābat.

¹ *many famous men*; et is omitted in translation when **multus** and a descriptive adjective are used to modify the same word.

² Accusative plural of relative pronoun; **inter quōs**, *among whom*.

³ If you cannot infer meaning from the form, consult the general vocabulary.

⁴ *others*.

⁵ **nōminō**, *name*.

Cicerō orātor magnus erat, Vergilius poēta clārus. Fābulae¹ pulchrae dē eis viris² in multīs terris nārrābantur³ et etiam nunc nārrantur.

LESSON 17

THE THIRD CONJUGATION — ACTIVE INDICATIVE, PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES — THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

118. All verbs whose present stem ends in *-e* belong to the third conjugation.

regō, I rule; present stem **rege-**

Principal Parts: **regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus**

PRESENT TENSE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. regō, <i>I rule</i> , etc.	regimus, <i>we rule</i> , etc.
2. regis, <i>you rule</i> , etc.	regitis, <i>you rule</i> , etc.
3. regit, <i>he rules</i> , etc.	regunt, <i>they rule</i> , etc.

In the present tense of this conjugation *-e* is absorbed by the ending *-ō*, and becomes *-u* before *-nt* and *-i* in the other forms.

IMPERFECT TENSE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. regēbam, <i>I was ruling</i> , etc.	regēbāmus, <i>we were ruling</i> , etc.
2. regēbās, <i>you were ruling</i> , etc.	regēbātis, <i>you were ruling</i> , etc.
3. regēbat, <i>he was ruling</i> , etc.	regēbant, <i>they were ruling</i> , etc.

¹ stories.

² about these men.

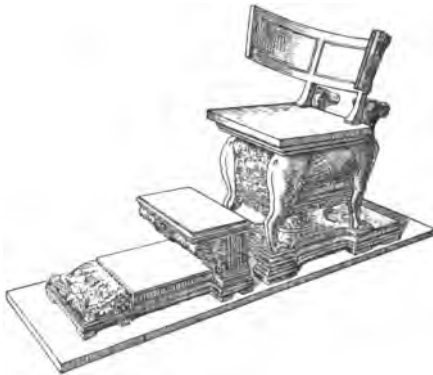
³ used to be told.

The imperfect tense, as in conjugations I and II, is made up of the present stem + the tense sign + the personal endings, but *-e* of the stem is lengthened before the tense sign *-bā*.

Pres. Stem	Tense Sign	2d Per. Sing. Ending	Verb Form
rege-	-bā	-s	regēbās, you were ruling, etc.

FUTURE TENSE

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>regam, I shall rule, etc.</i> | <i>regēmus, we shall rule, etc.</i> |
| 2. <i>regēs, you will rule, etc.</i> | <i>regētis, you will rule, etc.</i> |
| 3. <i>reget, he will rule, etc.</i> | <i>regent, they will rule, etc.</i> |



ROMAN CURULE CHAIR.

a. The future tense sign in the third conjugation is not *-bi* as in the first and second conjugations, but *-ā* in the first person singular and *-ē* in other forms. The *-ā* is shortened before *-m* and the *-ē* is shortened before *-t* or *-nt*. The stem vowel *-e* is dropped before the tense sign of the future.

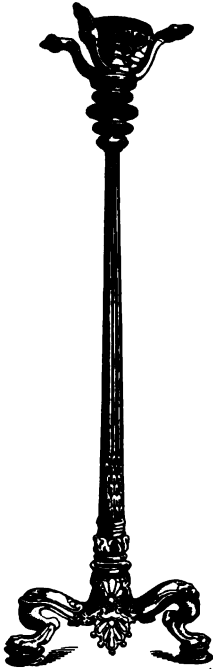
119. Study carefully the following examples : —

1. *Lēgātum vitā privat, he deprives the ambassador of life.*

2. *Nūntium cūrā liberat, he frees the messenger from care.*

3. *Gallōs ā Germānis liberābunt, they will free the Gauls from the Germans.*

a. In English verbs of depriving and freeing take the prepositions *of* or *from* with their objects. In Latin the ablative case is used, generally without a preposition. In case of other verbs of separation the usage varies, some taking the ablative with a preposition, some without, and some admitting either construction. For actual separation of some material thing from another and for separation from a person, *ā, dē,* or *ē* with the ablative is ordinarily used.



ROMAN CANDELABRUM.

120. RULE

The Ablative of Separation. — *Verbs denoting separation are used with the ablative case, either with or without a preposition.*

NOTE. — This rule extends to adjectives of like meaning ; *cūrā liber est, he is free from care.*

121.

VOCABULARY

animus, -i, m., mind, spirit
cūra, -ae, f., care
proelium, proeli, n., battle

tēlum, -i, n., missile, weapon, javelin
vita, -ae, f., life



Now thy Forum roars no longer; fallen every purple Caesar's dome.—*Tennyson.*

(71)

AT VERGIL'S TOMB.

(Naples.)

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentus,
contend, hasten

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead*
ēducō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus,
lead out

gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, *wage,*
carry on

incolō, -ere, -uī, —, *live in,*
inhabit, used with acc.

liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *free,*
deliver

privō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *de-*
prive

quondam, adv., *once*

122.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Contendēbās, ducētis, geritis, incolunt, incolēbant.

2. Ēducit, ēducet, ēducēbat, ēducunt, ēducēt.

3. Gerunt, gerēbant, gerent, gerēmus, gerimus.

4. Belgae quoque frū-

mentō saepe privābuntur.

5. Animus puellae quoque cūrā

liberābitur.

6. Bellum longum

cum populō Rōmānō gerēbātur.

7. Lēgātum ā tēlis privant.

8. Belgae ad proelium properābant.

9. Populus Rōmānus quondam

Galliam regēbat.

10. Tēla incolis oppidōrum saepe dabuntur.

II. 1. The Celts were carry-

ing on war, they will carry on

war with the Roman people.

2. The Aquitanians were con-

tending, do contend, will contend.

3. They will deprive

the Roman people of grain.

4. The farmers also were

freed from care.

5. The tribune was being deprived of

his weapons.

6. The messengers were hastening to the

walls of the town.

7. The Roman people live in a



ROMAN LAMPS.

7. The Roman people live in a famous land.

LESSON 18

THE SECOND DECLENSION (*Continued*), NOUNS IN **-er** AND **-ir** — THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE — THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND OBJECT — READING LESSON

123. **puer, -eri, m., ager, agri, m., vir, viri, m.,**

	<i>boy</i>	<i>field</i>	<i>man</i>	CASE ENDINGS
	Stem puero- , base puer-	Stem agro- , base agr-	Stem viro- , base vir-	
SINGULAR				
N. V.	puer	ager	vir	—
G.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
D.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
Ac.	puerum	agrū	virū	-um
Ab.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
PLURAL				
N. V.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
G.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
D.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
Ac.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
Ab.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

124. Nouns of the second declension in **-er** and **-ir** are masculine. The stem ends in **-o** as in nouns in **-us** and **-um**. Note also the base to which the endings are joined to make the various case forms. The endings are the same as in nouns in **-us** except that the ending is lacking in the nominative and vocative singular.

125. Examine the following:—

I. **Oppidum oppugnāre cōstituunt, they decide to attack the town.**

2. **Liberōs convocāre mātūrat**, *he hastens to call the children together.*

The use of the infinitive above is exactly the same as in English.

126.

RULE

The Complementary Infinitive. — *The infinitive is used with verbs meaning to decide, hasten, begin, wish, be able, and, in general, with those requiring a second act of the same subject to complete their meaning.*

127. In the sentence, *Casticus orders the Belgae to move their camp*, the object of *orders* is *the Belgae to move their camp*. Similarly in the Latin translation, **Casticus Belgās castra movēre iubet**, the object of *iubet* consists of the infinitive **movēre** with its subject **Belgās** in the accusative.

128.

RULE

The Infinitive as Object. — *The infinitive with a subject in the accusative case may be the object of a verb.*

a. This construction is used with **iubeō**, *I order*; **vetō**, *I forbid*; **sino**, *I permit*, and some other verbs of like meaning. It is also used with certain verbs of wishing when the subject of the infinitive is different from that of the introductory verb.

129. In the sentence, *To see is to believe*, the infinitive *to see* is used as the subject and *to believe* as the predicate of *is*. In the Latin translation, **Vidēre est crēdere**, we see the same use of the infinitive as subject and predicate of **est**. In the sentence, **Lēgātum pugnāre est vincere**, *for the lieutenant to fight is to conquer*, **lēgātum** is the subject, in the accusative case, of **pugnāre**, and together with it forms

the subject of *est*, while *vincere* is its predicate. In the sentence, *Nāre est iūcundum*, *to swim is pleasant* (*it is pleasant to swim*), the predicate adjective *iūcundum* is in the neuter singular to agree with the infinitive subject *nāre*.

130.

RULE

Infinitive as Subject and Predicate. — *The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be the subject or predicate of a verb. A predicate adjective used in this construction is in the neuter singular.*

131.

VOCABULARY

<i>amicus</i> , -a, -um, <i>friendly</i> ; as noun in m., <i>friend</i>	<i>novus</i> , -a, -um, <i>new</i>
<i>aper</i> , <i>apri</i> , m., <i>wild boar</i>	<i>periculōsus</i> , -a, -um, <i>dangerous</i>
<i>Aquitāni</i> , -ōrum, m. pl., <i>the Aquitanians</i> , a people of Gaul	<i>cōstituō</i> , -ere, -uī, -ūtus, <i>decide, determine, station</i>
<i>magister</i> , -tri, m., <i>master, teacher</i>	<i>iubeō</i> , -ēre, <i>iussī</i> , <i>iussus</i> , <i>order, w. inf.</i>
<i>signum</i> , -i, n., <i>standard, signal</i>	<i>mātūrō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>hasten</i>
<i>iūcundus</i> , -a, -um, <i>pleasant</i>	<i>prohibeō</i> , -ēre, -uī, -itus, <i>prevent, hinder</i>

a. Like *puer* decline :

<i>armiger</i> , -erī, m., <i>armor bearer</i>
<i>liberī</i> , -ōrum, m. pl., <i>children</i>
<i>signifer</i> , -erī, m., <i>standard bearer</i>
<i>vesper</i> , -erī, m., <i>evening</i>

Most nouns of the second declension in *-er* are declined like *ager*. Learn the above list and give base and stem of each noun.

132.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Cōstituunt, cōstituēbant, cōstituent, mātūrābunt, appellābantur. 2. Appellābitur, appellāberis, appellābimini, appellābere. 3. Magister in agrōs liberōs convocāre mātūrat. 4. Lēgātus bellum cum Helvētiis gerere cō-



DESTRUCTION OF A GERMAN VILLAGE BY ROMAN SOLDIERS.

(Pillar of Antoninus.)

stituēbat. 5. Lēgātus nūntiōs ad castra properāre iubet. 6. Periculōsum est cum populō Rōmānō bellum gerere. 7. Aprōs in agrīs vidēre nōn est iūcundum. 8. Iūcundum est clāram terram incolere. 9. Vir in oppidum per agrōs mātūrāre parābat.

II. 1. You will hasten, he will decide, they will be freed from care. 2. I was hastening, you do decide, he did prepare, you will be deprived. 3. It is pleasant to live-in the broad land of the Gauls. 4. They ordered the inhabitants of the island to arm the sailors. 5. The tribunes decided to give new standards to the standard bearers. 6. It will be dangerous for the Gauls to fight against the Roman people. 7. The wild boars will be deprived of life.

133.

READING LESSON

Belgae et¹ Aquitānī et Celtae Galliam incolunt, quā dē causā² Gallī appellantur. Trāns Rhēnum incolunt Germāni. In agrōs Germānōrum Gallī saepe veniunt³ et ibi⁴ cum Germānis contendunt. Germāni quoque in agrīs Gallōrum bellum gerunt, quā dē causā fortissimī⁵ sunt.

In future reading lessons and exercises consult the general vocabulary for any words not given in the special lists.

LESSON 19

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS IN -er, -a, -um — THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT — WORD LIST II

134. miser, misera, miserum, *wretched*
Stems: misero-, miserā-, misero-; base miser-

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	miser	misera	miserum
G.	miserī	miseræ	miserī

¹ Omit in translating.

³ come.

² and for this reason.

⁴ there.

⁵ very brave.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
D.	miserō	miseræ	miserō
Ac.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Ab.	miserō	miserā	miserō

PLURAL

N. V.	miserī	miseræ	miserā
G.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Ac.	miserōs	miserās	miserā
Ab.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

noster, nostra, nostrum, our, ours

Stems: **nostro-, nostrā-, nostro-; base nostr-**

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	noster	nostra	nostrum
G.	nostrī	nostræ	nostrī
D.	nostrō	nostræ	nostrō
Ac.	nostrum	nostram	nostrum
Ab.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō

PLURAL

N. V.	nostrī	nostræ	nostrā
G.	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
D.	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
Ac.	nostrōs	nostrās	nostrā
Ab.	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

135. Notice that the masculine of **miser** is declined like **puer**, and the masculine of **noster** like **ager**. Compare the nominative and genitive of **miser** with the same cases of **noster** and see the necessity of learning the genitive singular in order to know the base.

- a. Decline: **agricola miser, noster puer, populus liber.**

136. Compare the English with the Latin in the following:—

Gladiō pugnat, he is fighting with a sword.

Sagittā vulnerābitur, he will be wounded by an arrow.

Here the idea of means or instrument is expressed in the English by the use of the prepositions *with* and *by*, with their objects. In the Latin the same idea is expressed by the use of the ablative case without a preposition.

137.

RULE

The Ablative of Means or Instrument.— *The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative case without a preposition.*

a. Review passive forms in Lesson 12.

138.

VOCABULARY

periculum, -i, n., <i>danger, peril</i>	iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, <i>help, assist</i>
pilum, -i, n., <i>javelin</i>	
scūtum, -i, n., <i>shield</i>	mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus, <i>send</i>
cotidiānus, -a, -um, <i>daily</i>	poscō, -ere, poposci, —, <i>demand</i>
fortissimus, -a, -um, <i>very brave, bravest</i>	continenter, adv., <i>continually</i>
liber, -era, -erum, <i>free</i>	atque, conj., <i>and, and also</i>
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, <i>beautiful</i>	quod, conj., <i>because</i>

139.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Iuvāris, iuvābantur, poscēbātur, pugnābant, privāberis, movēbitur. 2. Viri gladiis et pilis armābantur. 3. Miseri oppidōrum incolae frumentō iuvābantur. 4. Ab agris pulchris Helvētiōrum prohibēbuntur. 5. Pila et gladii et scūta carris iūmentisque portantur. 6. Fortissimī

appellantur quod continenter cum multis viris contendunt.

7. Proeliis¹ superābant quod longis pilis armābantur.



GERMAN SLINGERS.

(Pillar of Marcus Aurelius.)

8. Cotidiānis proeliis gladiis atque pilis pugnant agricolae fidi, et auxilium ad lēgātum mittunt. 9. Cūrā liberī erant quod amicōs fortissimōs habēbant.

II. 1. You will be advised, they were being prevented, we shall be called, they are free from danger. 2. The wretched Helvetians will not be assisted with grain. 3. By our swords we freed the Gauls from danger. 4. They will send aid to many men because they are very brave. 5. The Roman people were being armed with swords and javelins.

6. They were contending in daily battles with the Germans. 7. They were armed with swords and shields and fought continually against the Celts.

140.

WORD LIST II

aedificium	atque	cōstituō
ager	auxilium	contendō
amicus	bellum	continenter
animus	carrus	cotidiānus
aper	Casticus	cotidiē
Aquitāni	castra	cūrā
arma	cōnsilium	dūcō

¹ Ablative of Means, translate *in battles*.

ēducō	liber	populus
etiam	liberī	poscō
fidus	liberō	privō
filius	magister	proelium
fortissimus	maleficium	prohibeō
frumentum	mātūrō	puer
Galli	miser	pulcher
gerō	mittō	quod
gladius	multus	quondam
habitō	mūrus	regō
Helvētii	noster	Rōmānus
incolō	novus	scūtum
iniūria	nunc	semper
iubeō	nūntius	signum
iūcundus	oppidum	tēlum
iugum	oppugnō	tribūnus
iūmentum	periculōsus	vesper
iuvō	periculum	vīr
lēgātus	pīlum	vīta

Use this and subsequent word lists like List I (100).

LESSON 20

THE THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT STEMS— READING LESSON

141. Nouns of the Third Declension. — These have stems ending in *-i* or a consonant. Nouns with consonant stems may be divided into two classes:—

1. Nouns which add *-s* to the base to form the nominative singular.

2. Nouns which add no termination to the base to form the nominative singular.

142. **Nominatives in -s.** — Nouns which add -s to the base to form the nominative singular include masculines and feminines only and are declined as follows: —

	dux, ducis, m., leader		lēx, lēgis, f., law		CASE	
	Stem and base duc-		Stem and base lēg-		ENDINGS	
	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
N. V.	dux	ducēs	lēx	lēgēs	-s	-ēs
G.	ducis	ducum	lēgis	lēgum	-is	-um
D.	duci	ducibus	lēgi	lēgibus	-i	-ibus
Ac.	ducem	ducēs	lēgem	lēgēs	-em	-ēs
Ab.	duce	ducibus	lēge	lēgibus	-e	-ibus

princeps, principis, m., <i>chief</i>	miles, militis, m., <i>soldier</i>
---	--

	Stem and base princip-		Stem and base milit-			
	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
N. V.	princeps	principēs	miles	militēs	-s	-ēs
G.	principis	principum	militis	militum	-is	-um
D.	principi	principibus	militi	militibus	-i	-ibus
Ac.	principem	principēs	militem	militēs	-em	-ēs
Ab.	principe	principibus	milite	militibus	-e	-ibus

aestās, aestātis, f., <i>summer</i>	obses, obsidis, m. and f., <i>hostage</i>
---	---

	Stem and base aestāt-		Stem and base obsid-			
	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
N. V.	aestās	aestātēs	obses	obsidēs	-s	-ēs
G.	aestātis	aestātum	obsidis	obsidum	-is	-um
D.	aestāti	aestātibus	obsidi	obsidibus	-i	-ibus
Ac.	aestātem	aestātēs	obsidem	obsidēs	-em	-ēs
Ab.	aestāte	aestātibus	obside	obsidibus	-e	-ibus

143. The stem and base are the same in these nouns and are found by dropping any case ending except the nominative and vocative singular. Some consonant and vowel changes take place in forming the nominative, as:—

1. A final *-c* or *-g* of the base unites with *-s* and forms *-x*; *duc- + -s = dux*; *lĕg- + -s = lĕx*.

2. A final *-t* or *-d* of the base is dropped before *-s*, and in many nouns of two syllables *-i* in the base is changed to *-e* in the nominative: *obses* from base *obsid-*. Note the progress of these changes: *obsid-*, *obsids*, *obses*.

a. Decline: *rĕx*, *rĕgis*, m., *king*; *civitās*, *civitātis*, f., *state*; *virtūs*, *virtūtis*, f., *manhood*, *bravery*, stating stem and base in each instance. Learn these words.

144.

VOCABULARY

Dumnorix , <i>-igis</i> , m., <i>Dumnorix</i> , a Gallic leader	angustus , <i>-a, -um</i> , <i>narrow</i>
Orgetorix , <i>-igis</i> , m., <i>Orgetorix</i> , a Gallic leader	pōnō , <i>-ere, posui, positus</i> , <i>set, place, pitch</i> (of a camp)
Rhēnus , <i>-i</i> , m., <i>the Rhine</i>	ita , adv., <i>thus, so</i>

145.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Rĕgī, rĕgum, contrā rĕgem, cum civitātibus, civitātum, cum civitāte. 2. Principēs laudantur, monēbuntur, vocābantur. 3. Orgetorix Helvētiōrum dux quondam erat. 4. Dumnorix bellum continenter gerit. 5. Agricolaē frūmentum in oppida finitima Helvētiōrum portābant. 6. Filius principis castra in agrīs pulchris pōnēbat. 7. Populus Rōmānus rĕgī auxilium dabat. 8. Ita per angustās viās in lātōs agrōs principum contendēbant. 9. Ad Rhēnum castra pōnēbat et multōs militēs convocabat.

II. 1. For the leaders, of the neighboring states, against Dumnorix, with the chiefs. 2. By (with) bravery, of the hostages, in the king's land, in a large state. 3. He warns the king, the son of the king is warned. 4. The camp was being pitched, the camp will be pitched. 5. New standards and weapons will be given to the sons of the chiefs. 6. The sons of the leaders are preparing



THE RHINE.

to pitch their camp in Gaul. 7. The king ordered the chiefs to free the soldiers from care.

146.

READING LESSON

Helvētii sunt Celtārum fortissimi quod cum Germānis ferē cotidiānis proeliis contendunt, et eōs ¹ saepe superant. Angustōs finis ² habent, quā dē causā ³ nūntiōs ad Caesarem

¹ them.² borders.³ for this reason.

mittunt qui dicunt: "Angustōs finis habēmus, ibi¹ remanere nōn possumus,² per prōvinciam in lātōs agrōs exire³ volumus."⁴ Helvētiōrum dux quondam erat Orgetorix, vir magnae grātia⁵ in civitāte. Coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis faciēbat.⁶

LESSON 21

THE THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT STEMS

(Continued)

147. Consonant stems which add no case ending in the nominative singular include nouns of all genders. The nominative, accusative, and vocative of neuters are alike in each number, and in the plural end in -a.

	148. legiō, -ōnis, f., <i>legion</i>	cōnsul, -is, m., <i>consul</i>	pater, patris, m., <i>father</i>	CASE ENDINGS
	Stem and base legiōn-	Stem and base cōnsul-	Stem and base patr-	
SINGULAR				
N. V.	legiō	cōnsul	pater	—
G.	legiōnis	cōnsulis	patris	-is
D.	legiōni	cōnsuli	patrī	-i
Ac.	legiōnem	cōnsulem	patrem	-em
Ab.	legiōne	cōnsule	patre	-e
PLURAL				
N. V.	legiōnēs	cōnsulēs	patrēs	-ēs
G.	legiōnum	cōnsulum	patrum	-um
D.	legiōnibus	cōnsulibus	patribus	-ibus
Ac.	legiōnēs	cōnsulēs	patrēs	-ēs
Ab.	legiōnibus	cōnsulibus	patribus	-ibus

¹ there.² we can.³ to go out.⁴ we wish.⁵ of great influence.⁶ he was making.

	flūmen, -inis, n., <i>river</i>	corpus, -oris, n., <i>body</i>	genus, -eris, n., <i>race</i>	CASE
	Stem and	Stem and	Stem and	ENDINGS
	base flūmin-	base corpor-¹	base gener-¹	
SINGULAR				
N. V.	flūmen	corpus	genus	—
G.	flūminis	corporis	generis	-is
D.	flūmini	corpori	generi	-i
Ac.	flūmen	corpus	genus	—
Ab.	flūmine	corpore	genere	-e
PLURAL				
N. V.	flūmina	corpora	genera	-a
G.	flūminum	corporum	generum	-um
D.	flūminibus	corporibus	generibus	-ibus
Ac.	flūmina	corpora	genera	-a
Ab.	flūminibus	corporibus	generibus	-ibus

a. The stem and base are found by dropping the genitive case ending. In what respect do these tables of case endings differ from those in Lesson 20? Review forms in that lesson.

149. Note carefully the following points: —

1. Most masculine and feminine stems in **-n** drop this letter in the nominative singular and change the preceding vowel to **-ō**; as, **virgō, virginis, f., virgin,** stem and base **virgin-**.

2. Most neuters in **-n** retain this letter in the nominative singular and change a preceding **-i** to **-e**; as, **nōmen, -inis,** n., *name,* stem and base **nōmin-**. Stems in **-er** and **-or** have **-us** in the nominative singular; as, **genus, -eris, n.,** *race,* stem and base **gener-**.

¹ These were originally **-s** stems.

3. Stems in **-tr** insert **-e** between **t** and **r** in the nominative singular; as, **māter, -tris, f., mother,** stem and base **mātr-**.

150.

VOCABULARY

Caesar, -is, m., Caesar
homō, -inis, m. and f., man,
human being, person
lĕgātĭō, -ōnis, f., embassy
nōmen, -inis, n., name
finitĭmus, -a, -um, neighbor-
ing; m. pl. as noun,
neighbors

dĕfĕndō, -ere, -i, -fĕnsus, de-
fend
manĕō, -ĕre, mānsĭ, mānsus,
remain, await
trādūcō, -ere, -dūxĭ, -ductus,
transport, lead or carry
across, with two accusa-
tives

151.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Hominum, hominibus, nōmina, lĕgātĭōnĭ, lĕgātĭōnum, cōnsulis, flūmina. 2. Legiōnem, legiōnis, patris, patrum, patrem, patribus, nōminum. 3. Orgetorix lĕgātĭōnem ad finitimās civitatēs mittet. 4. Lĕgātĭō ad multās civitatēs Gallōrum mittitur. 5. Homō bonus nōmen patriae semper dĕfendĕt. 6. Ita lĕgātus cōpiās flūmen trādūcit. 7. Dux militēs ē castris cotidiē dūcet. 8. Cōsul lĕgātĭōnēs in oppida multōrum hominum mittĕbat. 9. Helvĕtĭi angustōs agrōs habĕbant.

II. 1. The consuls, of the consuls, to (for) an embassy, near the river, near the rivers, of the deep rivers. 2. With men, for the father, for the legions, of the legions, of



ROMAN CONSUL.

many legions. 3. The men¹ were defending the town.
 4. The king was leading the forces of the state through the fields to the river. 5. The consul led the embassy of the states across the river Rhine. 6. Thus the consuls always defended the name of the Roman people.
 7. Many races of men used to inhabit Gaul.

LESSON 22

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION—ACTIVE INDICATIVE.
 PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES—THE
 ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

152. All verbs whose present stem ends in -i belong to the fourth conjugation.

audiō, *I hear*; present stem **audi-**

Principal Parts: **audiō**, **audire**, **audivi**, **auditus**

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. audiō , <i>I hear</i> , etc. | audimus , <i>we hear</i> , etc. |
| 2. audis , <i>you hear</i> , etc. | auditis , <i>you hear</i> , etc. |
| 3. audit , <i>he hears</i> , etc. | audiunt , <i>they hear</i> , etc. |

IMPERFECT TENSE

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. audiēbam , <i>I was hearing</i> ,
etc. | audiēbāmus , <i>we were hear-</i>
<i>ing</i> , etc. |
| 2. audiēbās , <i>you were hear-</i>
<i>ing</i> , etc. | audiēbātis , <i>you were hear-</i>
<i>ing</i> , etc. |
| 3. audiēbat , <i>he was hear-</i>
<i>ing</i> , etc. | audiēbant , <i>they were hear-</i>
<i>ing</i> , etc. |

¹ Do not use **homō**. Why?

FUTURE TENSE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. audiam, <i>I shall hear</i> , etc. | audiēmus, <i>we shall hear</i> , etc. |
| 2. audiēs, <i>you will hear</i> , etc. | audiētis, <i>you will hear</i> , etc. |
| 3. audiet, <i>he will hear</i> , etc. | audient, <i>they will hear</i> , etc. |

a. In the third person plural of the present tense -u is inserted before the personal ending, but in every other



RUINS OF ROMAN BATH.
(Timgad, Algeria.)

form of this tense the endings are added directly to the present stem, with the usual shortening of the stem vowel before -ō, -t, and -nt.

b. In the imperfect tense -ē is inserted between the present stem and the tense sign -bā, with the regular shortening of the stem vowel before another vowel. Otherwise the formation is the same as in the first and second conjugations (75, 84).

153. The future tense sign in the fourth conjugation (cf. 118 a) is *-ā* in the first person singular and *-ē* in the other forms, with the usual shortening before final *-m*, *-t*, and *-nt*.

a. Learn and inflect as above the following verbs of the fourth conjugation: —

inveniō, invenire, invēni, inventus, find
mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvi, mūnītus, fortify
sentīō, sentīre, sēnsi, sēnsus, feel, perceive, know
vīnciō, vīncīre, vīnci, vīncītus, bind

154. In the English sentence, *The boy excels his master in valor*, the word *valor* expresses the quality in which the boy excels, and is used as the object of the preposition. In the Latin translation, **Puer magistrum virtūte praestat**, the same idea is expressed by the use of the ablative case without a preposition.

155. RULE

The Ablative of Specification. — *The ablative without a preposition is used to express that in respect to which anything is or is done.*

156. VOCABULARY

amicitia, -ae, f., friendship	infirmus, -a, -um, weak
auctōritās, -ātis, f., authority, <i>influence</i>	cōfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>establish, fix</i>
coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., conspiracy	conveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus, <i>come together, meet</i>
nōbilitās, -ātis, f., nobility, <i>the nobles</i>	praestō, -āre, -stiti, -stitus, <i>excel</i>
pāx, pācis, f., peace	
statūra, -ae, f., stature, height (of a person)	veniō, -ire, vēni, ventūrus,¹ <i>come</i>

¹ Future active participle. When no perfect passive participle exists, the future active participle is put in the place of the fourth principal part.

157.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Mūnit, mūniunt, mūniēbat, mūniēbant. 2. Veniet, veniētis, veniēbās, veniēbātis, veniēs. 3. Mūrum mūniēbāmus, mūniētis, mūnimus, mūnitis. 4. Helvētīi pācem et amicitiam cum multis civitatibus cōfirmābunt. 5. Magister puerum auctōritāte praestat. 6. Militēs Rōmāni Gallōs virtūte saepe praestant. 7. Cōstituunt cum tribūnis in agrō manēre. 8. Vir puerum statūrā praestat. 9. Magnus corpore erat sed infirmus animō.

II. 1. I come, I shall come, we shall hear, you are hearing. 2. He fortifies, he will be fortifying, they were fortifying. 3. The boy does not excel the man in valor. 4. The Germans excel the Gauls in stature. 5. We shall establish peace and friendship with the states of Gaul. 6. There was a conspiracy of the nobles in the state. 7. The Gauls were not tall (**magni**) in stature.

LESSON 23

THE THIRD CONJUGATION—VERBS IN -**is**—ACTIVE INDICATIVE, PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES—**sum**—THE DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR—READING LESSON—WORD LIST III

158. **capiō**, *I take, catch, capture*; present stem **cape-**
Principal Parts: **capiō, capere, cēpi, captus**

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. capiō , <i>I take</i> , etc.	capimus , <i>we take</i> , etc.
2. capis , <i>you take</i> , etc.	capitis , <i>you take</i> , etc.
3. capit , <i>he takes</i> , etc.	capiunt , <i>they take</i> , etc.

IMPERFECT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. capiēbam, <i>I was taking,</i> etc.	capiēbāmus, <i>we were taking,</i> etc.
2. capiēbās, <i>you were tak-</i> <i>ing,</i> etc.	capiēbātis, <i>you were taking,</i> etc.
3. capiēbat, <i>he was taking,</i> etc.	capiēbant, <i>they were taking,</i> etc.

FUTURE TENSE

1. capiam, <i>I shall take,</i> etc.	capiemus, <i>we shall take,</i> etc.
2. capiēs, <i>you will take,</i> etc.	capiētis, <i>you will take,</i> etc.
3. capient, <i>he will take,</i> etc.	capient, <i>they will take,</i> etc.

a. In the above tenses **capiō** is inflected like **audiō** in the first person singular and third person plural of the present tense, and in the imperfect and future throughout; but in the other forms it follows the inflection of **regō** (152, 118).

b. Learn and inflect the following verbs, naming the present stem of each:—

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, make, do
cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectus, finish, accomplish
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, hurl, cast

159. **sum, I am;** present stem **es-**
 Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fui, futūrus** (future active
 participle)

PRESENT TENSE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. sum , <i>I am</i>	sumus , <i>we are</i>
2. es , <i>you are</i>	estis , <i>you are</i>
3. est , <i>he is</i>	sunt , <i>they are</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE	
1. eram , <i>I was</i>	erāmus , <i>we were</i>
2. erās , <i>you were</i>	erātis , <i>you were</i>
3. erat , <i>he was</i>	erant , <i>they were</i>

FUTURE TENSE	
1. erō , <i>I shall be</i>	erimus , <i>we shall be</i>
2. eris , <i>you will be</i>	eritis , <i>you will be</i>
3. erit , <i>he will be</i>	erunt , <i>they will be</i>

a. Learn the conjugation of this verb thoroughly. It occurs very frequently as a principal verb and is used in the conjugation of certain passive forms.

160. In English we may express the idea of possession by using the verb *have*, with an object denoting the thing possessed; as, *The soldier had a sword*. In Latin we may do the same, **Miles gladium habēbat**, or we may express the idea as follows: **Militi erat gladius**, which literally translated reads, *There was a sword to the soldier*. Here the word denoting the possessor goes into the dative case, while the name of the object possessed is in the nominative.

161.

RULE

The Dative of the Possessor. — *The dative case is used with **sum** and similar verbs to denote the possessor. The name of the object possessed is in the nominative case.*

162.

VOCABULARY

mōs, mōris, m., custom, manner *renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, renew*
profectiō, -ōnis, f., departure *-que, enclitic (14, 4) conj.,*
privātus, -a, -um, private *and, always attached to*
incendō, -ere, -ī, -cēnsus, set *the second of the two*
on fire *words which it connects*
sed, conj., but

163.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Facimus, faciēbāmus, faciēmus, facient.* 2. *Cōnficiet, cōnficitis, iaciēs, iaciētis, iaciet, iaciēbant.* 3. *Virō erant multi amici.* 4. *Helvētiis erat via per prōvinciam.* 5. *Multae hastae et scūta militibus populi Rōmāni in castris erant.* 6. *Pāx atque amicitia cum finitimis civitatibus renovābuntur.* 7. *Helvētii oppida aedificiaque privāta incendēbant.* 8. *Casticus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis in civitate faciēbat.*

II. 1. They were making, they will be making, he will finish, the war will be renewed. 2. I was doing, he is finishing, they do finish, they will capture, I was capturing. 3. The town had a wall and a ditch (*two ways*). 4. Orgetorix decides to make a conspiracy of the nobles because he¹ has many friends. 5. The Helvetians were renewing peace with their neighbors. 6. Dumnorix did not excel Orgetorix in valor. 7. The tribunes of the soldiers had weapons. 8. They are setting on fire the buildings of their towns.

164.

READING LESSON

Helvētii auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti² frūmentum et carrōs et iūmenta comparāre cōstituunt et pācem amicitiamque cum proximis civitatibus cōfirmāre. Profectiōnem

¹ *eī, lit., to him, dat. of the possessor (160, 161).*

² *influenced.*



in tertium annum¹ cōfirmant et Orgetorigem ducem dēligunt. Oppida et aedificia incendunt. Dumnorix, princeps civitātis, et Casticus Orgetorigi auxilium dant.

¹ for the third year.

165.

WORD LIST III

aestās	cōsul	iaciō	nōbilitās	-que
amicitia	conveniō	incendō	nōmen	renovō
angustus	corpus	inveniō	obses	rēx
auctōritās	dēfendō	ita	Orgetorix	Rhēnus
audiō	Dumnorix	lēgātiō	pater	sentīō
Caesar	dux	legiō	pāx	statūra
capiō	faciō	lēx	pōnō	sum
civitās	finitimus	maneō	praestō	trādūcō
cōficiō	flūmen	miles	princeps	veniō
cōfirmō	genus	mōs	privātus	vinciō
coniūratiō	homō	mūniō	profectiō	virtūs



MURAL PAINTINGS AT POMPEII.

LESSON 24

THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS — PASSIVE
INDICATIVE, PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE
TENSES — THE ABLATIVE OF THE PERSONAL AGENT
— REVIEW OF FORMS IN LESSON 12

166. **regor**, *I am ruled or being ruled*; present stem **rege-**
Principal Parts: **regor, regi, rēctus sum**

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. regor , <i>I am ruled</i> , etc.	regimur , <i>we are ruled</i> , etc.
2. regeris (-re), <i>you are ruled</i> , etc.	regimini , <i>you are ruled</i> , etc.
3. regitur , <i>he is ruled</i> , etc.	reguntur , <i>they are ruled</i> , etc.

IMPERFECT TENSE

1. regēbar , <i>I was being ruled</i> , etc.	regēbāmur , <i>we were being ruled</i> , etc.
2. regēbāris (-re), <i>you were being ruled</i> , etc.	regēbāmini , <i>you were being ruled</i> , etc.
3. regēbātur , <i>he was being ruled</i> , etc.	regēbantur , <i>they were being ruled</i> , etc.

FUTURE TENSE

1. regar , <i>I shall be ruled</i>	regēmur , <i>we shall be ruled</i>
2. regēris (-re), <i>you will be ruled</i>	regēmini , <i>you will be ruled</i>
3. regētur , <i>he will be ruled</i>	regentur , <i>they will be ruled</i>

audior, *I am heard or being heard*; present stem **audi-**
Principal Parts: **audior**, **audiri**, **auditus sum**

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. audior , <i>I am heard</i> , etc.	audimur , <i>we are heard</i> , etc.
2. audiris (-re) , <i>you are heard</i> , etc.	audimini , <i>you are heard</i> , etc.
3. auditur , <i>he is heard</i> , etc.	audiuntur , <i>they are heard</i> , etc.

IMPERFECT TENSE

1. audiēbar , <i>I was being heard</i> , etc.	audiēbāmur , <i>we were being heard</i> , etc.
2. audiēbāris (-re) , <i>you were being heard</i> , etc.	audiēbāmini , <i>you were being heard</i> , etc.
3. audiēbātur , <i>he was being heard</i> , etc.	audiēbantur , <i>they were being heard</i> , etc.

FUTURE TENSE

1. audiar , <i>I shall be heard</i>	audiēmur , <i>we shall be heard</i>
2. audiēris (-re) , <i>you will be heard</i>	audiēmini , <i>you will be heard</i>
3. audiētur , <i>he will be heard</i>	audientur , <i>they will be heard</i>

a. In the passive voice, the imperfect and future of the third and fourth conjugations, and the present of the fourth conjugation, are formed in the same way as in the active, except that they use the passive personal endings. The second person singular present of the third conjugation is irregular, retaining the *-e* of the stem instead of changing it to *-i*: **regeris**, not **regiris**.

167. In the sentence, *Caesar calls the soldiers together*, Caesar is the doer of the act expressed by the verb.

This is turned into Latin by **Caesar militēs convocat**, with the doer or agent of the action in the nominative case. If the sentence is changed to the passive, it becomes, *The soldiers are called together by Caesar*, **Militēs**

ā Caesare convocantur. Here the direct object, **militēs**, becomes the subject in the passive, and the original subject, **Caesar**, the agent of the action, is in the ablative case with the preposition **ā** or **ab**.



ROMAN PEASANT.

a. Compare this use of the ablative with the ablative of means or instrument which, in Latin, is always used without a preposition (136-137).

168.

RULE

The Ablative of the Personal Agent.

— *The voluntary agent of an action is expressed with passive verbs by the ablative with ā or ab.*

169.

VOCABULARY

castellum, -i, n., <i>fortress, redoubt</i>	crēber, -bra, -brum, <i>frequent, numerous</i>
equus, -i, m., <i>horse</i>	dispōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, <i>set, place</i>
frūgēs, -um, f. pl., <i>produce, fruits (of the field)</i>	impediō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, <i>hinder, impede</i>
praesidium, praesidi, n., <i>guard, garrison, protection</i>	instruō, -ere, -struxi, -structus, <i>draw up, form</i>

terreō, ēre, -ui, -itus, *frighten*, neque, conj., and not, preferred to et nōn, unless a
terrify single word is negated
 cūr, adv., *why*

170.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Mūnimur, mūniēbāmur, regeris, dispōnitur, dispōnuntur, dispōnentur. 2. Mūnītur, mūniētur, mūnientur, mūniris, mūnire (*two ways*), audiēminī, mūniēbantur. 3. Ā militibus, ā principe, ab¹ agris, ā Caesare, scūtō, gladiō, ab amicō. 4. Frūgēs ab agris in castra ā militibus portantur. 5. Castella ad castra ā militibus mūnientur. 6. Cōpiae ā ducibus instruentur et ad castra dispōnentur. 7. Crēbris proeliis Galli ā Caesare superantur. 8. Equī in viā impediuntur, neque in castra venient.

II. 1. We were hindered, I shall be hindered, they are being hindered. 2. He will be heard, you will be seen, I shall be called, they will be ruled, they were being led out. 3. By Cæsar, by the leader, by the lieutenants, by a spear, by laws. 4. Redoubts were defended by the soldiers, the horses were frightened by the battle. 5. The children were frightened by the swords and spears of the Gauls. 6. The children were frightened by the Gauls. 7. The troops will be drawn up by the lieutenants and led against the walls of the town. 8. Garrisons will be placed by Caesar and will defend the walls of the camp.



ROMAN GENERAL.

¹ Note that ā or ab may mean *from* as well as *by*.

LESSON 25

THE THIRD CONJUGATION — VERBS IN *-is* — PASSIVE
INDICATIVE, PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE
TENSES — SYNOPSES

171. **capior**, *I am taken*; present stem **cape-**
Principal Parts : **capior**, **capi**,¹ **captus sum**

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. capior , <i>I am taken</i> , etc.	capimur , <i>we are taken</i> , etc.
2. caperis (-re) , <i>you are taken</i> , etc.	capimini , <i>you are taken</i> , etc. capuntur , <i>they are taken</i> ,
3. capitur , <i>he is taken</i> , etc.	etc.

IMPERFECT TENSE

1. capiēbar , <i>I was being taken</i> , etc.	capiēbāmur , <i>we were being taken</i> , etc.
2. capiēbāris (-re) , <i>you were being taken</i> , etc.	capiēbāmini , <i>you were being taken</i> , etc.
3. capiēbātur , <i>he was being taken</i> , etc.	capiēbantur , <i>they were being taken</i> , etc.

FUTURE TENSE

1. capiar , <i>I shall be taken</i>	capiēmur , <i>we shall be taken</i>
2. capiēris (-re) , <i>you will be taken</i>	capiēmini , <i>you will be taken</i>
3. capiētur , <i>he will be taken</i>	capientur , <i>they will be taken</i>

a. In **capior** the first person singular and the third person plural, also the entire imperfect and future, are

¹In the third conjugation the Present Passive Infinitive may always be formed by changing *-ē* of the stem to *-i*.

inflected like **audior**, but the rest of the forms are like **regor** (166).

b. Inflect in the passive: **mūniō**, **iaciō**, and **dūcō**, and compare the written forms of each with the others.

NOTE. — We have now carried the regular verbs through the four conjugations—active and passive—in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative mood, and through the present infinitive, active and passive. These forms are all built on the present stem and are said to belong to the present system.

172. TABLE OF PARTIAL SYNOPSIS OF THE FOUR
CONJUGATIONS

		I		II
<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	Act.	vocāre		monēre
	Pass.	vocārī		monērī
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Act.	vocō		moneō
	Pass.	vocor		moneor
<i>Imperf.</i>	Act.	vocābam		monēbam
	Pass.	vocābar		monēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	Act.	vocābō		monēbō
	Pass.	vocābor		monēbor
			III	IV
<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	Act.	regere	capere	audire
	Pass.	regī	capī	audiri
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Act.	regō	capīō	audiō
	Pass.	regor	capior	audior
<i>Imperf.</i>	Act.	regēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
	Pass.	regēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	Act.	regam	capiam	audiam
	Pass.	regar	capiar	audiar

173. A synopsis of a verb is a table containing verb forms in the same voice, person, and number carried

through each tense of each mood. It includes also the infinitives and participles in each voice and tense, though these have neither person nor number.

a. Write a synopsis in both voices of **laudō**, **videō**, **dūcō**, **iaciō**, and **mūniō**. In doing this follow the table in 172.



SO-CALLED WALL OF ROMULUS.

174.

VOCABULARY

beneficium , benefici , n., <i>kindness, favor</i>	accēdō , -ere, -cessi, -cessūrus, <i>approach, draw near</i>
malum , -i, n., <i>evil thing, misfortune</i>	adficiō , -ere, -fēci, -fectus, <i>affect, visit</i>
rēgnum , -i, n., <i>kingdom</i>	vincō , -ere, vici , victus , <i>conquer, overcome</i>
iūstus , -a, -um, <i>just, right</i>	tamen , conj., <i>yet, nevertheless</i>

175.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caperis, impediētur, impediuntur, impeditis, armantur. 2. Capiuntur, capimini, capiēbāmur, capiēbantur, capiar, capiēris. 3. Geritur, gerunt, gerent, gerēbat, faciet, faciēbās, facient, faciunt. 4. Faciam, faciēs, vincitur, vincitur, vincientur, vincuntur, vincar. 5. Vincēris, vincimini, vinciēmini, adficiētur malō, beneficiō adficiēbātur. 6. Iustus erat et bonus, tamen malō magnō adficiēbātur.

II. 1. I shall capture, you will accomplish, they will make, we shall be affected, he will be captured. 2. We are being hindered, you were being affected, they will be visited with kindness. 3. Javelins were hurled, will be hurled, are being hurled, misfortune approaches. 4. We were not frightened by the war of the Gauls. 5. The lieutenants were not hindered by the danger of war. 6. The bravest men are often visited with misfortune.

LESSON 26

THE THIRD DECLENSION, I-STEMS—THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT—READING LESSON

176. Nouns having *i*-stems differ in some respects from consonant stems. These differences must be learned and recognized quickly in order to enable one to use this class of nouns properly.

177. *I*-stems. — These stems include : —

1. Nouns in *-is* or *-ēs*, having the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular; as, *civis*,

-is, m., *citizen*, stem *civi-*; *caedēs*, -is, f., *slaughter*, stem *caedi-*.

2. Nouns in -ns and -rs; as, *cliēns*, -entis, m., *client*, stem *clienti-*; *cohors*, -ortis, f., *cohort*, stem *cohorti-*.

3. Nouns of one syllable in -s or -x following a consonant; as, *mōns*, *montis*, m., *mountain*, stem *monti-*; *falx*, *falcis*, f., *sickle*, stem *falci-*.

4. Neuters in -al, -ar, and -e; as, *vectigal*, -ālis, n., *tax*, stem *vectigāli-*; *calcar*, -āris, n., *spur*, stem *calcāri-*; *mare*, -is, n., *sea*, stem *mari-*.

NOTE. — A few nouns in -s or -x preceded by a vowel belong to this class; *mūs*, *mūris*, m. or f., *mouse*, stem *mūri-*; *nox*, *noctis*, f., *night*, stem *nocti-*.

In these nouns the base is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular, the stem by dropping the -s of the genitive singular; *civis*, *civis*, base *civ-*, stem *civi-*.

Learn the words above in 1-4.

178.

<i>hostis</i> , -is, m. and f., <i>enemy</i> Stem <i>hosti-</i> , base <i>host-</i>		<i>nūbēs</i> , -is, f., <i>cloud</i> Stem <i>nūbi-</i> , base <i>nūb-</i>		CASE ENDINGS	
SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>					
N. V.	<i>hostis</i>	<i>hostēs</i>	<i>nūbēs</i>	<i>nūbēs</i>	-is, -ēs, -ēs
G.	<i>hostis</i>	<i>hostium</i>	<i>nūbis</i>	<i>nūbium</i>	-is -ium
D.	<i>hostī</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>nūbī</i>	<i>nūbibus</i>	-ī -ibus
Ac.	<i>hostem</i>	<i>hostis(-ēs)</i>	<i>nūbem</i>	<i>nūbis(-ēs)</i>	-em -is, -ēs
Ab.	<i>hoste(-ī)</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>nūbe</i>	<i>nūbibus</i>	-e (-ī) -ibus

animal, -is, n., <i>animal</i>		sedile, -is, n., <i>seat</i>		CASE ENDINGS	
Stem animāli- , base animāl-		Stem sedili- , base sedil-			
SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
<i>Neut.</i>					
N. V.	animal	animālia	sedile	sedilia	-, -e -ia
G.	animālis	animālium	sedilis	sedilium	-is -ium
D.	animāli	animālibus	sedili	sedilibus	-i -ibus
Ac.	animal	animālia	sedile	sedilia	-, -e -ia
AB.	animāli	animālibus	sedili	sedilibus	-i -ibus
urbs, urbis, f., <i>city</i>		nox, noctis, f., <i>night</i>			
Stem urbi- , base urb-		Stem nocti- , base noct-			
SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
<i>Fem.</i>					
N. V.	urbs	urbēs	nox	noctēs	-s -ēs
G.	urbis	urbium	noctis	noctium	-is -ium
D.	urbī	urbibus	noctī	noctibus	-i -ibus
Ac.	urbem	urbīs (-ēs)	noctem	noctīs (-ēs)	-em -is, -ēs
AB.	urbe	urbibus	nocte	noctibus	-e -ibus

a. Decline : **civis, cohors, mōns, falx**, and **vectigal**. For specifications of these nouns see 177, 1-4.

179. Some nouns have special endings in the singular :--

1. Accusative in **-im** : names of cities and rivers in **-is**.
2. Accusative in **-im** or **-em** : **nāvis, turris**.
3. Ablative in **-ī** or **-e** : **avis, civis, collis, finis, ignis, nāvis, turris**.
4. Ablative in **-ī** : neuters in **-al, -ar, -e**.

180. Examine the following : —

1. **In prōvinciam multis cum civibus venit**, *he comes into the province with many citizens.*

2. **In castra multis militibus contendit**, *he hastens into the camp with many soldiers.*



JUNCTION OF THE RHONE AND THE ARVE.

3. **In castra cum multis militibus contendit**, *he hastens into the camp with many soldiers.*

181.

RULE

The Ablative of Accompaniment. — *The ablative with cum is used to express accompaniment, but in military phrases, especially when there is a qualifying adjective, cum may be omitted.*

182.

VOCABULARY

civis, -is, m. and f., <i>citizen</i>	occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>seize,</i>
collis, -is, m., <i>hill</i>	<i>occupy</i>
finis, -is, m., <i>end, limit; pl.,</i>	recūsō, āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>refuse</i>
<i>territory</i>	ubi, <i>adv., where, when,</i>
ignis, -is, m., <i>fire</i>	<i>where? when?</i>
mare, -is, n., <i>sea</i>	autem, <i>postpositive¹ conj.,</i>
nāvis, -is, f., <i>ship</i>	<i>but, however</i>
turris, -is, f., <i>tower</i>	

183.

EXERCISES

I. 1. In finis, ad civis, in finibus Helvētiōrum, cum hostibus, sub colle, in nāvibus. 2. Nōmen civis, nōmina civium, praesidia hostium, in finis finitimōrum. 3. Hostēs oppida occupant et praesidia dispōnunt. 4. Castra ab hostibus occupantur et praesidia dispōnuntur. 5. Casticus multis militibus in oppida hostium veniēbat. 6. In finis finitimōrum veniet et castra mūniet. 7. Multae nāvēs ad ōram maritimam veniēbant. 8. Rēgnum occupābit quod multis cohortibus in terram venit.

II. 1. Into the territory of the enemy, with the leaders of the citizens, the names of the ships. 2. He comes with² his friends, he fights with² his sword. 3. The leaders of the enemy will send ambassadors concerning³ peace. 4. The lieutenant seized a town but did not place a garrison in the tower. 5. Where will the ships of the enemy be seen?

184.

READING LESSON

Erat iter angustum per finis Sēquanōrum, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum. Erat per prōvinciam quoque

¹ A postpositive word is always placed after one or more words in its clause.

² Force of this word?

³ *dē* with the ablative.

iter. Helvētīi ē finibus exire¹ cōstituunt et per prōvinciam cōpiās ēdūcere. Ubi Caesar hoc² audit, properat ab urbe et in Galliam venit. Helvētiis iter³ per prōvinciam recūsāt et mūrū ad montem Iūram perdūcit. Tum praesidium dispōnit et castra commūnit.

LESSON 27

REVIEW OF THE THIRD DECLENSION—TWO ACCUSATIVES—ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS—CLASSES OF SENTENCES

185. Make a careful review of the third declension, Lessons 20, 21, 26. Decline nouns in the vocabularies of these lessons.

186. The following sentences show a use like the English:—

1. **Urbem Rōmam appellant**, *they call the city Rome.*
2. **Urbs Rōma appellātur**, *the city is called Rome.*

a. Note the two accusatives with the active voice of a verb of calling and the two nominatives with the passive voice of the same verb (97, 2).

187.

RULE

Two Accusatives.— *Verbs of calling, naming, appointing, and the like take two accusatives in the active voice, and in the passive two nominatives, one a subject and the other a predicate.*

¹ to go out.

² this.

³ right-of-way.

188. In the English sentences: —

1. *The brave are praised*, 2. *We compare the great with the small*, the expression *the brave* means *brave men*, *the great* means *great things*, and *the small* means *small things*; that is, adjectives are used as nouns.



EARLY GERMANS.

In the Latin translation: 1. **Fortēs laudantur**, and 2. **Magna cum parvis comparāmus**, the same use of the adjective is seen.

189.

RULE

Adjectives as Nouns. — *Plural adjectives are quite freely used as nouns, the masculine to denote persons, the neuter to denote things.*

NOTE. — This use occurs sometimes in the singular.

190. Classification of Sentences. — Sentences are classified as simple, compound, and complex.

a. A simple sentence makes a single statement and has one subject and one predicate; as, *The mind grows strong by use.*

b. A compound sentence contains two or more statements of equal rank; as, *The Germans advance and the Gauls flee.*

c. A complex sentence has an independent statement with one or more statements depending upon it. The separate parts of a complex sentence are called clauses. The name Principal may be given to the independent and Subordinate to the dependent clause. In the complex sentence, *The Gauls are frightened because the Germans are advancing*, the principal clause is, *the Gauls are frightened*, and the subordinate clause, *because the Germans are advancing*. Subordinate clauses are introduced by conjunctions denoting cause, time, place, and by other words to be specified later.

191.

VOCABULARY

catēna, -ae, f., *chain*

Germānī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Germans*

inimicus, -a, -um, *unfriendly, hostile*; as a noun, *enemy (personal), foe*

necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary*

necesse est, *it is necessary*, often with an inf. as subject

parvus, -a, -um, *little, small*

abstineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *refrain from*

pervenio, -ire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come through, arrive*

fortiter, adv., *bravely*

circum, prep. with acc., *around, about*

sine, prep. with abl., *without*

192.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Sine iniuriā maleficiōque, in inimicā parte urbis, sub monte. 2. Necesse est in urbem pervenire quod nostrī ibi sunt. 3. Militēs in castra cotidiē veniunt quod dux inimicus cum multis ad oppidum contendit. 4. Nōn est iūstum magna cum parvis comparāre. 5. Nostrōs hostis appellat quod multis cohortibus in terram veniunt. 6. Cōsul rēgem virtūte praestat quod cotidiānis proeliis contendit. 7. Fortiter contendunt et hostis superant. 8. Necesse est inimicōs beneficiō vincere.

II. 1. They call the men foes and bind them with chains. 2. It is not necessary to cast our foes into chains. 3. The chief of the little state will defend the land because it is his native country. 4. He will come without danger with our men to the high mountains. 5. He was a citizen of a small state, but he was making a great conspiracy.

a. Name classes of sentences in the above exercises.

LESSON 28

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION—THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE—READING LESSON—WORD LIST IV

193. All adjectives except the classes already considered (Lessons 16, 19) belong to the third declension and have in the nominative singular either one, two, or three endings.

194. Adjectives of Three Terminations.—In the nominative singular of this class of adjectives, masculines end

in **-er**, feminines in **-is**, and neuters in **-e**. In all genders they have **-i** in the ablative singular and **-ium** in the genitive plural. Masculines and feminines have either **-is** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural. Neuters have **-ia** in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural. They are **i**-stems.

acer, ācris, ācre, keen, sharp; stem **ācri-**, base **ācr-**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris (-ēs)	ācris (-ēs)	ācria
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

195. Adjectives of Two Terminations. — These have but one form for the masculine and feminine. They are **i**-stems.

facilis, facile, easy; stem **facili-**, base **facil-**

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	facilis	facile	facilēs	facilia
G.	facilis	facilis	facilium	facilium
D.	facili	facili	facilibus	facilibus
Ac.	facilem	facile	facilis (-ēs)	facilia
Ab.	facili	facili	facilibus	facilibus

196. Adjectives of One Termination. — These adjectives have but one ending for all genders in the nominative singular. They were originally consonant stems, but have taken on forms of **i**-stems in the plural and largely in the ablative singular. They have one more syllable in the

genitive singular than they have in the nominative, while the preceding two classes have the same number of syllables in both cases.

ferāx, m., f., and n., *fertile*; stem **ferāci-**, base **ferāc-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	ferāx	ferāx	ferācēs	ferācia
G.	ferācis	ferācis	ferācium	ferācium
D.	ferāci	ferāci	ferācibus	ferācibus
Ac.	ferācem	ferāx	ferācis (-ēs)	ferācia
Ab.	ferāci (-e)	ferāci (-e)	ferācibus	ferācibus

197. The Present Participle. — The participle, as has been seen (64), has the nature of a verb and an adjective. The present participle is formed by adding **-ns** to the present stem, but verbs of the fourth conjugation insert **-e** before **-ns**. Verbs in **-iō** of the third conjugation change **-e** of the stem to **-i** and insert **-e** before **-ns**. The vowel preceding this ending is always long.

Conj.	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Stem	Nom.	Gen.
I.	vocō	vocā-	vocāns	vocantis
II.	moneō	monē-	monēns	monentis
III.	regō	rege-	regēns	regentis
	capiō	cape-	capiēns	capientis
IV.	audiō	audi-	audiēns	audientis

198. The present participle is declined like an adjective of the third declension with one ending, but has the ablative singular in **-e** unless used as an adjective, in which case it has **-i**. It agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun to which it belongs.

vocāns, vocantis, calling; stem vocanti-, base vocant-

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.V.	vocāns	vocāns	vocantēs	vocantia
G.	vocantis	vocantis	vocantium	vocantium
D.	vocanti	vocanti	vocantibus	vocantibus
Ac.	vocantem	vocāns	vocantis (-ēs)	vocantia
Ab.	vocante (-i)	vocante (-i)	vocantibus	vocantibus

199. Study the following:—

1. *Caesar virum vidēns laetus erat, Caesar was glad (upon) seeing the man.*

2. *Permōtus frūmenti inopiā Caesar in Ītaliā venit, alarmed by the lack of grain Caesar comes into Italy.*

Notice the resemblance in the above to the English use.

200.

VOCABULARY

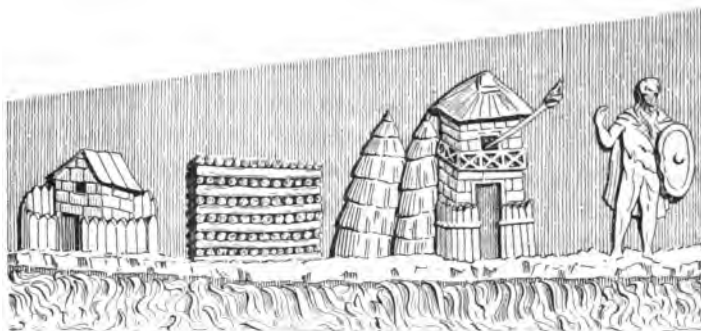
<i>hiberna, -ōrum, n. pl., winter quarters</i>	<i>omnis, -e, all, every</i>
<i>iter, itineris, n., road, march, journey</i>	<i>pertineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentus, extend, pertain</i>
<i>pars, partis, f., part</i>	<i>ibi, adv., there</i>
<i>pōns, pontis, m., bridge</i>	<i>tum, adv., at that time, then</i>
<i>Rhodanus, -i, m., the Rhone</i>	<i>inter, prep. with acc., between, among</i>
<i>Séquani, -ōrum, m. pl., the Sequani or Sequanians</i>	<i>neque . . . neque, correlative conj., neither . . . nor</i>
<i>audāx, gen. -ācis, bold</i>	

201.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Erat iter facile inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum.* 2. *Caesar militēs amicōs appellat et ā militibus amicus appellātur.* 3. *Caesar nostrōs ad pontem*

convocat; Caesar iubet nostrōs ad pontem convenire. 4. Per finis Sēquanōrum cum magnā parte civium ad montem contendit. 5. Per viās facilis omnēs milites ad montem altum dūcēbantur. 6. Dux lēgātōs audiēns dicit, "Necesse est oppida hostium capere." 7. Obsidēs ad castra mittentēs pācem amicitiamque cum hostibus cōfirmant.



WINTER QUARTERS.

(Column of Trajan)

II. 1. The wall will extend from a part of the mountain to the camp. 2. The Helvetii will decide to hasten from winter quarters to the towns of the enemy. 3. All parts of the city between the river and the mountain were being seized by fierce soldiers. 4. The soldiers are bold but they will not make a march into the cities of the enemy. 5. Calling his soldiers friends he led (them) into battle.

202.

READING LESSON

Itaque Helvētīi per Sēquanōrum finis iter facere cōstituunt. Caesar autem in Ītaliā contendit et ibi duās novās legiōnēs cōscribit et trīs ab hibernis dūcit. Cum

iis¹ quinque legiōnibus per Alpēs in Galliam iter facit. Helvētīi intereā per finis Sēquanōrum cōpiās trāducunt et agrōs Aeduōrum² vāstant.

203.

WORD LIST IV

abstineō	cūr	iūstus	pōns
accēdō	dispōnō	malum	praesidium
ācer	equus	mare	recūsō
adficiō	facilis	mōns	rēgnum
animal	ferāx	nāvis	Rhodanus
audāx	finis	necesse	Rōma
autem	fortiter	neque	sedile
beneficium	frūgēs	neque . . . neque	Sēquanī
caedēs	Germāni	nox	sine
castellum	hiberna	nūbēs	terreō
catēna	hostis	occupō	tum
circum	ignis	omnis	turris
civis	impediō	pars	ubi
cliēns	inimicus	parvus	urbs
cohors	instruō	pertineō	vectigal
collis	inter	pervenio	vincō
crēber	iter		

LESSON 29

THE FIRST CONJUGATION—ACTIVE INDICATIVE, PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES
—THE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

204. Tenses of Completed Action :

1. **The Perfect.**—*a.* The sentence, *I have called*, expresses the act of calling as beginning in the past and

¹ *these.*² *of the Aedui.*

ending in the present. It is translated by the perfect tense of **vocō, vocāvī**. This use of the perfect is called the Perfect Definite because it expresses the completion of an act at a definite time.

b. The sentence, *I called*, means that the act of calling took place at some indefinite time in the past. It is translated into Latin by the same form as in *a*, and is called the Perfect Indefinite or Perfect Historical. Hence we see that in Latin there are two distinct uses of the perfect tense, to be carefully distinguished from each other in meaning. Note also the difference between the perfect in its two uses and the imperfect (77).

2. **The Pluperfect.** — The sentence, *I had called*, **vocāveram**, means that the act of calling was completed in past time. This tense is called the Pluperfect and corresponds to the English Past Perfect.

3. **The Future Perfect.** — The sentence, *I shall have called*, **vocāverō**, expresses the act of calling as completed in future time. This tense, as in English, is called the Future Perfect.

205. **The Perfect Stem.** — The perfect stem in all the conjugations is most easily found by dropping final **-ī** of the third principal part, as : —

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī; perfect stem **vocāv-**
moneō, monēre, monuī; perfect stem **monu-**
regō, regere, rēxī; perfect stem **rēx-**
capiō, capere, cēpī; perfect stem **cēp-**
audiō, audire, audīvi; perfect stem **audiv-**

a. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative active and the perfect active infinitive are built upon the perfect stem.

206. Latin verbs have special personal endings for the perfect tense.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. -i, <i>I</i>	-imus, <i>we</i>
2. -isti, <i>you</i> (one person)	-istis, <i>you</i> (two or more persons)
3. -it, <i>he, she, it</i>	-erunt, -ere, <i>they</i>

a. The perfect tense is formed by adding these endings to the perfect stem.

207. vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus; perfect stem, vocāv-; perfect infinitive, vocāvisse.

SINGULAR	PERFECT TENSE	PLURAL
1. vocāvī, <i>I called or have called</i> ¹	vocāvimus, <i>we called, etc.</i>	
2. vocāvistī, <i>you called, etc.</i>	vocāvistis, <i>you called, etc.</i>	
3. vocāvit, <i>he called, etc.</i>	vocāvērunt (vocāvēre), <i>they called, etc.</i>	

PLUPERFECT TENSE

1. vocāveram, <i>I had called</i> ²	vocāverāmus, <i>we had called</i>
2. vocāverās, <i>you had called</i>	vocāverātis, <i>you had called</i>
3. vocāverat, <i>he had called</i>	vocāverant, <i>they had called</i>

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

1. vocāverō, <i>I shall have called</i> ³	vocāverimus, <i>we shall have called</i>
2. vocāveris, <i>you will have called</i>	vocāveritis, <i>you will have called</i>
3. vocāverit, <i>he will have called</i>	vocāverint, <i>they will have called</i>

¹ Also *have been calling*. ² Or *had been calling*. ³ Or *shall have been calling*.

208. **sum, esse, fui, futūrus**; perfect stem, **fu-**; perfect infinitive, **fuisse**.

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
1. fui	fui ^m	fueram	fuerā ^m	fuerō	fuerim ^s
2. fuisti	fui ^s tis	fuerās	fuerātis	fueris	fueritis
3. fuit	fue ^r unt (-ēre)	fuerat	fuerant	fuerit	fuerint

209. *a.* The perfect has no tense sign; the endings are added directly to the perfect stem.

b. The tense sign of the pluperfect is **-erā**. This tense may be formed very conveniently by adding **eram**, etc., the imperfect of **sum**, to the perfect stem.

c. The tense sign of the future perfect is **-eri**. This tense may conveniently be formed by adding **erō**, etc., the future of **sum**, to the perfect stem, except that in the third person plural the form is **-erint** instead of **-erunt**.

210. **The Perfect Infinitive.** — This form is made by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem: **vocāv-** + **-isse** = **vocāvisse**, *to have called*; **fu-** + **-isse** = **fuisse**, *to have been*.

All forms built upon the perfect stem belong to the Perfect System.

a. Write a synopsis of **laudō** and **properō** in the perfect system, active, referring to 172 for a model. Include in this the perfect infinitive.

211. Examine the following: —

1. **Orgetorix erat vir magnā auctōritāte**, *Orgetorix was a man of great authority*.

2. **Filiae agricolae erant bonō animō**, *the daughters of the farmer were of good disposition*.

In 1 *auctōritāte* has *magnā* in agreement with it and is used to describe *vir*; in 2 *bonō animō* is used in the same way as *magnā auctōritāte* except that it is in the predicate.

212.

RULE

The Ablative of Description or Quality. — *The ablative with an adjective in agreement with it is used to describe a noun or to express some quality belonging to it.*

NOTE. — In descriptive expressions of measure the genitive, not the ablative, is used; as, *mūrus quīdecim pedum, a wall of fifteen feet*. In descriptions of physical characteristics the ablative is used. Other descriptive phrases may have either the ablative or the genitive.

213.

VOCABULARY

<i>Divicō, -ōnis, m., Divico, a</i>	<i>concidō, -ere, -i, -cisus, kill</i>
<i>Helvetian noble</i>	<i>fugiō, -ere, fugi, fugitūrus,</i>
<i>eques, -itis, m., horseman;</i>	<i>flee</i>
<i>pl., cavalry</i>	<i>postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, de-</i>
<i>grātia, -ae, f., influence</i>	<i>mand</i>
<i>lātitudō, -inis, f., width</i>	<i>numquam or nunquam, adv.,</i>
<i>longitudō, -inis, f., length</i>	<i>never</i>
<i>brevis, -e, brief, short</i>	<i>quandō, interrog. and rel.</i>
<i>reliquus, -a, -um, remaining,</i>	<i>adv., when? when</i>
<i>rest-of; pl. as noun, the rest</i>	

214.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Postulāvistis, postulāvērunt, postulāvimus, hostis vitā privāverant.* 2. *Mātūrāverāmus, mātūrāveritis, mātūrāverātis, inimicōs numquam liberābit.* 3. *Equitēs magnā virtūte et bonō animō in populum Rōmānum erant.* 4. *Multi militēs oppida hostium oppugnāvērunt, reliqui autem in castris manēbant.* 5. *Circum castra erat fossa*

trium pedum¹ in lātitudinem. 6. Orgetorix magnā grātiā in civitatē erat. 7. Quandō Caesar frūmentum postulāvit? 8. Agricolaē fugiēbant quod hostēs in civitatē finitimā praesidia dispōnēbant.



OLD ROMAN BRIDGE.

(The Ponte Nomentano.)

II. 1. They will have hastened, you will have demanded, he has freed, they had praised. 2. He demanded hostages, they have hastened to the mountains, they had fought in the woods. 3. The horsemen had assaulted the camp of Caesar. 4. The soldiers will have hastened into the territory of the enemy. 5. They are men of good disposition. 6. The horsemen killed many and cast the rest into chains.

¹ of three feet.

LESSON 30

THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS—
ACTIVE INDICATIVE, PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND
FUTURE PERFECT TENSES—THE ABLATIVE OF
MANNER—READING LESSON

215. For method of forming tenses in the perfect system¹ see Lesson 29.

a. Review personal endings, stem and tense signs (205, 206, 209, a, b, c).

216. a. **monēō, I advise.** Principal Parts: **monēō, -ēre, -ul, -itus**; perfect stem **monu-**, perfect infinitive **monuisse.**

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
<i>I advised, have advised, etc.</i>		<i>I had advised, etc.</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. monui	monuimus	monueram	monuerāmus
2. monuisti	monuistis	monuerās	monuerātis
3. monuit	monuērunt (-ēre)	monuerat	monuerant

FUTURE PERFECT
I shall have advised, etc.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. monuerō	monuerimus
2. monueris	monueritis
3. monuerit	monuerint

b. **regō, I rule.** Principal Parts: **regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus**; perfect stem **rēx-**, perfect infinitive **rēxisse.**

¹ The perfect system includes all forms built upon the perfect stem (210).

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
<i>I ruled, have ruled, etc.</i>		<i>I had ruled, etc.</i>	
1. rēxi	rēximus	rēxeram	rēxerāmus
2. rēxisti	rēxistis	rēxerās	rēxerātis
3. rēxit	rēxērunt (-ēre)	rēxerat	rēxerant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have ruled, etc.

1. rēxerō	rēxerimus
2. rēxeris	rēxeritis
3. rēxerit	rēxerint

c. **audiō, I hear.** Principal Parts: **audiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus**; perfect stem **audiv-**, perfect infinitive **audivisse**.

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
<i>I heard, have heard, etc.</i>		<i>I had heard, etc.</i>	
1. audivi	audivimus	audiveram	audiverāmus
2. audivisti	audivistis	audiverās	audiverātis
3. audivit	audivērunt (-ēre)	audiverat	audiverant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have heard, etc.

1. audiverō	audiverimus
2. audiveris	audiveritis
3. audiverit	audiverint

d. **capiō, I take.** Principal Parts: **capiō, -ere, cēpi, captus**; perfect stem **cēp-**, perfect infinitive **cēpisse**.

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
<i>I took, have taken, etc.</i>		<i>I had taken, etc.</i>	
1. cēpi	cēpimus	cēperam	cēperāmus
2. cēpisti	cēpistis	cēperās	cēperātis
3. cēpit	cēpērunt (-ēre)	cēperat	cēperant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have taken, etc.

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. cēperō | cēperimus |
| 2. cēperis | cēperitis |
| 3. cēperit | cēperint |

Inflect through the perfect system, with statement of perfect stem, tense signs, and personal endings:—

faciō, -ere, fēci, factus, *make, do*
 cōficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus, *finish, accomplish*
 mūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, *fortify*
 gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, *wage, carry on*
 armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *arm*
 videō, -ēre, vidi, visus, *see*

217. The expression of the manner in which an action is performed is illustrated in the following examples:—

1. **Cum clāmōre vēnērunt**, *they came with a shout.*
2. **Magnā celeritāte contendērunt**, *they hastened with great speed.*
3. **Magnā cum celeritāte contendērunt**, *they hastened with great speed.*

In 1 and 3 the ablative with **cum**, and in 2 the ablative alone, expresses the manner of the action.

218.

RULE

The Ablative of Manner.—*The manner in which an action is performed is expressed by a noun in the ablative with cum, when the noun has no qualifying adjective, and by the ablative with or without cum, when it has a qualifying adjective.*



ROMAN GRANARY AT OSTIA.

219.

VOCABULARY

Aedui, -ōrum, m. pl., <i>the Aedui, a tribe in Gaul</i>	equestrēs cōpiae, <i>cavalry forces</i>
Allobrogēs, -um, m. pl., <i>the Allobroges, a tribe in Gaul</i>	fēlix, gen. fēlicis, <i>happy, fortunate</i>
celeritās, -ātis, f., <i>speed, quickness</i>	fortis, -e, <i>brave</i>
clāmor, -ōris, m., <i>noise, outcry</i>	pedester, -tris, -tre, <i>pedestrian</i>
difficilis, -e, <i>hard, difficult</i>	pedestrēs cōpiae, <i>infantry forces</i>
equester, -tris, -tre, <i>pertaining to a horseman, equestrian</i>	vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>lay waste, devastate</i>

220.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Convocāverās, convocat, convocāveris, convocāverāmus, convocābimus. 2. Vīdī, vidistis, vidēbās, vidē-

runt, viderō, viderāmus, videritis. 3. Vinxistis, vīxeris, vinxit, vinciet, contenderant, contenderam, fēcerit, fēcisti. 4. In finis Aeduōrum contendērunt et agrōs vāstāvērunt. 5. Cum clāmōre per longam et difficilem viam ad finis Allobrogum vēnērunt. 6. Per brevem facilemque viam magnā celeritāte ad collem contendit. 7. Ducī equestrēs cōpiaē nōn erant, pedestrēs autem cōpiaē multae. 8. Fēlix erat quod pedestrēs cōpiaē fortēs oppidum hostium cēpērunt.

II. 1. I have hastened, you hastened, we shall have sent, he had heard, we had seen. 2. They had decided, we have accomplished, they will have done. 3. He will have devastated, they had come together, he will have felt, we had felt. 4. All the soldiers hastened with great speed to the camp. 5. Caesar is a man of great influence among his soldiers. 6. The cavalry forces came with a great outcry into the province. 7. They were laying waste the fields of the Allobroges.

221.

READING LESSON

Aedui autem, quod sē¹ dēfendere nōn potuērunt,² lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt, qui³ statim pontem in flūmine fēcit et ita exercitum trādūxit. Postquam Caesar cōpiās trāns flūmen dūxit, Helvētīi lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt qui⁴ dixērunt, "Sī populus Rōmānus nōbiscum⁴ pācem faciet, ibimus⁵ et ibi manēbimus ubi tū vis⁶ et nōs⁷ remanēre iubēs; obsidēs autem nōn dabimus sed accipiēmus, nam fortēs virī sumus et omnēs inimicōs superāre possumus."⁸ Postquam hoc⁹ respōnsum dedērunt, discessērunt.

¹ themselves.⁴ with us; cum is enclitic.⁷ us, subject of remanēre.² they could.⁵ we will go.⁸ we can.³ who.⁶ you wish.⁹ this.

LESSON 31

SIMPLE EXAMPLES OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

222. Review the present infinitive and be able to give in the active and passive voices the present infinitive of any verb you have had (63, 73).

223. **Indirect Discourse.** — The sentence, *The camp is large*, makes a direct statement. The sentence, *He says that the camp is large*, contains the same statement in indirect form, depending as a quotation upon a verb of saying. We give the name of Indirect Discourse to such quoted statements.

224. Examine the following : —

1. **Direct Statement.** — *The road is narrow, via angusta est.*
2. **Indirect Statement.** — *He says that the road is narrow, dicit viam angustam esse.*

225. Comparing the English and Latin of the indirect statement, we see that in both the introductory word is a verb of saying, and that in the English quotation : —

226. 1. The introductory word *that* is used.
2. The verb is finite.
3. The subject is in the nominative case.

227. But in the Latin quotation it is seen that : —

1. No introductory word like *that* is used.
2. The verb is in the infinitive.
3. The subject is in the accusative case, as is also the predicate adjective modifying the subject.

NOTE. — This construction in Latin is used not only after verbs of saying, but also after verbs of knowing, perceiving, thinking, and other words implying speech or mental action.

228.

RULE

Indirect Discourse. — *Statements depending directly upon verbs of saying, knowing, perceiving, and the like are expressed by the infinitive with the subject in the accusative.*

A predicate noun or adjective is also in the accusative.



MARCUS AURELIUS AND CAPTIVES.

229. 1. Direct Statement. — *The road is narrow, via angusta est.*

2. Indirect Statement. — *He said that the road was narrow, dixit viam angustam esse.*

Comparing 1 and 2, we see that in changing a sentence from the direct to the indirect form of statement the following law appears: A present tense in direct discourse becomes a present in-

finite in indirect, no matter what the tense of the introductory verb may be.

230. The following are some of the verbs most commonly used in this construction: —

dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus, *say, tell*
 negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deny, say not*, used instead of nōn dicō
 nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce*
 existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think*
 putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think*
 sciō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, *know*
 sentiō, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsus, *feel, perceive*
 audiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, *hear*
 videō, -ēre, vidi, vīsus, *see*

a. Learn such of these verbs as you do not already know and associate them and others of similar meaning with the construction of indirect discourse.

231.

VOCABULARY

captivus, -i, m., <i>captive</i>	tempestās, -ātis, f., <i>storm,</i> <i>tempest</i>
cūstōs, -ōdis, m., <i>guard</i>	terror, -ōris, m., <i>terror</i>
dēditō, -ōnis, f., <i>surrender</i>	continuus, -a, -um, <i>continu-</i> <i>ous, incessant</i>
frāter, -tris, m., <i>brother</i>	firmus, -a, -um, <i>strong, firm</i>
oppidānī, -ōrum, m. pl., <i>townsmen</i>	incolumis, -e, <i>safe, unharmed</i>
soror, -ōris, f., <i>sister</i>	accipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, <i>receive, accept</i>

232.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Captivus incolumis est, dicit captivum incolumem esse. 2. Oppidānī cūstōdēs captivōrum sunt, putāvērunt oppidānōs cūstōdēs captivōrum esse. 3. Oppidānī in dēditōnem accipiuntur, sciō oppidānōs in dēditōnem accipi. 4. Multi et¹ firmī cūstōdēs in urbe sunt, audīvī multōs et firmōs cūstōdēs in urbe esse. 5. Captivī dicunt frātrēs

¹ many strong guards. When multus is joined to a descriptive adjective et is not translated.

sorōrēsque incolumis in patriam venire. 6. Nūntiat magnum terrōrem propter continuās tempestātēs omnis oppidānōs occupāre. 7. Vident multōs et firmōs cūstōdēs captivōs in urbem dūcere. 8. Negat captivōs incolumis esse.

II. 1. The townsmen are unharmed, I know that the townsmen are unharmed. 2. Great terror is seizing all the soldiers, he knows that great terror is seizing all the soldiers. 3. Continuous storms are frightening the captives, they hear that continuous storms are frightening the captives. 4. The enemy are coming into our camp, we saw that the enemy were coming¹ into our camp. 5. Our men are being freed from terror and danger, they said² that our men were not² being freed¹ from terror and danger. 6. The sister was in danger, the brother thought that his sister was in danger.

LESSON 32

THE PARTICIPLE — THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

233. **The Participle.** — There are four participles in Latin — two in the active voice, the Present and the Future, and two in the passive, the Perfect and the Gerundive. For the present participle see 197-199. The future active participle and the gerundive will be treated later.

234. **The Perfect Participle.** — This participle ends in **-tus** or **-sus**. It is the fourth principal part, is declined like **fidus**, **-a**, **-um**, and agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun to which it belongs.

¹ Tense of the infinitive?

² *said not*, one word in Latin.

TABLE OF PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Present	Future	Perfect	Gerundive (Future)
1. vocāns	vocātūrus	vocātus	vocandus
2. monēns	monitūrus	monitus	monendus
3. regēns	rēctūrus	rēctus	regendus
4. capiēns	captūrus	captus	capiendus
5. audiēns	auditūrus	auditus	audiendus

The future participle is built upon the participial stem.
On what stems are the other participles formed?

235. The present or perfect participle often stands in Latin where in English a clause of time, cause, means, condition, concession, etc., is used, as:—

1. *Amicum in periculō vidēns servāvit*, when he saw his friend in danger he saved him (on seeing his friend, etc.).—
Time.

2. *Territus fūgit*, he fled because he was frightened (he, frightened, fled).— Cause.

3. *Damnātus in catēnās coniciētur*, if he is condemned, he will be cast into chains (condemned, he will be cast, etc.).—
Condition.

4. *Sōl oriēns diem cōnficit*, the sun, by its rising, makes the day (the sun rising, etc.).— Means.

5. *Hostēs obsidēs dantēs tamen in dēditionem nōn accipi-entur*, although the enemy give hostages, they will not be received in surrender (the enemy giving, etc.).— Concession.

a. Study these sentences carefully and note that the present participle expresses the same time as the verb with which it is used, and the perfect participle earlier time.

236. The Ablative Absolute. — Similar in meaning, but different in use, is a construction corresponding to the English Nominative Absolute. You will be helped in understanding this by comparing the following sentences with each other: —

1. **Miles damnātus in catēnās coniciētur**, *if the soldier is condemned, he will be cast into chains.*

2. **Milite damnātō, dux cūrā liberābitur**, *if the soldier is condemned, the commander will be freed from care.*

Note in these examples the following points: —

(1) In 1 **miles**, with **damnātus** in agreement, is in the nominative case, and is the subject of the verb **coniciētur**. In 2 **milite**, with **damnātō** in agreement, is in the ablative case, and has no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence.

(2) Both **miles damnātus** and **milite damnātō** add the idea of condition to the main thought.

237. The construction in 2 is called the Ablative Absolute, and is further illustrated in the following sentences: —

1. **Oppidō expugnātō, arma trādidērunt**, *after, when, or because the town had been captured, they gave up their arms (the town having been captured, etc.).*

2. **Oppidō expugnātō, arma nōn trādidērunt**, *although the town had been captured, they did not give up their arms (the town having been captured, etc.).*

3. **Hostibus succēdentibus, castra pōnēmus**, *because, when, or while the enemy are approaching, we will pitch our camp (the enemy approaching, etc.).*

4. **Imperātōre dūcente, nēmō pugnāre dubitat**, *if, when, or because the commander leads, no one hesitates to fight.*

a. In each Latin sentence above is found a phrase¹ made up of a noun in the ablative case, with a participle agreeing with it in gender, number, and case. This phrase may be translated by our nominative absolute (see parentheses above), or by a clause² of time (*when, after*), of



ROMAN ARMY ON THE MARCH.

cause (*because, since*), of concession (*although*), of condition (*if*), or of some other attendant circumstance. The use of the nominative absolute is very rare in English, therefore it is best in nearly every case to use some other form in translating such expressions into English. See the translations given in the preceding sentences. The kind

¹ A phrase is a combination of words used in a sentence, but having no subject or predicate of its own.

² See 190, c.

of clause to be used in translation must be determined by the nature of the thought, as indicated by the words in the sentence itself or in its context.

238. 1. **Caesare duce, oppidum oppugnāvērunt**, *with Caesar as leader, or under Caesar's leadership, they attacked the town (Caesar being leader, etc.).*

2. **Duce vivō salvi erant**, *while their leader was alive, they were safe (their leader being alive, etc.).*

In 1 two nouns, and in 2 a noun and an adjective, are used together in the ablative absolute, instead of a noun and a participle.

239.

RULES

The Ablative Absolute. — 1. *A noun or pronoun limited by a participle is often used in the ablative absolute to express the time or other circumstances of an action.*

2. *Two nouns or a noun and an adjective may be used together in the ablative absolute.*

240. FURTHER ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. **Signō datō, proellium renovāvērunt**, *at the given signal, they renewed the battle (the signal having been given, etc.).*

2. **Oppidō captō, Caesar obsidēs postulāvit**, *having taken the town, Caesar demanded hostages (the town having been taken, etc.).*

3. **Castris positīs, castellis mūnitīs, Caesar militēs contrā hostis ēdūxit**, *Caesar pitched his camp, fortified his redoubts, and led out his soldiers against the enemy (the camp having been pitched, the redoubts having been fortified, etc.).*

a. In 1 the idea of time is expressed in English by a prepositional phrase, in 2 by a participial phrase (in the active voice because Caesar performed the action), and in

3 by a series of coördinate clauses (because a succession of events is indicated). In the brief English phrases given for translation, note any such indications of the ablative absolute, change the form of the English to make it conform in construction to the Latin idiom, and be sure to make the participle agree with its noun.

CAUTION.— Do not put into the ablative absolute any word which is the subject or object of the main verb in the Latin sentence.

241.

VOCABULARY

agmen, -inis, n., <i>line of march; cōfertissimō agmine, adverbial phrase, in close array</i>	discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessūrus, <i>go away, depart</i>
locus, -i, m., <i>place; n. pl., loca, -ōrum, places</i>	interficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus, <i>kill</i>
respōnsum, -i, n., <i>reply, response</i>	pellō, -ere, pepuli, pulsus, <i>rout, drive away</i>
pauci, -ae, -a, pl. adj., <i>few, a few</i>	prōcēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessūrus, <i>advance, proceed</i>
āvertō, -ere, -i, -versus, <i>turn aside</i>	trānsportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>transport, carry over</i>
	ācritēr, adv., <i>fiercely, sharply</i>

242.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Proeliō factō,¹ agmine ēductō, hostibus venientibus, ponte visō, gladiō āversō, dēditionē factā. 2. Militibus trānsportātis, agmine discēdente, cōpiis per paucās viās ductis. 3. Hostibus superātis, obsidibus acceptis, Caesare duce, Caesare cōsule, respōnsis datis. 4. Periculō āversō, paucis interfectis, Caesare duce ad montis

¹Observe all indications of the ablative absolute.

prōcessērunt. 5. Pīlis missis, hostis dē mūrō nōn pepulimus. 6. Dux cōpiās hostium vidēns dicit, "Cōpiās equestris ad castra inimica mittēmus et pīlis gladiisque nostris multōs in flūmen pellēmus." 7. Celeritāte hostium territi ad montis properāverant.

II. 1. Having fortified a camp,¹ under Caesar's leadership, after the battle was fought (made), while our men are advancing. 2. Since the line of march was turned aside, although many had been killed. 3. Having given hostages, the enemy departed. 4. Having made a few replies,² the men went away at a given signal¹ in close array to the fortified places. 5. He attacked the walls,¹ captured the town,¹ received hostages,¹ and established peace with the townsmen. 6. The soldiers say, "We will fight fiercely if Caesar is our leader."¹

LESSON 33

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *is*—THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS—READING LESSON

243. A demonstrative pronoun points out a person or thing definitely, as: *this, that, these, the same.*

a. The demonstrative pronoun *is*, *this* or *that*, is used more frequently than any other of its class; it often supplies the place of the lacking personal pronoun of the third person, and its inflection should be thoroughly learned. It has both a substantive and an adjective use, as:—

1. *Eum vidēmus, we see him.*
2. *Eum puerum vidēmus, we see that boy.*

¹ Observe all indications of the ablative absolute.

² *Paucis respōnsis datis.*

244.	SINGULAR	PLURAL
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>
N.	is, <i>this, that, he</i>	ii, ei, <i>these, those, they</i>
G.	eius, <i>of this, of that, of him; his</i>	eōrum, <i>of these, those, them; their</i>
D.	eī, <i>to or for this, that, him</i>	iis, ¹ eis, <i>to or for these, those, them</i>
AC.	eum, <i>this, that, him</i>	eōs, <i>these, those, them</i>
AB.	eō, ² <i>from or with this, that, him</i>	iis, ¹ eis, ² <i>from or with these, those, them</i>
	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
N.	ea, <i>this, that, she</i>	cae, <i>these, those, they</i>
G.	eius, <i>of this, that, her; her, hers</i>	eārum, <i>of these, those, them; their, theirs</i>
D.	eī, <i>to or for this, that, her</i>	iis, eis, <i>to or for these, them, those</i>
AC.	eam, <i>this, that, her</i>	eās, <i>these, those, them</i>
AB.	eā, ² <i>from or with this, that, her</i>	iis, eis, ² <i>from or with these, those, them</i>
	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	id, <i>this, that, it</i>	ea, <i>these, those, they</i>
G.	eius, <i>of this, that, it; its</i>	eōrum, <i>of these, those, them; their, theirs</i>
D.	eī, <i>to or for this, that, it</i>	iis, eis, <i>to or for these, those, them</i>
AC.	id, <i>this, that, it</i>	ea, <i>these, those, them</i>
AB.	eō, ² <i>from or with this, that, it</i>	iis, eis, ² <i>from or with these, those, them</i>

¹ Pronounced as in one syllable with a single ī.

² The ablative may also be translated *by, by means of, out of, etc.*

a. Group **is, ea, id** in a table (like **fidus, -a, -um**) without the translations of forms, and learn the declensions across the page.

245. Examine the following:—

1. **Militem videō, eius hasta est longa, I see the soldier, his spear is long.**

2. **Puellam nōn culpō, eius cūrae magnae sunt, I do not blame the girl, her cares are great.**

In 1, **eius** agrees with its antecedent **militem** in the masculine gender and singular number; in 2, **eius** agrees with its antecedent **puellam** in the feminine gender and singular number; in each the genitive case is used, limiting **hasta** and **cūrae** respectively. Observe that the masculine and the feminine of this pronoun are the same in form in the genitive singular. Are they alike anywhere else?

246. The Possessive Pronouns. — These are:—

SINGULAR	PLURAL
meus, -a, -um, my, mine	noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours
tuus, -a, -um, your, yours	vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours
suus, -a, -um, his (own), her (own), its (own)	suus, -a, -um, their (own), theirs

a. These pronouns have a substantive and an adjective use, as: **liber est meus, the book is mine; liber meus, my book.**

b. They are declined like **fidus, -a, -um**, but the vocative of **meus** is **mī**, thus: **mī fili, O my son!** They agree in gender, number, and case with the object possessed, but refer for their meaning to their antecedents, thus:—

<i>The king said,</i> <i>"I love"</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{my son} \\ \textit{my daughter} \\ \textit{my kingdom} \end{array} \right.$	Rēx	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Meum filium} \\ \textit{Meam filiam} \\ \textit{Meum rēgnum} \end{array} \right.$	} amō."
		dixit,		

c. In the English sentences *my* remains unchanged, but in the Latin the possessive agrees with: (1) a masculine, (2) a feminine, (3) a neuter noun, but each possessive refers for its meaning to its antecedent *ego* (*I*), the understood subject of *amō*.

247. **Suus and Eius.** — 1. *Iūlius et Cornēlia erant amici; is suam mātrem amāvit, ea suam, Julius and Cornelia were friends; he loved his mother, she hers.*

2. *Iūlius autem eius quoque mātrem, Cornēlia eius amāvit, but Julius loved her mother also, Cornelia his.*

a. Study carefully the use of *is* and of *suus* in the sentences above and name the persons to whom they refer and the word with which *suam* agrees in each instance.

b. In the expression, *sua et patris cōnsilia, his own and his father's plans*, notice the agreement of *sua* with *cōnsilia*, the same word that is limited by the genitive *patris*, and study the translation of the phrase.

248.

RULES

1. **Suus.** — *Suus* in all its forms agrees with the name of the thing possessed, but refers to the subject of its own sentence.

2. **Eius.** — *Eius* limits the noun to which it belongs, but refers to some person or thing other than the subject of its own sentence.

3. **The Possessive and the Genitive Case.** — *The possessive is sometimes used in connection with a genitive limiting the same noun.*

249.

VOCABULARY

centuriō, -ōnis, m., <i>centurion,</i> <i>captain</i>	dēlcio, -ere, -iēci, -iectus, <i>cast</i> <i>or hurl down</i>
cupiditās, -ātis, f., <i>desire</i>	vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>wound</i>
sarcina, -ae, f., <i>bundle; pl.,</i> <i>personal baggage</i>	sub, prep. with acc. with verbs of motion, with abl. with verbs of rest, <i>under;</i> <i>sub monte, at the foot of</i> <i>the mountain; sub ves-</i> <i>perum, adverbial phrase,</i> <i>at or towards evening</i>
vicus, -i, m., <i>village</i>	
addūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, <i>lead to, influence</i>	
cōgo, -ere, cōēgi, cōactus, <i>drive together, collect</i>	
cōscribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scrip- tus, <i>enroll</i>	

250.

SPECIAL EXERCISES ON *suus* AND *eius*

I. 1. Suō gladiō vulnerātur, eius gladiō vulnerātur, eōrum gladii vulnerābuntur, suis gladiis vulnerābuntur. 2. Helvētīi frūmentum suis carris¹ portāvērunt, Helvētīi frūmentum eōrum carris portāvērunt. 3. Helvētīi hostis superāvērunt et eōrum liberōs obsidēs ad'suōs vicōs dūxērunt. 4. Cupiditāte eius rēgni addūcētur. 5. Sua et patris cōsilia erant bona. 6. Meis et militum hastis vulnerābantur.

II. 1. He will be killed by his (own) sword, he will be killed by his (another's) sword. 2. He says that he is being wounded by his (own) friends, he says that he is being wounded by his (another's) friends. 3. He saw his own cohorts and those of the enemy near the river. 4. His own and his father's friends are brave men and good citizens.

¹ on their carts, abl. of means (136, 137).

251.

EXERCISES

I. 1. In eō colle, per eōs montis, ad id oppidum, cum eō centuriōne, eius vicī. 2. Sub iis montibus manent, sub eum pontem nāvīgat. 3. Nostrī in finis hostium sub vesperum pervenient. 4. Helvētīi dē ripis eius flūminis tēla in castra suōrum hostium dēiciēbant. 5. Eum sub vesperum vīdimus et sub pontem dūximus. 6. Tēlis dē mūrō dēiectis multōs militēs vulnerāverant. 7. Iis militibus cōscriptis, in Galliam contendit.

II. 1. At the foot of this mountain, through that danger, by his danger, near these bridges, of these cities. 2. They saw them come towards evening with the centurions into the village. 3. Caesar will hasten into that part of the camp and enroll a new legion there. 4. A part of the enemy was keeping our men from the march. 5. At the given signal they hurled down spears from the walls. 6. They say that many centurions of the Roman people are in that battle.



ROMAN CENTURION IN SCALE
CORSELET AND SOLDIER IN
JOINTED CORSELET.

252.

READING LESSON

Posterō diē¹ castra ex eō locō mōvērunt. Idem² facit Caesar, equitēsque omnis, quōs³ ex omni prōvinciā et Aeduis atque eōrum sociis coēgerat, praemittit. Ii cum

¹ on the following day.

² the same thing.

³ whom.

cōpiis hostium in aliēnō locō proelium commisērunt et pauci dē nostris¹ cadunt. Quārē Helvētīi audācius² pugnāvērunt; sed Caesar suōs ā proeliō prohibēbat et satis habēbat³ hostis ab iniūriā maleficiōque prohibēre.

LESSON 34

THE FOURTH DECLENSION—THE RELATIVE PRONOUN —READING LESSON

253. Nouns of the fourth declension have stems in **-u**, generally changed to **-i** before **-bus**. Masculines have the nominative singular in **-us**, neuters in **-ū**. A few feminines occur. Like the masculine nouns, these end in **-us**.

254.

cāsus, -ūs, m., **cornū, -ūs, n.,**
chance, mis- *horn, wing,*
fortune *flank*

CASE ENDINGS

Stem **cāsu-**,
base **cās-**

Stem **cornu-**,
base **corn-**

SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
				<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>	

N.V.	cāsus	cāsūs	cornū	cornua	-us	-ūs	-ū	-ua
G.	cāsūs	cāsuum	cornūs	cornuum	-ūs	-uum	-ūs	-uum
D.	cāsui	cāsibus	cornū	cornibus	-ui	-ibus	-ū	-ibus
Ac.	cāsū	cāsūs	cornū	cornua	-um	-ūs	-ū	-ua
Ab.	cāsū	cāsibus	cornū	cornibus	-ū	-ibus	-ū	-ibus

a. Domus, -ūs, f., house, is partly of the fourth and partly of the second declension.

¹ *a few of our men.*

² *more boldly.*

³ *thought it sufficient.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	domus	domūs
G.	domūs (domī)	domuum (domōrum)
D.	domui (domō)	domibus
Ac.	domum	domōs (domūs)
AB.	domō (domū)	domibus

255. **The Relative Pronoun.** — This pronoun connects a subordinate clause to some noun or pronoun, called its antecedent, in the principal clause. It is thus declined: —

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	qui, <i>who, that</i>	quae, <i>who, that</i>	quod, <i>which, what</i>
G.	cuius, <i>whose, of whom</i>	cuius, <i>whose, of whom</i>	cuius, <i>whose, of which, of what</i>
D.	cui, <i>to or for whom</i>	cui, <i>to or for whom</i>	cui, <i>to or for which, what</i>
Ac.	quem, <i>whom, that</i>	quam, <i>whom, that</i>	quod, <i>which, what, that</i>
AB.	quō, ¹ <i>from or with whom</i>	quā, ¹ <i>from or with whom</i>	quō, ¹ <i>from or with which, what</i>
	PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	quī, <i>who, that</i>	quae, <i>who, that</i>	quae, <i>which, what, that</i>
G.	quōrum, <i>whose, of whom</i>	quārum, <i>of whose, of whom</i>	quōrum, <i>whose, of which</i>
D.	quibus, <i>to or for whom</i>	quibus, <i>to or for whom</i>	quibus, <i>to or for which</i> [that
Ac.	quōs, <i>whom, that</i>	quās, <i>whom, that</i>	quae, <i>which, what,</i>
AB.	quibus, ¹ <i>from or with whom</i>	quibus, ¹ <i>from or with whom</i>	quibus, ¹ <i>from or with which</i>

¹ The ablative may also be translated *by, by means of, out of, etc.*



INTERIOR OF A HOUSE IN POMPEII.

a. Cuius is pronounced in two syllables; its *-i* is a consonant: *coo'-yus*. *Cui* is pronounced *coo'-i* in one syllable.

256. In the English sentence, *The soldiers whom I see are brave, whom* is a relative pronoun. It is in the third person, plural number, and masculine gender to agree with its antecedent, *soldiers*. It is in the objective case because it is the object of the verb *see*. It also serves to introduce the subordinate clause *whom I see* and connect it with the noun *soldiers* in the principal clause. It modifies this noun as an adjective, hence a relative clause is an adjective clause. The Latin use is the same.

257.

RULE

The Relative Pronoun. — *The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, person, and number, but its case depends upon its relation to other words in its own clause.*

258. Observe the gender, person, number, and case of the relative pronouns and of their antecedents in the following sentences, and note the application of the rule in each instance.

1. *Lēgātī, quōs mīsimus, obsidēs postulāvērunt, the ambassadors whom we sent demanded hostages.*

2. *Gallia est terra quam Celtae incolunt, Gaul is the country which the Celts inhabit.*

3. *Pilum, quod miles habet, est longum, the javelin which the soldier has is long.*

4. *Ego, qui Caesarem vidi, numquam miser erō, I who have seen Caesar shall never be wretched.*

5. *Vir, cuius filii in castris sunt, fēlix est, the man whose sons are in the camp is happy.*

259.

VOCABULARY

Alpēs , -lum, f. pl., <i>the Alps</i>	imperātor , -ōris, m., <i>commander in chief, general</i>
cōnātus , -ūs, m., <i>attempt, undertaking</i>	dexter , -tra, -trum, <i>right, on the right hand</i>
cōnspectus , -ūs, m., <i>sight, view</i>	ascendō , -ere, -scendi, -scēsus, <i>climb, ascend</i>
equitātus , -ūs, m., <i>cavalry</i>	flāgitō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>demand</i>
exercitus , -ūs, m., <i>army</i>	

260. SPECIAL EXERCISES ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

I. 1. Montis altōs, quōs vidēmus, ascendit. 2. Castrae quae posuit erant magna. 3. Dux, cui¹ erat magnus exercitus, multa oppida capiēbat. 4. Ā ducibus, quibus multi militēs erant, multa oppida capiēbantur. 5. Aedui, quōrum finēs ab hostibus vāstābantur, auxilium ā Caesare petivērunt. 6. Imperātor, cuius grātia in civitāte magna erat, exercitum in hiberna ad Alpīs dūxit.

II. 1. These islands to which we are hastening are large. 2. This river whose banks we see is wide. 3. Those farmers whose fields you are devastating are fleeing to the city. 4. The Belgae who had¹ many armed men² captured many towns with their armies.³

261.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Alpium, cum exercitū, in cōspectū exercitūs, cōnātūs quōs fēcimus. 2. In cōspectū nostrī exercitūs, cōnātūs nostrōrum, dextrum cornū exercitūs. 3. Hostēs lēgātōs in cōspectū nostrī exercitūs interfēcērunt.

¹ See 160-161.

² Perfect Passive Participle of *armō* used as a noun.

³ Ablative of Means.

4. Tribūnus erat magnā grātiā in civitatē quod erant eī multī finitimī amicique. 5. Ā castris discessit et ā militibus, quī pila hastāsque iēcērunt, ad flūmen pellēbātur.

II. 1. In the enemy's army, by many attempts, on the right wing, the doors of the large house. 2. On the right wing of the army, the commander of the cavalry, by these attempts. 3. They came into winter quarters in Gaul which is the native country of the Celts. 4. Many men were being wounded on the right wing of the army. 5. The general, having led¹ his army across the bridge, joined battle² with the forces of the enemy.

262.

READING LESSON

Frūmentum quod Aedui Rōmānis prōmittēbant nōn suppetēbat, itaque Caesar id cotidiē flāgitābat. Aedui autem dixērunt frūmentum in agris propter frigora nōndum mātūrum esse. Caesar principēs Aeduōrum convocāvit, in³ quibus Diviciācus, amicus populi Rōmāni, et Liscus erant. Graviter eōs incūsāvit quod frūmentum nōn praeberent.⁴ Liscus autem dixit nōn esse suam culpam sed Dumnorigis, eum coniūratiōnem contrā populum Rōmānum facere.

LESSON 35

THE PASSIVE VOICE, PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES—THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

263. Review the present, imperfect, and future passive (95, 166, 171).

¹ Ablative Absolute, 236 et seq.

² joined battle, proelium commisit.

³ among.

⁴ they did not furnish.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

I shall have been called, etc. *I shall have been advised, have been etc.* *I shall have been heard, etc.* *I shall have ruled, etc.*

SINGULAR

1. vocātus erō	monitus erō	rēctus erō	auditus erō
2. vocātus eris	monitus eris	rēctus eris	auditus eris
3. vocātus erit	monitus erit	rēctus erit	auditus erit

PLURAL

1. vocāti erimus	moniti erimus	rēcti erimus	auditi erimus
2. vocāti eritis	moniti eritis	rēcti eritis	auditi eritis
3. vocāti erunt	moniti erunt	rēcti erunt	auditi erunt

CONJ. III -iō VERBS

PERFECT TENSE	PLUPERFECT TENSE	FUTURE PERFECT TENSE
<i>I was taken</i> or <i>have been taken, etc.</i>	<i>I had been taken, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have been taken, etc.</i>

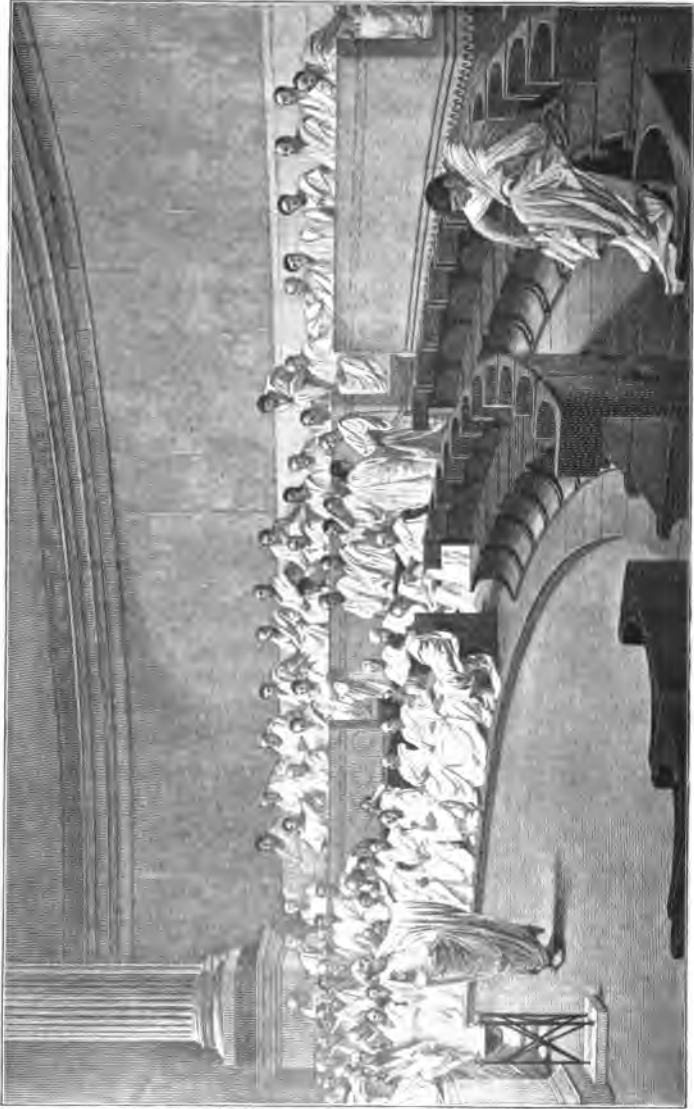
SINGULAR

1. captus sum	captus eram	captus erō
2. captus es	captus erās	captus eris
3. captus est	captus erat	captus erit

PLURAL

1. capti sumus	capti erāmus	capti erimus
2. capti estis	capti erātis	capti eritis
3. capti sunt	capti erant	capti erunt

a. In the preceding paradigms the participle has been given in the masculine gender only, but it is declined like **fidus**, -a, -um, and must agree with its subject in gender, number, and case.



CICERO DENOUNCING CATILINE IN THE SENATE.

b. Write a synopsis of *culpō*, *videō*, *dūcō*, *iaciō*, and *vinciō* in the indicative, active and passive, with 172 as your model. Write the three verb stems of each model verb.

265. Study the following:—

1. *Urbem metū reliquit*, *he left the city in fear (because of fear)*.

2. *Militēs Caesarem propter liberalitātem laudant*, *the soldiers praise Caesar for his generosity*.

Metū and **propter liberalitātem** in the above sentences express cause. **Dē** or **ex** with the ablative and **ob** with the accusative may be used to express the same idea.

266.

RULES

Expressions of Cause.—1. *The ablative without a preposition is used to express cause.*

2. *Ob and propter with the accusative, and dē or ex with the ablative, are used to express cause.*

267.

VOCABULARY

<i>calamitās</i> , -ātis, f., <i>calamity, disaster</i>	<i>barbarus</i> , -a, -um, <i>barbarous, foreign</i>
<i>causa</i> , -ae, f., <i>cause, reason</i>	<i>ferus</i> , -a, -um, <i>wild, fierce</i>
<i>Diviciācus</i> , -i, m., <i>Diviciacus, a Gallic chief.</i>	<i>Irācundus</i> , -a, -um, <i>irritable, passionate</i>
<i>furor</i> , -ōris, m., <i>fury</i>	<i>amittō</i> , -ere, -misi, -missus, <i>send away, lose</i>
<i>imperium</i> , imperī, n., <i>command, order, government, dominion</i>	<i>sustineō</i> , -ēre, -ui, -tentus, <i>sustain, endure</i>
<i>liberalitās</i> , -ātis, f., <i>liberality, generosity</i>	<i>diū</i> , adv., <i>for a long time</i>
<i>metus</i> , -ūs, m., <i>fear</i>	<i>diūtius</i> , adv. in comparative degree, <i>longer, any longer (of time)</i>
<i>senātus</i> , -ūs, m., <i>senate</i>	

268.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Sustenti erant, gladii āmissi sunt, propter liberālitātem, liberālitāte, eum propter liberālitātem amābunt. 2. Diviciācus, cuius frāter Dumnorix ā Caesare propter cupiditātem rēgni reprehēsus est, Caesaris amicus erat. 3. Dumnorix magnā apud suam civitātem grātiā propter liberālitātem erat. 4. Multis dē causis pōns in flūmine ā Caesare factus est. 5. Ariovistus homō erat barbarus, ferus, irācundus, cuius imperia ā Rōmānis sustenta nōn erant. 6. Imperia Ariovisti diūtius nōn sustinēbimus. 7. Furor eius hominis diū sustentus erat.

II. 1. I have lost, you had been lost, he will have lost, we shall have hurled, they will have ordered, he was ordered. 2. Because of this man's fury, on account of the senate's generosity, on account of his commands. 3. I shall not endure these commands any longer. 4. Dumnorix was praised for¹ his liberality but blamed for his desire of royal power. 5. The orders of this fierce and passionate man have been long endured. 6. Because-of² this disaster the cavalry of the state was lost.

LESSON 36

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — **sum** — INDEPENDENT USES
OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE — READING LESSON — WORD
LIST V

269. The indicative in Latin as in English is the mood of fact (62). When we wish, however, to express in Latin something as willed or desired, as possible or uncertain,

¹ Observe all signs of the ablative of cause (265, 266).

² *because-of*, preposition with accusative, **propter**.

or when we wish to express purpose or result, or some other ideas not emphasized as facts, we use another mood called the Subjunctive. This mood has many uses peculiar to the language. It is often translated by the English indicative, the infinitive, and the auxiliary verbs *may*, *might*, *should*, etc. The variety of translation is so great that it is impossible to give English equivalents in the paradigms. This mood has four tenses, the Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect. These may either express the ordinary ideas of time or may each refer to the future.

270. sum, I am. Principal Parts : **sum, esse, fui, futūrus** ; perfect stem, **fu-** ; perfect infinitive, **fuisse** ; participial stem, **fut-**.

SINGULAR			
Present	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
1. sim	essem	fuerim	fuissem
2. sis	essēs	fueris	fuisēs
3. sit	esset	fuerit	fuisset
PLURAL			
1. simus	essēmus	fuerimus	fuissemus
2. sitis	essētis	fueritis	fuissetis
3. sint	essent	fuerint	fuisissent

a. You will see in the above that the imperfect subjunctive may be very easily formed by using the present infinitive as a base and joining to it the personal endings. Similarly, the pluperfect subjunctive may be formed by joining the personal endings to the perfect infinitive used as a base, thus : —

Pres. Inf.	Pers. Ending	Imperf. Subj.	Perf. Inf.	Pers. Ending	Pluperf. Subj.
esse	-m	essem	fuisse	-m	fuissem

b. Compare the perfect subjunctive with the future perfect indicative and observe the following points: —

1. The future perfect indicative has in the first person singular the ending **-erō**, while the perfect subjunctive has **-erim**.

2. The future perfect indicative has, in the second person singular and the first and second persons plural, **-i** before the personal endings, while the perfect subjunctive has **-i** in those places.

271. The subjunctive is used either independently or dependently. It is used in independent clauses¹ to express an act or state, as: —

1. Willed — the Volitive Subjunctive.
2. Desired — the Optative Subjunctive.
3. Possible — the Potential Subjunctive.

1. The Volitive Subjunctive expresses: —

a. An exhortation (generally in the first person plural), **simus fortēs**, *let us be brave*, Hortatory Subjunctive. The negative particle is **nē**.

b. A command (usually in the third person), **sit miser**, *let him be wretched*, Jussive Subjunctive.

c. A prohibition (in the perfect tense, second or third person), **nē fueris inimicus**, *do not be unfriendly*, the Prohibitive Subjunctive. The introductory particle is **nē**.

d. A question of doubt or indignation, etc., **quid faciāmus?** *what shall we do?* Deliberative Subjunctive. The negative particle is **nōn**.

¹The subject of the independent uses of the subjunctive, together with the exercises in this lesson, may be omitted, if the teacher so desires. The Vocabulary should be learned.

2. The Optative Subjunctive is used in wishes :—

a. **Utinam fortēs essent**, *would that they were brave.*

b. **Utinam nē improbus fuisset**, *would that he had not been bad.* The negative particle is **nē**.

3. The Potential Subjunctive expresses an act or state as a possibility. It uses the present or perfect subjunctive, as: **dīcat** or **dixerit aliquis**, *some one may say.* The negative particle is **nōn**.

NOTE.—The use of the subjunctive in dependent clauses will be gradually discussed as the work goes on. In every lesson where the subjunctive appears notice the differences in form between this mood and the indicative.

272.

VOCABULARY

initium, initī, n., *beginning*

initium faciō, make a beginning, begin

fugae initium faciō, make a beginning of flight, begin flight

palūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp*

improbus, -a, -um, wicked, bad.

teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, hold

interdiū, adv., *by day*

noctū, adv., *by night*

paene, adv., *almost*

vehementer, adv., *violently, vehemently*

quā dē causā, adverbial phrase, rel., *and for this reason, therefore; interrog.*, *for what reason? why?*

enim, postpositive conj., *for*

273.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. **Sit fortis, sint fortēs, simus fortēs, nē fueris falsus, nē improbī fueritis.** 2. **Utinam bonī essēmus, utinam privātus civis esset, utinam civis Rōmānus fuisset.** 3. **Initium fugae nōn fēcit, quārē eī nē inimicī simus.** 4. **Quārē Caesar Dumnorigem, Diviciācī frātre, repre-**

henderat? 5. Dumnorigem, frāterem Diviciāci, reprehendit et ei cūstōdēs posuit. 6. Eum reprehendit quod initium fugae fēcit. 7. Nostrī ab itinere prohibiti sunt quod hostēs montem tenent. 8. Nūntiū ad imperātōrem

interdiū et noctū veniēbant, quī dixērunt, "Fortēs simus, hostēs enim in cōspectū sunt."



VERCINGETORIX BEFORE CAESAR.

interdiū et noctū veniēbant, quī dixērunt, "Fortēs simus, hostēs enim in cōspectū sunt." II. 1. Let him be friendly, let the private citizens be brave. 2. Would that Dumnorix were not false, would that Caesar had come by day. 3. Let us contend violently with the enemy almost in sight of our homes. 4. The commander led his infantry forces through the marsh to the hill. 5. Dumnorix began the flight and for this reason Caesar blamed him. 6. Why do we blame this fierce and barbarous man?

274.

READING LESSON

Dumnorix, frāter Diviciāci, vir magnā audāciā magnāque grātiā apud plēbem¹ propter liberālitatem, initium fugae

¹ the common people.

fēcit, Helvētiōsque per finis Sēquanōrum dūxit. Eum Caesar ad sē¹ vocāvit et ei cūstōdēs posuit. Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus² legiōnibus ad montem misit. Primā lūce³ nūntius ad Caesarem vēnit qui dixit, "Hostēs montem tenent, vidī enim arma Gallōrum." Caesar cōpiās in proximum collem dūxit et militēs ā proeliō prohibuit.

275.

WORD LIST V

accipiō	cōnscribō	exercitus	metus
ācritēr	cōspectus	existimō	meus
addūcō	continuus	fēlix	negō
Aedui	cornū	ferus	noctū
agmen	cupiditās	fīrmus	nūquam
Allobrogēs	cūstōs	flāgitō	oppidāni
Alpēs	dēditio	fortis	paene
āmittō	dēciō	frāter	palūs
ascendō	dexter	fugiō	pauci
āvertō	dicō	furor	pedester
barbarus	difficilis	grātia	pedestrēs cō-
brevis	discēdō	imperātor	piae
calamitās	diū	imperium	pellō
captivus	diūtius	incolumis	postulō
cāsus	Diviciācus	initium	prōcēdō
causa	Divicō	interdiū	putō
celeritās	domus	interficiō	quā dē causā
centuriō	enim	irācundus	quandō
clāmor	eques	is	qui
cōgō	equester	lātitudō	reliquus
cōnātus	equestrēs cō-	liberālitās	respōsum
concedō	piae	locus	sarcina
cōnfertissimus	equitātus	longitudō	sciō

¹ himself.² two.³ at daybreak.

sed	sub vesperum	teneō	vehementer
senātus	sustineō	terror	vester
soror	suus	trānsportō	vicus
sub	tamen	tuus	vulnerō
sub monte	tempestās	vāstō	

LESSON 37

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, FIRST CONJUGATION — SEQUENCE OF TENSES — READING LESSON

276. **vocō**: present infinitive active, **vocāre**; perfect infinitive active, **vocāvisse**.

ACTIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

	Present	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
1.	vocem	vocārem	vocāverim	vocāvissēm
2.	vocēs	vocārēs	vocāveris	vocāvissēs
3.	vocet	vocāret	vocāverit	vocāvisset

PLURAL

1.	vocēmus	vocārēmus	vocāverimus	vocāvissēmus
2.	vocētis	vocārētis	vocāveritis	vocāvissētis
3.	vocent	vocārent	vocāverint	vocāvissent

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

1.	vocer	vocārer	vocātus sim	vocātus essem
2.	voceris (-re)	vocārēris (-re)	vocātus sis	vocātus essēs
3.	vocētur	vocārētur	vocātus sit	vocātus esset

PLURAL

1.	vocēmur	vocārēmur	vocāti simus	vocāti essēmus
2.	vocēmini	vocārēmini	vocāti sitis	vocāti essētis
3.	vocentur	vocārentur	vocāti sint	vocāti essent

a. The present subjunctive, like the present indicative, is formed from the present stem.

b. Its mood sign in the first conjugation is -ē, which is shortened before final -m, -t, -nt, and -r, and before -nt wherever found. It takes the place of the final vowel of the stem in this conjugation.

c. The present subjunctive is formed by joining the personal endings to the present stem + the mood sign, thus: **voc(ā) + ē + s = vocēs**. For the formation of the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect tenses, see 270, *a, b*.

d. Write a synopsis of **laudō** and **culpō** in the subjunctive mood, active and passive, referring to 172 for your model.

277. The tenses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses follow special laws.

a. All tenses are included in two classes, primary and secondary.

b. Tenses which express present or future time are called primary. They are: the present, future, and future perfect indicative, the present and perfect subjunctive, and the present and future imperative.

c. Tenses which express past time are called secondary. They are: the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative, and the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

278.

RULE

Sequence of Tenses.—*In complex sentences a primary tense in the principal clause is followed by a primary tense in the subordinate clause, a secondary by a secondary.*

This rule is illustrated in the following:—

1. **Monet ut simus boni**, *he advises us to be good (that we may be).*

2. **Monēbit ut simus boni**, *he will advise us to be good (that we may be).*

3. **Monuit ut essēmus boni**, *he advised us to be good (that we might be).*

4. **Monuerat ut essēmus boni**, *he had advised us to be good (that we might be).*

5. **Monēbat ut essēmus boni**, *he was advising us to be good (that we might be).*

6. **Monuerit ut simus boni**, *he will have advised us to be good (that we may be).*

Learn these examples.

279.

VOCABULARY

explōrātor , -ōris, m., <i>scout</i>	culpō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>blame</i>
iūs , iūris, n., <i>right, law</i>	intellegō , -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus, <i>understand, perceive, know</i>
iūstitia , -ae, f., <i>justice</i>	ultrā , prep. w. acc., <i>beyond</i>
Rēmī , -ōrum, <i>the Remi</i> , a Gallic tribe	nē , conj., <i>that not</i>
speculātor , -ōris, m., <i>spy</i>	ut , conj., <i>that, in order that</i>
timor , -ōris, m., <i>fear</i>	et . . . et , <i>both . . . and</i>

280.

EXERCISES

I. 1. **Monet ut amicōs laudēmus**, **monuit ut amicōs laudārēmus**. 2. **Monuerint explōrātōrēs ut ad castra hostium properent**, **monuērunt explōrātōrēs ut ad vicum amicōrum properārent**. 3. **Profectiōne cōfirmātā, cum explōrātōribus speculātōribusque ad flūmen mātūrābant**. 4. **Militēs ab ducibus ut fortēs sint monēbuntur**. 5. **Intellēxi eōs propter timōrem culpārī**. 6. **Iūra civium propter senātūs iūstitiam cōfirmāta sunt**.

II. 1. The justice of the Remi; they advised us to hasten to a land beyond the Alps. 2. Caesar advised his centurions to be faithful. 3. The lieutenant had advised his centurions to be brave. 4. The commander in chief will advise his scouts and spies to be faithful. 5. We were advising the leader to send scouts to his own country.



EXCAVATING A HOUSE AT POMPEII.

281.

READING LESSON

Nūntius dicit montem ab hostibus tenēri, Caesar autem Labiēnum monet nē proelium statim committat, sed suum adventum exspectet, ut eōdem tempore¹ impetus in hostis fieret.² Quārē Labiēnus, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectat proeliōque abstinēt. Caesar autem per explorātōrēs cōgnōs-

¹ at the same time.² might be made.

cit et montem ā suis tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse, quā dē causā hostēs nōn insequuntur,¹ sed haud procul ab eōrum castris castra sua pōnunt.

LESSON 38

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, SECOND CONJUGATION—
ADVERBIAL AND ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

282. **moneō**: present infinitive active, **monēre**; perfect infinitive active, **monuisse**.

ACTIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

	Present	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
1.	moneam	monērem	monuerim	monuissem
2.	moneās	monērēs	monueris	monuissēs
3.	moneat	monēret	monuerit	monuisset

PLURAL

1.	moneāmus	monērēmus	monuerimus	monuissēmus
2.	moneātis	monērētis	monueritis	monuissētis
3.	moneant	monērent	monuerint	monuissent

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

1.	monear	monērer	monitus sim	monitus essem
2.	moneāris (-re)	monērēris (-re)	monitus sis	monitus essēs
3.	moneātur	monērētur	monitus sit	monitus esset

PLURAL

1.	moneāmur	monērēmur	moniti simus	moniti essēmus
2.	moneāmini	monērēmini	moniti sitis	moniti essētis
3.	moneantur	monērentur	moniti sint	moniti essent

¹ do not follow.

a. Name the primary tenses of the indicative, of the subjunctive. Name the secondary tenses of the indicative, of the subjunctive. State the law of sequence of tenses. (See Lesson 37.)

283. Study the following: —

1. *He sows in order that he may reap (to reap, in order to reap).*

2. *He sent messengers who should announce (to announce, in order to announce).*

In 1 the clause *in order that he may reap* shows the purpose of the sowing and modifies *sows* as an adverb. Such expressions are called Adverbial Clauses of Purpose.

In 2 the clause *who should announce* shows the purpose of the sending, refers to the noun *messengers*, and modifies it as an adjective. Such expressions are called Adjectival Clauses of Purpose.



GERMAN WOMAN IN SKIN MANTLE.
(Restoration from a Triumph Relief in the Vatican.)

NOTE. — In English you may use the infinitive to express purpose, but in Latin you must not use the infinitive to express this idea. What mood should you use? See examples.

- a. The following are illustrations of purpose clauses:—
1. **Venit ut videat**, *he comes to see (that he may see).*
 2. **Vēnit ut vidēret**, *he came to see (that he might see).*
 3. **Militēs fortiter pugnant, nē dux culpet**, *the soldiers*

fight bravely in order that their leader may not blame them.

4. *Militēs fortiter pugnāverunt, nē dux culpāret, the soldiers fought bravely in order that their leader might not blame them.*

5. *Lēgātōs mittit qui nūntient, he sends envoys to report.*

6. *Lēgātōs misit qui nūntiārent, he sent envoys to report.*

b. Notice that the subordinate clauses in 1 and 2 are affirmative and are introduced by *ut*, and that in 3 and 4 they are negative and are introduced by *nē*. In 1, 3, and 5 any primary tense, and in 2, 4, and 6 any secondary tense, may stand in the principal clause. The subordinate clauses follow the law of sequence of tenses (277, 278).

284.

RULES

Adverbial Clauses of Purpose. — *Adverbial clauses of purpose, with ut affirmative and nē negative, have their verbs in the subjunctive.*

Adjectival Clauses of Purpose. — *Adjectival clauses of purpose are introduced by relative pronouns and have their verbs in the subjunctive. The negative is nōn.*

285.

VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, m., arrival	pāgus, -i, m., district
incursiō, -ōnis, f., attack, invasion, raid	bellicōsus, -a, -um, warlike
labor, -ōris, m., toil, labor	dēcurrō, -ere, -cucurri, -cursūrus, run down
manus, -ūs, f., hand, band	hūc, adv., hither, to this place

286.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Veniet ut pugnet, vēnit ut pugnāret, lēgātum misit qui militēs convocāret. 2. Interdiū et noctū ad montis properat nē ab hostibus videātur. 3. Imperātor multōs

militēs ad pontem misit quī hostis ab itinere prohibērent. 4. Dē colle dēcucurrerunt ut incursiōnem Helvētiōrum prohibērent. 5. Audāx bellicōsaque manus ex pāgō Helvētiōrum incursiōnem in exercitum Rōmānum fēcit. 6. Dicit manum hostium in nostrōs finis venire.

II. 1. The scouts come to see, they will come to see, he had come to see, you will have come to see, we were coming to see.

2. The scouts ran down from the hill to announce the arrival of a hostile band.

3. You made an invasion into the country of the Aeduans in order to devastate their fields. 4. These bold and warlike men came to this place in order to free their friends from danger.

5. We shall send ambassadors to establish peace with our neighbors.



KNEELING GERMAN, BEGGING FOR PROTECTION OR MERCY.

(Bronze Figure in the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris.)

LESSON 39

THE CARDINAL NUMERALS—THE ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE—READING LESSON

287. The Cardinal Numerals, as in English, are the numbers used in counting. The following furnish a basis for forming the others:—

1, ūnus, -a, -um	22, viginti duo, etc.
2, duo, -ae, -o	30, trigintā
3, trēs, tria	40, quadrāgintā
4, quattuor	50, quinquāgintā
5, quinque	60, sexāgintā
6, sex	70, septuāgintā
7, septem	80, octōgintā
8, octō	90, nōnāgintā
9, novem	100, centum
10, decem	101, centum (et) ūnus, etc.
11, ūndecim	200, ducenti, -ae, -a
12, duodecim	300, trecenti, -ae, -a
13, tredecim	400, quadringenti, -ae, -a
14, quattuordecim	500, quingenti, -ae, -a
15, quindecim	600, sescenti, -ae, -a
16, sēdecim	700, septingenti, -ae, -a
17, septendecim	800, octingenti, -ae, -a
18, duodēviginti	900, nōngenti, -ae, -a
19, ūndēviginti	1000, mille
20, viginti	2000, duo milia
21, viginti ūnus, <i>or</i> ūnus et viginti	

a. Of these only **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, the hundreds, and **milia**, the plural of **mille**, are declined. For declension of **ūnus** see 376.

288.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	tribus	tribus
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trīs, trēs	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

a. The hundreds, except **centum**, are declined like the plural of **fidus** (113), although they have the genitive plural in **-um** instead of **-orum**, etc.

b. **Mille** is both a noun and an adjective. As an adjective it is indeclinable; as a noun it is found in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, and is fully declined in the neuter plural:—

SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. mille	mīlia
G. —	mīlium
D. —	mīlibus
Ac. mille	mīlia
Ab. —	mīlibus

289. Examine the following:—

1. **Multōs annōs in oppidō manet**, *he remains many years in the town.*

2. **Ducentōs pedēs liberōs portat**, *he carries the children two hundred feet.*

Multōs annōs is in the accusative case and expresses duration of time; **ducentōs pedēs** is in the same case and expresses extent of space.

290.

RULE

Time and Space.—*Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

291.

VOCABULARY

annus, -i, m., *year*

hōra, -ae, f., *hour*

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack*

lacus, -ūs, m., *lake*

passus, -ūs, m., *pace*

duo mīlia passuum, *two thousand paces, two miles*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot*

dēsistō, -ere, -stiti, -stiturus,	obtineō, -ere, -ui, -tentus, ob-
<i>cease, desist</i>	<i>tain, hold</i>
exspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, ex-	trādō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, hand
<i>pect, wait for</i>	<i>over, surrender</i>
hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, win-	statim, adv., immediately
<i>ter, spend the winter</i>	

292.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Mille passūs, duo milia passuum, tria milia hominum, quinque milia passuum frumentum portābat. 2. Exercitus ducentōs pedēs prōcessit ut cōpiās bellicōsās finitimōrum dē mūrō dēiceret. 3. Per Alpīs in Galliam contendit ut ibi trīs annōs maneat. 4. Sex hōrās oppidum continenter oppugnābant, sub vesperum autem dē cōnātū dēstitērunt. 5. Hostibus territis et superātis, Caesar



BOY WITH CALCULATING BOARD.

obsidēs postulāvit, qui statim trāditi sunt. 6. Ad lacum prōcessērunt et ibi impetum in hostis fēcērunt. 7. Duōs annōs in Galliā hiemābant quod in eō locō erat magna cōpia frumentī.

II. 1. Six miles, ten feet, a thousand paces, five thousand paces, four miles. 2. Ten years, thirty hours, he advanced two hundred paces. 3. He advances from Italy into Gaul in order to remain there three years. 4. During five years the influence of this man was great. 5. The ditch extended two hundred paces from the lake to the town. 6. The legions advanced two miles with great speed in order to frighten the Gauls.

293.

READING LESSON

Caesar, quod exercitui cōpia frūmenti nōn erat, iter ab Helvētiis āvertit et ad oppidum magnum Aeduōrum contendit. Eā rē hostibus per equitēs nūntiātā, Helvētīi quoque suum iter āvertere cōstituērunt. Caesar in mediō colle¹ quattuor legiōnēs instrūxit, duās enim quās in Galliā proximē cōscripserat, praesidiō impedimentis² disposuerat. Galli fortiter ācriterque pugnāvērunt, Rōmāni autem magnā virtūte audāciāque contendērunt et multōs hostium interfēcērunt.

LESSON 40

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, THIRD CONJUGATION—SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH *ut* AND *nē*—THE DOUBLE DATIVE—READING LESSON

294. *regō*: present infinitive active, *regere*; perfect infinitive active, *rēxisse*.

ACTIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

	Present	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
1. <i>regam</i>		<i>regerem</i>	<i>rēxerim</i>	<i>rēxissem</i>
2. <i>regās</i>		<i>regerēs</i>	<i>rēxeris</i>	<i>rēxissēs</i>
3. <i>regat</i>		<i>regeret</i>	<i>rēxerit</i>	<i>rēxisset</i>

PLURAL

1. <i>regāmus</i>	<i>regerēmus</i>	<i>rēxerimus</i>	<i>rēxissēmus</i>
2. <i>regātis</i>	<i>regerētis</i>	<i>rēxeritis</i>	<i>rēxissētis</i>
3. <i>regant</i>	<i>regerent</i>	<i>rēxerint</i>	<i>rēxissent</i>

¹ in mediō colle, on the middle of the hill.

² praesidiō impedimentis, as a guard to the baggage. See 297, 298.

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR			
Present	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
1. regar	regerer	rēctus sim	rēctus essem
2. regāris (-re)	regerēris (-re)	rēctus sis	rēctus essēs
3. regātur	regerētur	rēctus sit	rēctus esset
PLURAL			
1. regāmur	regerēmur	rēcti simus	rēcti essēmus
2. regāmini	regerēmini	rēcti sitis	rēcti essētis
3. regantur	regerentur	rēcti sint	rēcti essent

a. The subjunctive mood sign in the third conjugation, as in the second, is *-ā*. In *regō* and verbs conjugated like *regō*, it takes the place of the stem vowel. It is shortened before final *-m*, *-t*, *-nt*, and *-r* of the personal endings.

295. Examine the following :—

1. **Monet ut veniāmus,**¹ *he advises us to come.*
2. **Monet nē pugnēmus,**¹ *he advises us not to fight.*

a. Here the subordinate clauses are used like nouns as the objects of *monet*; they express purpose, have their verbs in the subjunctive, and are introduced by *ut* when affirmative and by *nē* when negative. They are called Substantive Clauses of Purpose. In English the idea of purpose is often expressed by the infinitive. See the examples above, and compare the Latin and English uses.

b. The verbs most frequently used with substantive clauses of purpose are :—

1. **imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, order, command;** with dative and clause object.

¹ These sentences might read : **Nōs monet ut veniāmus** and **nōs monet nē pugnēmus.**

2. **persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, persuade**; with dative and clause object.

3. **moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, advise, warn**; with accusative and clause object.

4. **rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask**; with accusative and clause object.

5. **petō, -ere, -ivī or -iī, -itus, ask, beg, seek**; with **ab** and the ablative and clause object.

6. **postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, demand**; with **ab** and the ablative and clause object.

Learn such of these verbs as you do not already know, with their principal parts and the cases which they govern.

296.

RULE

Substantive Clauses of Purpose. — *Substantive clauses of purpose with their verbs in the subjunctive are used as the objects of verbs of commanding, advising, persuading, asking, and demanding. The English generally uses the infinitive with such verbs.*

NOTE. — 1. **Iubeō, I command**, is used with the complementary infinitive, not with the subjunctive.

2. Substantive clauses of purpose originate in the volitive use of the subjunctive (271, 1, *a-d*), because the idea of *willing* is implied in the meaning of verbs expressing *command, advice, persuasion*, and the like.

297. Compare the Latin with the English in the following: —

1. **Caesari impedimentō erat, it was a hindrance to Caesar.**

Note the two datives in the Latin. Here **Caesari** expresses the *person to whom* and is in the dative case of the indirect object, while **impedimentō** expresses the *thing for which* and is in the dative of purpose. Fix this use firmly in your mind. The dative of purpose is sometimes used alone.

298.

RULE

The Double Dative. — *The Latin often uses a dative of the person to or for whom, together with the dative of the object for which, where in English a predicate noun and an indirect object are used.*



BAGGAGE TRAIN.

299.

VOCABULARY

impedimentum , -i, n., <i>hindrance</i> ; pl., <i>baggage</i>	hindeiligō , -ere, -lēgi, -lēctus, <i>select, choose</i>
pābulum , -i, n., <i>fodder</i>	praemittō , -ere, -misi, -missus, <i>send ahead or forward</i>
subsidiūm , subsidi, n., <i>reinforcement</i>	interea , adv., <i>in the meantime</i>
ūsus , -ūs, m., <i>use</i>	trāns , prep. w. acc., <i>across</i>

300.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Flūmen erat hostibus impedimentō. 2. Caesar pontem fēcit ut cōpiis subsidiō esset. 3. Locum castris dēlēgit, eis persuādet ut locum castris dēligat. 4. Eōs rogat nē legiōnēs in itinere impediant. 5. Multa enim Caesarī ūsuī erant. 6. Intereā dux lēgātis imperat nē explōrātōrēs in finis Aeduōrum mittant. 7. Multi militēs ad proelium missi sunt quī exercitūi subsidiō essent. 8. Oppidāni trāns flūmen mittentur quī pābulum in castra trānsportent.

II. 1. Caesar orders the scouts to hasten, to select a place for a camp, to advance to the marsh. 2. The bridge was a protection to the town. 3. He builds a bridge to be a protection to the town. 4. The grain which was sent across the marsh was of great use to the army. 5. He persuades the leaders to send scouts into the country of the enemy. 6. He warns the lieutenants not to send the soldiers ahead.

301.

READING LESSON

Caesar, primum suō¹ deinde omnium,¹ equis ex cōspectū remōtis² proelium cum hostibus commisit. Nostrī ē locō superiōre pilis missis facile phalangem hostium perfrēgerunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis, in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Scūta Gallis magnō impedimentō erant. Dēnique, scūtis ē manibus ēmissis, nūdō corpore pugnāvērunt. Tandem in fugam versī ad proximum montem fūgērunt.

¹ See 247, *b*, and 248, 3.

² Note all indications of the ablative absolute, and use great care in translation. See 236.

LESSON 41

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, FOURTH CONJUGATION AND
-IO VERBS OF THE THIRD — REVIEW OF PURPOSE
CLAUSES — VERBS OF FEARING

302. **audiō**: present infinitive active, **audire**; perfect infinitive active, **audivisse**.

ACTIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

	Present	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
1.	audiam	audirem	audiverim	audivissem
2.	audiās	audirēs	audiveris	audivissēs
3.	audiat	audiret	audiverit	audivisset

PLURAL

1.	audiāmus	audirēmus	audiverimus	audivissēmus
2.	audiātis	audirētis	audiveritis	audivissētis
3.	audiant	audirent	audiverint	audivissent

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

1.	audiar	audirer	auditus sim	auditus essem
2.	audiāris (-re)	audirēris (-re)	auditus sis	auditus essēs
3.	audiātur	audirētur	auditus sit	auditus esset

PLURAL

1.	audiāmur	audirēmur	auditi simus	auditi essēmus
2.	audiāmini	audirēmini	auditi sitis	auditi essētis
3.	audiantur	audirentur	auditi sint	auditi essent

caplō : present infinitive active, **capere** ; perfect infinitive active, **cēpisse**.

ACTIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

	Present	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
1.	capiam	caperem	cēperim	cēpissem
2.	capiās	caperēs	cēperis	cēpissēs
3.	capiat	caperet	cēperit	cēpisset

PLURAL

1.	capiāmus	caperēmus	cēperimus	cēpissēmus
2.	capiātis	caperētis	cēperitis	cēpissētis
3.	capiant	caperent	cēperint	cēpissent

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

1.	capiar	caperer	captus sim	captus essem
2.	capiāris (-re)	caperēris(-re)	captus sis	captus essēs
3.	capiātur	caperētur	captus sit	captus esset

PLURAL

1.	capiāmur	caperēmur	capti simus	capti essēmus
2.	capiāmini	caperēmini	capti sitis	capti essētis
3.	capiantur	caperentur	capti sint	capti essent

a. The mood sign in the fourth conjugation and in **-iō** verbs of the third is **-ā**, which is shortened before final **-m**, **-t**, **-nt**, and **-r**.

b. For the formation of the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive active see **270, a**.

c. Compare the present and perfect subjunctive forms in the above verbs with those of the other conjugations (**276, 282, 294**) and with the future and future perfect indicative. Also note once more and remember the future

forms in the first and second conjugations as distinguished from the third and fourth.

d. Review carefully 283, 284, 295, 296.

303. Study carefully the following sentences: —

1. **Timeō nē pugnet**, *I fear that he will fight.*
2. **Timeō ut pugnet**, *I fear that he will not fight.*
3. **Timui nē pugnāret**, *I feared that he would fight.*
4. **Timui ut pugnāret**, *I feared that he would not fight.*

a. Compare this use of **ut** and **nē** with that found in 283, 295.

b. The apparent change in meaning is due to the following facts: —

1. What we fear will happen, we wish may not happen.
2. What we fear will not happen, we wish may happen.

NOTE. — This use of the subjunctive, like that in substantive clauses of purpose, springs from the volitive subjunctive. For law of sequence see 277, 278.

304.

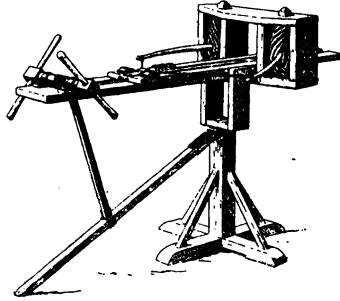
VOCABULARY

biduum , -i, n., <i>a space of two days, two days</i>	dividō , -ere, -visi, -visus, <i>divide, separate</i>
tormentum , -i, n., <i>hurling engine</i>	perfringō , -ere, -frēgi, -fractus, <i>break through</i>
vallum , -i, n., <i>rampart</i>	respondeō , -ēre, -spondi, -spōnsus, <i>reply, answer</i>
inermis , -e, <i>unarmed</i>	timeō , -ēre, -ui, —, <i>fear</i>
distineō , -ēre, -ui, -tentus, <i>keep apart</i>	dēnique , adv., <i>finally</i>
	libenter , adv., <i>willingly</i>

305.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Timuērunt nē Galli impetum in vāllum facerent.
 2. Timuērunt ut militēs vāllum dēfenderent. 3. Timeō
 nē vāllum castrōrum ā militibus perfringātur. 4. Timu-
 isti nē multī, et viri et liberi,
 ab hostibus interficerentur.
 5. Dicit lēgātōs, subsidiis
 missis, manum hostium disti-
 nēre. 6. Biduum in castriis
 manēbant et castella dē-
 fendēbant nē hostēs vāllum
 perfringerent. 7. Dēnique,
 tormentis positis et pilis iactis
 militēs dē mūrō pepulērunt et
 multōs inermis interfēcērunt.



CATAPULT.

8. Timet ut Galli respōnsum nostri imperātōris audiant.

II. 1. I fear that he will not come, he feared that they
 would come, we feared that you would not come.
 2. Caesar feared that the troops of the enemy would not
 be kept apart. 3. They hastened to the town in order
 to place hurling engines there. 4. We had feared that
 you would willingly remain in the camp of the enemy.
 5. Finally we advised you to run down from the camp and
 keep the enemy apart.

LESSON 42

THE THIRD DECLENSION, GENERAL RULES FOR
 GENDER—IRREGULAR NOUNS—READING LESSON

306. General Rules for Gender:—

1. Nouns in **-er, -or, -ōs, -es** (gen. **-idis, -itis**), are masculine.

2. Nouns in **-ō, -ās, -ēs** (gen. **-is**), **-is, -s** (preceded by a consonant), and **-x** are feminine.

3. Nouns in **-a, -e, -n, -ar, -us** (gen. **-eris, -oris**), with some others, are neuter.

a. There are many exceptions to these rules for gender, but they must be learned by observation, study, and practice; you cannot easily write good Latin without knowing the gender of all nouns.

b. In the following list you will find the principal exceptions to the above rules for gender which will be needed for your work in this book.

collis, -is, m., <i>hill</i>	mēnsis, -is, m., <i>month</i>
dēns, dentis, m., <i>tooth</i>	mōns, montis, m., <i>mountain</i>
finis, -is, m., <i>end, limit</i>	ōrdō, -inis, m., <i>order, rank</i>
fōns, fontis, m., <i>fountain</i>	pēs, pedis, m., <i>foot</i>
ignis, -is, m., <i>fire</i>	pōns, pontis, m., <i>bridge</i>
iter, itineris, n., <i>journey</i>	sōl, sōlis, m., <i>sun</i>
	vertex, -icis, m., <i>summit</i>

Learn such of these as you do not know and state to which rule each is an exception.

307. In some nouns the stem is irregularly modified in some of the cases:—

iter, itineris, n., <i>journey</i>	vis, vis, f., <i>force</i>		
Stems, iter- and itiner- ;	Stems, vi- and vir- ;		
bases, iter- and itiner-	bases, v- and vir-		
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. iter	itinerā	vis	virēs
G. itineris	itinerum	vis (rare)	virium
D. itinerī	itineribus	vi (rare)	viribus
Ac. iter	itinerā	vim	viris, -ēs
Ab. itinere	itineribus	vi	viribus

a. Distinguish carefully *vis*, *strength*, of the third declension from *vir*, *man*, of the second.

308.

VOCABULARY

<i>cōpiae domesticae, cōpiārum</i>	<i>agō, -ere, ēgi, āctus, set in</i>
<i>domesticārum, f. pl., home</i>	<i>motion, drive, do, act</i>
<i>supplies</i>	<i>interscindō, -ere, -scidi, -scis-</i>
<i>frigus, -oris, n., cold; pl., cold</i>	<i>sus, cut down, destroy</i>
<i>weather</i>	<i>suppetō, -ere, -ivi or -ii,</i>
<i>vis (vis), f., force, power; pl.,</i>	<i>-itūrus, be at hand</i>
<i>strength</i>	<i>nōndum, adv., not yet</i>
<i>domesticus, -a, -um, domestic,</i>	<i>ex itinere, adverbial phrase,</i>
<i>private</i>	<i>on the march</i>
<i>integer, -gra, -grum, whole,</i>	<i>magnis itineribus, adverbial</i>
<i>fresh</i>	<i>phrase, by forced marches</i>
<i>mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe</i>	

309.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar pontem longum interscindit nē hostēs cōpiās trādūcant. 2. Cōpiae domesticae Aeduis nōn suppetēbant, quārē frūmenta mātūra ex agris capiēbant. 3. Integris viribus dē altō colle dēcucurrērunt ut, ponte interscissō, exercitum inimicum ā finibus suis prohibērent. 4. Timet nē hostēs in suōs ex itinere impetum faciant, et eōs ad altum montis verticem pellant. 5. Misit qui¹ pontem interscinderent. 6. Quod frūmenta in agris propter frigora nōndum mātūra erant, ab Aeduis flāgitābat. 7. Belgae magnis itineribus ad castra contendērunt ut impetum inimicārum cōpiārum repellerent.

II. 1. Caesar kept demanding² ripe grain of the

¹ (*men*) who should cut down, men to cut down. (283, 284.)

² See sentence 6 in 309, I. The imperfect often expresses repeated action.

Aeduans. 2. He hastened to drive the beasts-of-burden across the long bridge. 3. They made an attack with fresh strength upon our line of march. 4. On account of the cold weather the crops-of-grain were not yet ripe. 5. We fear that the troops will be attacked with fresh strength on the march. 6. We were advised to bring



THE EMPEROR'S SACRIFICE AT THE ROMAN BRIDGE OVER THE DANUBE.
(Column of Trajan.)

home-supplies into the camp, for the enemy were hastening by forced marches to attack our army.

310.

READING LESSON

Proeliō autem renovātō, ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum est; ¹ nēmō autem āversum hostem ² vidit. In eō proeliō Orgetorigis filiam et ūnum ē filiis ³ nostrī militēs

¹ they fought, lit., it was fought.

² the back of an enemy, lit., an enemy turned away.

³ one of his sons.

cēpērunt et multa milia interfēcērunt. Ii quī superfuērunt magnis itineribus in finis Lingonum contendērunt, ibique quārtō diē¹ pervēnērunt. Lingonēs eōs autem frūmentō iuvāre nōn potuērunt² quod ā Caesare prohibiti sunt.

LESSON 43

THE ORDINAL NUMERALS—THE FIFTH DECLENSION
—THE ABLATIVE OF TIME—READING LESSON—
WORD LIST VI

311. The ordinal numerals in Latin, as in English, are adjectives derived from the cardinals to express order or place. They are declined like *fidus*, -a, -um.

1st, <i>primus</i> , -a, -um	13th, <i>tertius decimus</i>
2d, <i>secundus</i>	14th, <i>quārtus decimus</i>
3rd, <i>tertius</i>	15th, <i>quintus decimus</i>
4th, <i>quārtus</i>	16th, <i>sextus decimus</i>
5th, <i>quintus</i>	17th, <i>septimus decimus</i>
6th, <i>sextus</i>	18th, <i>duodēvicēsimum</i>
7th, <i>septimus</i>	19th, <i>ūndēvicēsimum</i>
8th, <i>octāvus</i>	20th, <i>vicēsimum</i>
9th, <i>nōnus</i>	21st, <i>vicēsimum primus</i>
10th, <i>decimus</i>	30th, <i>tricēsimum</i>
11th, <i>ūndecimus</i>	40th, <i>quādrāgēsimum</i>
12th, <i>duodecimus</i>	50th, <i>quīnquāgēsimum</i>

312. Stems of the fifth declension end in *ē*.

¹ on the fourth day.

² could.

diēs, diēi, m., <i>day</i>		rēs, rei, f., <i>thing,</i> <i>matter</i>		CASE ENDINGS		
Stem diē , base di-		Stem rē-, base r-				
SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	
N. V.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
G.	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum	-ei	-ērum
D.	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus	-ei	-ēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

a. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of the fifth declension that are declined throughout. The others are declined in the singular and a few are found also in the nominative and accusative plural. **Spēs**, **spei**, f., *hope*, and **fidēs**, **-ei**, f., *faith*, are declined like **rēs**; **spēs** has a nominative and an accusative plural and **fidēs** the singular only.

b. **Gender**. — Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine with the exception of **diēs**, which is masculine in the plural and generally in the singular, except where it refers to some specified time.

c. Decline **spēs** and **fidēs**.

313. In English we express the time at which or within which an act takes place by a preposition and its object, as: *at night, within two years*. In Latin we express these ideas by the use of the ablative case without a preposition.

1. **Tertiā hōrā in castra vēnit**, *he came into camp at the third hour*.

2. **Tribus annis multa oppida dēlēbit**, *within three years he will destroy many towns*.

a. Compare these sentences with those expressing duration of time (289).

314.

RULE

Time at or within Which. — Time at or within which an act is performed is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

315.

VOCABULARY

abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus,	retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, hold lead away
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, blot out, destroy	quō, adv., where
praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus,	apud, prep. with acc., at, in, among, in the presence of
restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, re- store, give back	cis, prep. with acc., on this side of

316.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Eō diē, tribus diēbus, quārtō diē, tertiō annō, septimā hōrā, quattuor diēbus. 2. Hostēs lēgātōs Rōmānōs in oppidō multās hōrās retinuērunt. 3. Tertiā hōrā multi dē colle dēcucurrērunt ut oppida aedificiaque dēlērent. 4. Centum pāgī Germānōrum cis Rhēnum sunt, dicit centum pāgōs Germānōrum cis Rhēnum esse. 5. Quinque diēs obsidēs in castris retinuit, quinque hōrās obsidēs in castris retinēbantur. 6. Primā hōrā militēs apud imperātōrem erant ut dē proeliō nūntiārent. 7. Aeduis imperāvit ut frūmentum statim praebērent. 8. Neque obsidēs restituam neque inimicōs virōs in fidem meam accipiam. 9. Spēs magna exercitui erat quod hostēs omnis cōpiās abdūxerant.

II. 1. Within ten years, at the second hour, for ten days, during five nights, on the tenth day. 2. Within two years Caesar will have destroyed all the towns of the

enemy. 3. The lieutenant will have held back the tenth legion, but he will send the seventh as a reënforcement to Caesar. 4. He ordered them to restore within two years



ROMAN ARMY MADE TO PASS UNDER THE YOKE.

all the villages which they had destroyed. 5. On that day all the enemy were received into the protection of the Roman people. 6. They came on foot¹ to Caesar with

¹ pedibus.

great hope of peace and begged that he would receive them in¹ surrender.

317.

READING LESSON

Helvētii omnium rērum inopiā adducti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē misērunt, quī eum in itinere convēnērunt² et ab eō pācem petiērunt, atque dīxērunt sē in eō locō eius adventum exspectāre quō tum essent. Caesar, postquam in eum locum pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs³ postulāvit. Deinde, armīs obsidibusque trādītis, eōs in dēditionem accēpit et oppida vicōsque, quōs⁴ dēlēverant, eōs restituere iussit. Circiter autem hominum milia VI eius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātus, primā nocte ē castris Helvētiorum ad Rhēnum finisque Germānōrum contēdērunt. Caesar eis imperāvit, quōrum per finis ierant,⁵ ut eōs redūcerent. Reliquōs omnis in dēditionem accēpit.

318.

WORD LIST VI

abdūcō	dēligō	explōrātor	inermis
adventus	dēnique	exspectō	integer
agō	dēns	fidēs	intellegō
annus	dēsistō	fōns	intereā
apud	diēs	frigus	interscindō
bellicōsus	distineō	hiemō	iūs
biduum	dividō	hōra	iūstitia
cis	domesticus	impedimentum	labor
culpō	duo	imperō	lacus
dēcurrō	et . . . et	impetus	libenter
dēleō	ex itinere	incursiō	manus

¹ into surrender.

² met.

³ Either no conjunction is used in Latin, as here, or one less than the number of connected words.

⁴ quōs agrees with its nearest antecedent.

⁵ they had gone.

mātūrus	persuādeō	rogō	trādō
mēnsis	pēs	sōl	trāns
mille	petō	speculātor	trēs
nē	praebeō	spēs	ultrā
nōndum	praemittō	statim	ūnus
obtimeō	quō	subsidiūm	ūsus
ōrdō	Rēmī	suppetō	ut
pābulum	rēs	tertius	vāllum
pāgus	respondeō	timeō	vertex
passus	restituō	timor	vis
perfringō	retineō	tormentum	

LESSON 44

THE CLASSES OF PRONOUNS — PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

319. In Latin, as in English, there are eight classes of pronouns. They are as follows:—

1. Personal, which by their form show their person and number; as, **ego**, *I*; **tū**, *you*.

2. Reflexive, which are used in the oblique cases¹ to refer back to the subjects of their sentences; as, **sē culpat**, *he blames himself*.

3. Possessive, which show possession; as, **suus**, **-a**, **-um**, *his, her, its, their (own)*.

4. Demonstrative, which point out persons or things definitely; as, **hic**, *this*; **ille**, *that*.

5. Intensive, which emphasize the words to which they belong; as, **ipse**, *he himself*; **vir ipse**, *the man himself*.

6. Relative, which connect a subordinate clause with

¹ All cases but the nominative and vocative are called oblique cases.

some noun or pronoun in the principal clause ; as, *eum qui vēnit videō, I see him who came.*

7. Interrogative, which are used to ask questions ; as, *quis venit ? who comes ?*

8. Indefinite, which indicate things indefinitely ; as, *aliquis dicat, some one may say.*

a. The personal pronoun of the third person is lacking. Its place is generally supplied by *is*, sometimes by *ille*.

320. THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

		FIRST PERSON	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL
N.	<i>ego, I</i>	<i>nōs, we</i>	
G.	<i>mei, of me</i>	<i>nostrum, nostri, of us</i>	
D.	<i>mihi, to or for me</i>	<i>nōbis, to or for us</i>	
Ac.	<i>mē, me</i>	<i>nōs, us</i>	
Ab.	<i>mē,¹ with me</i>	<i>nōbis,¹ with us</i>	

		SECOND PERSON	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL
N.	<i>tū, you</i>	<i>vōs, you</i>	
G.	<i>tui, of you</i>	<i>vestrum, vestri, of you</i>	
D.	<i>tibi, to or for you</i>	<i>vōbis, to or for you</i>	
Ac.	<i>tē, you</i>	<i>vōs, you</i>	
Ab.	<i>tē,¹ with you</i>	<i>vōbis,¹ with you</i>	

321. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

SINGULAR AND PLURAL, THIRD PERSON ONLY

- G. *sui, of himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
- D. *sibi, to or for himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
- Ac. *se or sese, himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
- Ab. *se or sese,¹ with himself, itself, herself, themselves.*

¹ The ablative may also be translated *from, by, by means of, out of, etc.*

a. The personal pronouns are often used in a reflexive sense:—

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. ego mē culpō , <i>I blame myself</i>	nōs nōs culpāmus , <i>we blame ourselves</i>
2. tū tē culpās , <i>you blame yourself</i>	vōs vōs culpātis , <i>you blame yourselves</i>
3. (is) sē culpāt , <i>he blames himself</i>	(ii) sē culpant , <i>they blame themselves</i>

b. Learn and remember the following points:—

1. The nominative of the personal pronoun is not expressed except for emphasis: **ego sum miser**, *I am wretched*, **tū es fēlix**, *you are happy*.



SACRIFICE HELPERS.

2. When reference is made in the oblique cases in the third person to the subject of the sentence, the reflexive **sui**, etc., is used: **miles sē occidit**, *the soldier killed himself*; but **miles eum occidit**, *the soldier killed him*.

3. When the preposition **cum** is used with the personal and reflexive pronouns, it is always an enclitic.

With the relative and interrogative pronouns it may or may not be an enclitic: **mēcum**, *with me*; **nōbiscum**, *with us*; but **quibuscum** or **cum quibus**.

4. **Sē** is used in indirect discourse to refer to the

subject of the verb which introduces it: **Caesar dicit sē vicisse**, *Caesar says that he (Caesar) conquered.*

322.

VOCABULARY

aciēs , -ēi f., <i>line of battle,</i> <i>battle line</i>	triplex , gen. -icis, <i>triple</i>
culpa , -ae, f., <i>fault, blame</i>	redūcō , -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, <i>lead back</i>
iūdex , -icis, m., <i>judge</i>	relinquō , -ere, -liquī, -lictus, <i>leave, leave behind</i>
tempus , -oris, n., <i>time</i>	reprehendō , -ere, -dī, -hēnsus, <i>blame</i>
amplus , -a, -um, <i>large, spa-</i> <i>cious</i>	circiter , adv., <i>about</i>

323.

SPECIAL EXERCISES ON THE PRONOUNS

I. 1. Ego sum nauta, tū es agricola.

2. Tēcum

numquam miser erō.

3. Vir sē lau-

dat, mē nōn laudat; vir sē laudat, ego autem eum nōn laudō.

4. Nōs omnēs

in silvā erāmus, tū autem in urbe erās.

5. Puer cum amicō in castris erat, eius patrem nōn vidit, suum autem saepe vidēbat.

6. Mihi gladium dedit, tibi pilum, ei autem multa et pulchra signa.

II. 1. With them, with us, with him, with himself, with her, with herself.

2. The soldier was with you, with them, with us, with me.

3. The girl will never praise him, her, herself.

4. The man has always praised himself and his own friends, the man has always praised his brother and his (his brother's) friends.

5. You will come with us to help¹ our friends.



ROMAN PRIEST.

¹ Why not the infinitive ?

324.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Acie instructa, agmine reducto, locis relictis, iudiciis convocatis. 2. Imperator cum exercitu in Galliam contendit ut ibi duas legiones conscriberet. 3. Legiones quas in Galliam conscripserat castris praesidio erant. 4. Circiter quinque milia passuum ab urbe ad montem altum processit ut ibi nostrum adventum expectaret. 5. Propter meam culpam magnam amici non iuti sunt. 6. Eodem tempore exercitus instructus est et acie triplici in hostis impetum fecit. 7. Nullo ordine¹ per amplios agrorum milites ad flumen properaverunt ut pontem interscinderent.

II. 1. Caesar and Ariovistus were hastening by forced marches to a large town of the Sequani. 2. Four districts of the Helvetians had come out of their territory to see² the fertile fields of their neighbors. 3. We do not blame them because they have left their baggage behind, but will help them with³ our home supplies. 4. Drawing up a triple line of battle, he made an attack upon the forces of the Gauls. 5. The whole army was led back at that time in order to defend our cities. 6. Men were sent by forced marches to meet the enemy on the march.

¹ In no order.

² Why not the infinitive?

³ What idea does *with* express?



ANTIQUE VASES.

328. ag-ō, <i>lead</i>	ag-men, <i>line of march</i>
flu-ō, <i>flow</i>	flū-men, <i>river</i>
move-ō, <i>move</i>	mō-men-tum, <i>movement</i>
monē-ō, <i>remind</i>	monu-men-tum, <i>reminder</i>

1. The endings *-men, -mentum*, denote acts or the means or results of acts.

329. arm-ō, <i>arm</i>	armā-tūra, <i>armor, armed troops</i>
scrib-ō, <i>write</i>	scrip-tūra, <i>a writing</i>
ar-ō, <i>plow</i>	arā-trum, <i>that which plows, a plow</i>
voc-ō, <i>call</i>	vocā-bulum, <i>that by which one is called, a name</i>
gubern-ō, <i>guide</i>	gubernā-culum, <i>that which guides, a helm</i>

1. The endings *-tūra, -trum, -bulum, -culum* denote the means or instrument of an action.

From the meaning of the endings *-tor, -tiō* in 327, 1, tell the meaning of the following words:—

arā-tor, arā-tiō; gubernā-tor, gubernā-tiō; vocā-tor, vocā-tiō.

330. lae-tus, <i>glad</i>	lae-ti-tia, <i>gladness</i>
levis, <i>light</i>	levi-tās, <i>lightness, fickleness</i>
magnus, <i>great</i>	magni-tūdō, <i>greatness, size</i>
servus, <i>slave</i>	servi-tūs, <i>slavery</i>

1. The endings *-tia, -tās, -tūdō, -tūs* are added to noun and adjective stems to form abstracts. Note change in stem vowel.

2. The following words will give corresponding forms:—

iūstus , <i>just</i>	—? <i>justice</i>
vērus , <i>true</i>	—? <i>truth</i>
lātus , <i>broad</i>	—? <i>breadth</i>
vir , <i>man</i>	—? <i>manhood, courage</i>

331. filius , <i>son</i>	fili-olus , <i>little son</i>
ager , <i>field</i>	agel-lus , <i>little field</i>
homō , <i>man</i>	homun-culus , <i>manikin</i>

1. The nominative endings **-ulus** (after a vowel **-olus**), **-lus**, **-culus** are added to noun stems to form diminutives.

Compare with these the English words *brooklet*, *rivulet*, *bracelet*, *versicle*, *reticule*.

332. homō , <i>man</i>	hum-ānus , <i>belonging to man, human</i>
lāc , <i>milk</i>	lact-eus , <i>belonging to milk, lacteal</i>
alius , <i>another</i>	ali-ēnus , <i>belonging to another, alien</i>
civis , <i>citizen</i>	civ-icus , <i>belonging to a citizen, civic</i>
Rōma , <i>Rome</i>	Rōm-ānus , <i>belonging to Rome, Roman</i>

Observe the formation of the preceding adjectives, and of the corresponding English words.

LESSON 46

WORD FORMATION (*Continued*)

333. nāvis , <i>ship</i>	nāv-ālis , <i>pertaining to a ship, naval</i>
servus , <i>slave</i>	serv-ilis , <i>pertaining to a slave, servile</i>
cōnsul , <i>consul</i>	cōnsul-āris , <i>pertaining to a consul, consular</i>



A VIEW OF POMPEII AS IT IS TO-DAY.
(The Theater Section as seen from an Aéroplane.)

1. The endings *-ālis*, *-ilis*, *-āris* denote belonging or pertaining to. The very common English endings *-al*, *-ar*, *-il*, *-ile* are derived from these.

334. *eques, horseman* *eques-ter, belonging to a horseman, equestrian*
silva, wood *silves-ter, belonging to a forest, wooded*
nōs, we, us *nos-ter, belonging to us, our*

What is the adjective corresponding to *pedēs, foot soldier?* to *terra, land?*

335. *capi-ō, take* *capt-ivus, captive*
cupi-ō, desire *cup-idus, desirous, eager*
tene-ō, hold *ten-āx, prone to hold, tenacious*
aude-ō, dare *aud-āx, —?*
pugn-ō, fight *pugn-āx, —?*

1. The endings *-ivus*, *-idus* are added to verb stems to express state, and the ending *-āx* to express tendency.

336. *ag-ō, drive* *ag-ilis, active, agile*
faci-ō, make, do *fac-ilis, easy (that which can be done)*
nōsc-ō, know *nō-bilis, known, noble*
exim-ō, select *exim-ius, selected, remarkable*

1. The endings *-ilis*, *-bilis*, *-ius* are added to verb stems to express passive qualities.

337. *arma, arms* *arm-ō, -āre, arm*
hiems, winter *hiem-ō, -āre, pass the winter*
albus, white *albe-ō, -ēre, be white*
metus, fear *metu-ō, -ere, fear*
finis, end *fini-ō, -ire, end*

I. Verbs of the four conjugations are derived from noun stems. This is true of most of the three hundred and sixty verbs of the first conjugation, some of the second and third, and many of the fourth.

338. Compounds. — A simple word is one containing a single stem: **dux, duc-**. A compound word is one containing two or more stems: **agricola** = **agri** + **cola** (**agro-** + **cole-**); **ager, field**; **colō, cultivate**; **agricola, one who cultivates a field, a farmer**.

The following are also examples of compounds. **Pro-avus, great-grandfather, prō** + **avus**, preposition + noun. **Arti-fex, artisan, arti-** (stem of **ars**) + **fex** (**faciō**), noun stem + verb stem. **Per-gravis, very heavy, per** + **gravis**, preposition + adjective. **Īn-fidus, not to be trusted, in** + **fidus**, negative particle + adjective. **Magn-animus, great-hearted, magno** + **animus**, adjective stem + noun. **Ex-eō, go out, ex** + **eō**, preposition + verb.

339. In 326–337 you have seen how words are formed by the addition of prefixes and suffixes. A great many words in Latin group themselves about a single root. In learning a Latin vocabulary bear this in mind, and associate words which have a common root. Many words are of doubtful origin, but in the following exercises only those whose origin is practically certain, and which are in frequent use, will be given.

340. Study carefully the words in the group in this and succeeding lessons, and endeavor to explain the formation of each word, referring to 327–338.

I. At the end of each group a list of English derivatives has been given which should be carefully studied for the

purpose of enlarging your English vocabulary, and emphasizing the relation between your own language and the Latin.

341. Root **duc**, *lead*.

dūc-ō, *lead* **duc-tor**, — ? **intrō-dūcō**, *lead into*
dux, *leader* **in-duc-tiō**, — ? **intrō-duc-tiō**, — ?

Form compounds with **ad**, **con**, **dē**, **in**, **re**, and give meanings.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES. — Duke, ductile, conductor, induce, ducat, reduction, viaduct, aqueduct, subdue, educate, duchy.

LESSON 47

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES, REGULAR — CONSTRUCTIONS WITH COMPARATIVES — READING LESSON

342. Comparison is a change in the form of an adjective to show the degree in which its quality is expressed. Adjectives have three degrees of comparison:—

1. The positive, which expresses the simple existence of the quality.
2. The comparative, which expresses the existence of the quality in a higher degree.
3. The superlative, which expresses the existence of the quality in the highest degree.

343. In English the comparative and superlative are regularly formed by adding *-er* and *-est* to the positive: *small*, *smaller*, *smallest*. In Latin, in like manner, adjectives are compared by the use of certain terminations. These are added to the base of the positive to form the comparative and superlative, and are:—

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Comp.	-ior	-ior	-ius
Superl.	-issimus	-issima	-issimum
	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
dēnsus, -a, -um, <i>dense</i> (Base dēns-)	dēnsior, -ior, -ius	dēnsissimus, -a, -um	
fortis, -is, -e, <i>brave</i> (Base fort-)	fortior, -ior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um	
audāx, —, —, <i>bold</i> (Base audāc-)	audācior, -ior, -ius	audācissimus, -a, -um	

a. Adjectives in -er form the superlative by adding -rimus to the nominative masculine: ācer, ācris, ācre; comparative, ācrior, -ior, -ius; superlative, ācerrimus, -a, -um.

b. Six adjectives in -lis (*facilis, easy; difficilis, difficult; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; gracilis, graceful; and humilis, humble*) form their superlative by adding -limus to the base: —

Positive	Base	Comparative	Superlative
similis, -e	simil-	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um

Learn the above words.

344. Declension of Comparatives:—

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
G.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
D.	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Ac.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Ab.	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

a. All superlatives are declined like *fidus, -a, -um* (113).

345. Study the following : —

1. *Honor mihi cārior est quam vitā, honor is dearer to me than life.*

2. *Dicit honōrem sibi cārīorem esse quam vitam, he says that honor is dearer to him than life.*

3. *Honor mihi cārior est vitā, honor is dearer to me than life.*

4. *Dicit honōrem sibi cārīorem vitā esse, he says that honor is dearer to him than life.*

a. In 1 and 2 *quam*, *than*, is expressed after the comparative and is followed by the same case, nominative in 1 and accusative in 2, as precedes it. In 3 and 4 *quam* is omitted and the ablative case follows the word of comparison.

346.

RULE

Cases used with Comparatives. — *When quam is expressed in a comparison, the same case follows as precedes ; but when quam is omitted, the ablative case follows the word of comparison.*

347. The following sentences show peculiar meanings of the comparative and superlative : —

1. *Puer erat audācior, the boy was rather bold or too bold.*
2. *Vir fortissimus erat, the man was very brave.*

348.

RULES

Special Uses of Comparatives and Superlatives. —

1. *The comparative is sometimes used to express a rather high or too high degree of the quality.*
2. *The superlative is often used to express a very high degree of the quality.*

Compare in all genders: **altus, brevis, difficilis, liber, potēns, pulcher.**

How do you find the base of a noun or an adjective?

349.

VOCABULARY

honor, -ōris, m., <i>honor</i>	potēns, gen. potentis , <i>powerful</i>
mora, -ae, f., <i>delay</i>	vāstus, -a, -um, <i>vast</i>
cārus, -a, -um, <i>dear, precious</i>	dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, <i>lead down</i>
celer, -eris, -ere, <i>swift</i>	itaque, conj., <i>and so, therefore</i>
ingēns, gen. ingentis , <i>huge, large</i>	quam, conj., <i>than</i>
laetus, -a, -um, <i>glad, joyful</i>	
parātus, -a, -um, <i>prepared, ready</i>	

350.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Germānī potentiōrēs quam finitimī erant. 2. Galli potentiōrēs Rōmānis nōn erant. 3. Puer audācior est quam vir, vir nōn est audācior puerō. 4. Vāstissimam et clārissimam terram incolēbant Germānī. 5. Laetissimi erant milītēs quod imperātor eōs sine morā contrā hostis dēdūxerat. 6. Silvae ingentissimā magnitūdine finis duōrum rēgum potentissimōrum dividunt. 7. Multi equi celerrimī et pulcherrimī imperātōri erant. 8. Vita cāra est, honor autem cārior.

II. 1. Very beautiful horses, a more powerful leader, a rather bold boy, in a very vast land. 2. The Aeduans were more powerful than their neighbors. 3. We know that life is very precious to all men. 4. The swiftest legions were sent to capture the redoubts. 5. The commander ordered his forces to be led down to a very swift river. 6. There was a very short and easy road through

the country of our enemies. 7. He ordered the swiftest horsemen to come without delay into the city.

351.

READING LESSON

Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō, lēgātī Galliae, principēs civitātum ad Caesarem convēnērunt. Auxilium ab eō petiē-



STREET IN TIMGAD, ALGERIA.

runt quod Germānōs timēbant. Prō his Diviciācus locūtus est,¹ “ Multi Germāni ingentissimā magnitudīne corporis in Galliā sunt, quibuscum saepe contendimus. Maximam² calamitātem accēpimus. Omnem senātum, omnemque equitātum āmisimus. Ariovistus eōrum rēx est, homō barbarissimus et irācundissimus. Eius imperia diūtius sustinēre nōn possumus.³ Ad tē vēnimus auxilium petitum.⁴”

¹ spoke.² a very great.³ we can.⁴ to ask; the form **petitum** will be explained later.

352. Study carefully the following word group. Determine the meaning of words marked — ?

Root *spec-*, see, *spy*.

spectō, *behold* *species*, *appearance* *speculātor*, *spy*
spectātor, — ? *spectāculum*, — ? *spectrum*, *image*.

ENG. DER. — *Species*, *specious*, *spectacle*, *spectrum*, *spectral*, *conspicuous*.

LESSON 48

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE—INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued)—*possum*—READING LESSON

353. **The Infinitive.**—The Latin infinitive is found in the present, future, and perfect tenses of both voices.

ACTIVE

Conj.	Present	Perfect	Future
I.	<i>vocāre</i> , <i>to call</i> ,	<i>vocāvisse</i> , <i>to have called</i> ,	<i>vocātūrus esse</i> , <i>to be about to call</i>
II.	<i>monēre</i> , <i>to advise</i> ,	<i>monuisse</i> , <i>to have advised</i> ,	<i>monitūrus esse</i> , <i>to be about to advise</i>
III.	<i>regere</i> , <i>to rule</i> ,	<i>rēxisse</i> , <i>to have ruled</i> ,	<i>rēctūrus esse</i> , <i>to be about to rule</i>
	<i>capere</i> , <i>to take</i> ,	<i>cēpisse</i> , <i>to have taken</i> ,	<i>captūrus esse</i> , <i>to be about to take</i>
IV.	<i>audire</i> , <i>to hear</i> ,	<i>audivisse</i> , <i>to have heard</i> ,	<i>auditūrus esse</i> , <i>to be about to hear</i>
	<i>esse</i> , <i>to be</i> ,	<i>fuisse</i> , <i>to have been</i> ,	<i>futūrus esse</i> , <i>to be about to be</i>

PASSIVE

- I. vocāri, to be vocātus esse, to have vocātum iri, to be called, been called, about to be called
 II. monēri, to be monitus esse, to have monitum iri, to be advised, been advised, about to be advised
 III. regī, to be rēctus esse, to have rēctum iri, to be about ruled, been ruled, to be ruled
 capi, to be captus esse, to have captum iri, to be taken, been taken, about to be taken
 IV. audiri, to be auditus esse, to have auditum iri, to be heard, been heard, about to be heard

a. Write table of infinitives, active and passive, of : dūcō, mūnīō, iubeō, dicō, iaciō.

354. Study the following : —

- | | | | | |
|---------|---------------|---|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. Dicō | } eum regere, | { | I say that he rules or is ruling. | |
| Dixi | | | | I said that he ruled or was ruling. |
| Dicam | | | | I shall say that he rules or is ruling. |

Here the act of ruling is represented as going on at the time of the principal verb.

- | | | | | |
|---------|----------------|---|------------------------------------|--|
| 2. Dicō | } eum rēxisse, | { | I say that he ruled or was ruling. | |
| Dixi | | | | I said that he had ruled or had been ruling. |
| Dicam | | | | I shall say that he ruled or was ruling. |

Here the act of ruling is represented as completed before the time of the principal verb.

- | | | | | |
|---------|----------------------|---|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 3. Dicō | } eum rēctūrum esse, | { | I say that he will rule. | |
| Dixi | | | | I said that he would rule. |
| Dicam | | | | I shall say that he will rule. |

Here the act of ruling is represented as about to occur after the time of the principal verb. In 1 *regere* stands for *regit* of the direct; in 2 *rēxisse* stands for *rēxit*, *regēbat*, or *rēxerat*; in 3 *rēctūrum esse* stands for *reget*.

a. In the indirect statements in the above sentences the infinitives are used as follows:—



ROMAN COIN OF THE EMPEROR DOMITIAN
SHOWING GERMAN CAPTIVES AND TROPHY.

(1.) The present infinitive of the indirect statement represents a present indicative of the direct.

(2.) The perfect infinitive represents a perfect, imperfect, or pluperfect indicative of the direct.

(3.) The future infinitive represents a future indicative of the direct.

In translating indirect statements into Latin, determine what would probably have been the tense of the indicative used in the direct, and apply the above principles in choosing the tenses of the infinitive. Sometimes it is necessary to change the pronoun subject of the infinitive:—

1. Direct.—*He says, "I am ruling," dicit, "regō"*; subject (*ego*), 1st Person.

2. Indirect.—*He says that he is ruling, dicit sē regere*; subject *sē*, 3d Person.

355. *Possum, I am able, I can*, is compounded of *pot-* (*potis* or *pote*) and *sum*. Principal Parts: *possum, posse, potui*; perfect infinitive, *potuisse*.

INDICATIVE

	SINGULAR	
Pres., <i>I can</i> , or <i>I am able</i>	Imperf., <i>I could</i> , or <i>I was able</i>	Fut., <i>I shall be</i> <i>able</i>
1. possum	poteram	poterō
2. potes	poterās	poteris
3. potest	poterat	poterit

PLURAL

1. possumus	poterāmus	poterimus
2. potestis	poterātis	poteritis
3. possunt	poterant	poterunt

SINGULAR

	PLUPERF., <i>I had</i> <i>been able</i>	
Perf., <i>I could</i> , or <i>I was able</i>	Pluperf., <i>I had</i> <i>been able</i>	Fut. Perf., <i>I shall</i> <i>have been able</i>
1. potui	potueram	potuerō
2. potuisti	potuerās	potueris
3. potuit	potuerat	potuerit

PLURAL

1. potuimus	potuerāmus	potuerimus
2. potuistis	potuerātis	potueritis
3. potuērunt (-ēre)	potuerant	potuerint

a. The perfect **potui** is for **pot-fui**. Compare this paradigm with that of **sum** (see 208). Note the change of -t to -s before -s, and the dropping of -f after -t.

b. **Possum** is used with the complementary infinitive (126).

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

	SINGULAR		
Pres.	Imperf.	Perf.	Pluperf.
1. possim	possem	potuerim	potuissem
2. possis	possēs	potueris	potuissēs
3. possit	posset	potuerit	potuisset

PLURAL

1. possimus	possēmus	potuerimus	potuissēmus
2. possitis	possētis	potueritis	potuissētis
3. possint	possent	potuerint	potuissent

Write the original form of all indirect statements in Ex. 357.

356.

VOCABULARY

adrogantia , -ae, f., <i>arrogance, pride</i>	gravis , -e, <i>grave, serious, severe</i>
Ariovistus , -i, m., <i>Ariovistus, a German chief</i>	tristis , -e, <i>sad</i>
conloquium , conloqui , n., <i>conference</i>	cōgnōscō , -ere, -nōvi, -nitus, <i>learn, find out; perf., know</i>
fortūna , -ae, f., <i>fortune, fate</i>	iūdicō , -āre, -avi, -ātus, <i>judge, decide</i>
nihil , indecl., n., <i>nothing</i>	hīc , adv., <i>here, in this place</i>
spiritus , -ūs, <i>spirit, pride, insolence</i>	nam , conj., <i>for</i>

357.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Cōgnōscere, iūdicāvisse, cōgnitūrus esse, respondi (*two ways*), respondisse, respōnsūrus esse. 2. Poterō, potuerint, potuisse, posse, potuimus, poterāmus, poterunt, potuērunt. 3. Dicit sē respondisse, respondēre, respōnsūrum esse. 4. Dixit sē cōgnōscere, cōgnitūrum esse, cōgnōvisse. 5. Sēquanī nihil in conloquiō respondērunt sed tristēs manēbant. 6. Dixit fortūnam Sēquanōrum gravem fuisse. 7. Dicit Ariovistum virum magnā adrogantiā spiritūque esse. 8. Dixit Ariovistum virum magnā adrogantiā spiritūque fuisse. 9. Sēquanī nihil respondēre potuērunt.

II. 1. To judge, to be about to judge, to have found out, to have led, to be about to hear, to have seen. 2. To be, to have been, to be about to be, to be able, to be about to learn, to have been able. 3. I shall not be able to see the battle, they are not able to come. 4. The lieutenant says that he had found out nothing concerning the conference. 5. The mountains are higher than the hills, he said that the mountains were higher than the hills. 6. Ariovistus was a man of great arrogance and pride, for he said that Gaul was his province. 7. I know that the fortunes of the Sequanians are very serious.



COINS OF DUMNORIX AND VERCINGETORIX.

358.

READING LESSON

Sēquanī in conloquiō nihil respondērunt sed tristēs manēbant. Diviciācus autem prō iīs respondit, “Fortūna Sēquanōrum gravior est quam reliquōrum, quod Ariovistus in eōrum finis suās cōpiās introdūxit et omnia eōrum oppida occupāvit. Quā dē causā eius adrogantia spīritusque magnus¹ erat.” Multis dē causīs Caesar lēgātōs ad eum dē conloquiō mittere cōstituit, quibus lēgātīs Ariovistus respondit, “Ad Caesarem nōn veniam, nam neque sine magnō exercitū in eās partis Galliae, quās

¹ magnus and erat agree with spīritus, the nearest subject.

Caesar occupāvit, venire audeō,¹ neque exercitum sine magnō negōtiō in ūnum locum condūcere possum."

359. Root *mit-*, *send*.

mittō, *I send* *missile*, *a javelin* *omittō*, *I neglect*
missiō, *a sending* *amittō*, ——— ? *commissūra*, *a joining*
together

Form compound words with *com*, *inter*, *per*, *prae*, *sub*, and give meaning.

ENG. DER. — Admit, omit, mission, promise, remit, remission, missionary.

LESSON 49

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES, IRREGULAR — THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES — READING LESSON

360. Some adjectives are irregularly compared. The following is a list of the most important: —

a. POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>bonus</i> , -a, -um, <i>good</i>	<i>melior</i> , -ius	<i>optimus</i> , ² -a, -um
<i>magnus</i> , -a, -um, <i>large</i>	<i>maior</i> , -ius	<i>maximus</i> , -a, -um
<i>malus</i> , -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	<i>peior</i> , -ius	<i>pessimus</i> , ³ -a, -um
<i>multus</i> , -a, -um, <i>much</i>	<i>plūs</i> (in sing., neut. only)	<i>plūrimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>parvus</i> , -a, -um, <i>small</i>	<i>minor</i> , -us	<i>minimus</i> , -a, -um

Plūs is thus declined: —

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. V.	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
G.	<i>plūris</i>	<i>plūrium</i>	<i>plūrium</i>

¹ *I dare*.

² Associate with *optimist*.

³ Associate with *pessimist*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
D.	—	plūribus	plūribus	
Ac.	plūs	plūris, -ēs	plūra	
Ab.	plūre	plūribus	plūribus	

b.¹ Some comparatives and superlatives are formed from prepositions and adverbs and have no real positive : —

cis, citrā, prep., <i>on this side of</i>	citerior, -ius, <i>hither</i>	cītimus, -a, -um, <i>hithermost</i>
in, intrā, prep., <i>within</i>	interior, -ius, <i>inner</i>	intimus, -a, -um, <i>inmost</i>
prae, prō, prep., <i>before</i>	prior, prius, <i>former</i>	primus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>
prope, adv., <i>near</i>	propior, -ius, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, -a, -um, <i>nearest, next</i>
ultrā, adv., <i>beyond</i>	ulterior, -ius, <i>farther</i>	ultimus, -a, -um, <i>farthest</i>

c.¹ The positive forms of the following seldom occur : —

(exterus, -a, -um)	exterior, -ius, <i>outer</i>	extrēmus, -a, -um, <i>outermost</i>
(inferus, -a, -um)	inferior, -ius, <i>lower</i>	infimus or imus, -a, -um, <i>lowest</i>
(posterus, -a, -um)	posterior, -ius, <i>latter</i>	postrēmus, -a, -um, <i>last</i>
(superus, -a, -um)	superior, -ius, <i>higher</i>	suprēmus or summus, -a, -um, <i>highest</i>

361. Examine the following : —

1. interior Gallia, *the interior of Gaul*
2. summus mōns, *the top of the mountain*

¹ The teacher should use his judgment as to how many of these should be required.

a. In the preceding English expressions *interior* and *top* are nouns modified by the prepositional phrases *of Gaul, of the mountain*. In the Latin, *interior* and *summus* are adjectives used in agreement with *Gallia* and *mōns*, respectively. Learn carefully this difference in idiom.

362.

RULE

Adjectives of Order and Succession. — *Superlatives (sometimes also comparatives) are used in agreement with nouns to show what part of an object is designated.*

a. So also *cēterus, -a, -um, the rest of; medius, -a, -um, the middle of; reliquus, -a, -um, the rest of.*

Translate: *the middle of the hill, the rest of the soldiers.*

b. From *senex, old man, and iuvenis, young man*, come the comparatives *senior* and *iūnior*.

363. Examine the following: —

1. *Locus castris idōneus est, the place is suitable for a camp.*

2. *Puer frātri similis est, the boy is like his brother.*

3. *Nihil Caesari difficile erat, nothing was difficult for Caesar.*

4. *Germānis proximi sunt, they are nearest to the Germans.*

a. In each sentence above the noun in the dative case depends upon an adjective. Notice the meanings of these adjectives.

364.

RULE

The Dative with Adjectives. — *The dative is used with adjectives denoting resemblance, fitness, nearness, and the like; also with their opposites.*

NOTE. — Adjectives of fitness may be used with *ad* and the accusative.



RUINS OF ROMAN THEATER.

(Timgad, Algeria.)

365.

VOCABULARY

mandātum, -i, n., *order*

modus, -i, m., *manner*

dēterior, -ius, comp. adj.,
worse, of less value

grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing,*
agreeable

idōneus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable*

mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful,*
strange

molestus, -a, -um, *annoying,*
troublesome

proximus, -a, -um, *nearest,*
next

stipendiārius, -a, -um, *tribu-*
tary; m. pl. as noun,
tributaries

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *give*
into the hands of, order,
intrust

iterum, adv., *a second time*

366.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Mihi est amīcus, tibi inimīcus, iniūria nōbis mo-
lesta erat. 2. Caesar Ariovistō vectigālia dēteriōra faciet.

3. Liberālitās amicōrum mihi grāta est, iniūriae autem inimicōrum molestae. 4. Aeduī bellō superāti Ariovistō stipendiārii erunt. 5. His respōnsis datis in interiōrem Galliam properāvit. 6. Calāmitāte in mediō colle acceptā omnem exercitum iterum in castra dūxit. 7. Summus mōns ā cōpiis pedestribus occupātus est. 8. In citeriōrem Galliam maximā cum celeritāte contendit. 9. Ad flūmen properāvit ut locum castris idōneum dēligeret.

II. 1. To the nearest hill (*motion*), with a very small army, of very good plans, of a very bad man. 2. Of better disposition, in a larger place, at a better time, for smaller fields. 3. The sight of Caesar's army was more pleasing to the Aeduans than ¹ to the Germans. 4. They say that this place is not suitable for a trench. 5. They announced a second time that the Germans were unfriendly to Caesar. 6. They said that the sight of the army was annoying to the enemy. 7. The infantry forces were drawn up on the middle of the hill. 8. They were frightened in a strange manner because the hostile army was drawn up on the nearest hill.

367.

READING LESSON

His respōnsis ad Caesarem relātis,² iterum ad Ariovistum lēgātōs cum iis mandātis misit: "Necesse est tibi obsidēs quōs ab Aeduīs habēs, reddere, neque Aeduōs neque eōrum sociōs iniūriā³ lacessere." Ad haec⁴ Ariovistus respondit, Aeduōs, bellō superātōs, sibi stipendiāriōs esse. Caesarem magnam iniūriam facere, qui adventū suō vectigālia sibi dēteriōra faceret.⁵ Sē obsidēs Aeduīs reddi-

¹ Use *quam*.² relātis, perf. pass. part., *brought back*.⁵ *was making*.³ *unjustly (with injustice)*.⁴ *these things, this*.

tūrum nōn esse, sed cum Germānis bellum fortiter gestūrum (esse).

368. Root *fac-*, *make, do*.

faciō , <i>I make, do</i>	factum , <i>deed</i>	facilis , <i>easy</i>
faciēs , <i>appearance</i>	facultās , <i>ability</i>	difficilis , <i>hard</i>

Observe change in the root in composition. Form compound verbs with **con**, **dē**, **per**, **prae**, making the same change in the root as in **difficilis**.

ENG. DER. — Fact, factor, factory, faction, facility, defect.

LESSON 50

ADVERBIAL AND SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT
— REVIEW OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — READING
LESSON — WORD LIST VII

369. Study the following:—

1. **Militēs tam ācritēr pugnāvērunt ut oppidum caperent**, *the soldiers fought so bravely that they took the town.*

2. **Militēs tam paucī sunt ut oppidum nōn facile capere possint**, *the soldiers are so few that they cannot easily take the town.*

3. **Efficiam ut intellegātis**, *I will make you know (make that you know).*

4. **Eum continēre nōn possum quīn castra mūniat**, *I cannot restrain him from fortifying the camp.*

a. The dependent verbs in the sentences above show the consequence or result of the acts denoted by the principal verbs. The clauses are called Clauses of Result, are introduced by **ut** when affirmative and by **ut nōn** when negative, and have their verbs in the subjunctive. In 1



A STREET SCENE IN POMPEII SHOWING A MERCHANT'S SHOP.

and 2 these clauses modify the main verbs like adverbs, in 3 the clause *ut intellegātis* is the object of *efficiam*, and in 4 the clause *quīn . . . mūniat* is the object of *continēre*. Notice that the law of sequence of tenses is observed.

370.

RULES

Adverbial Clauses of Result. — *Adverbial clauses of result are introduced by ut when affirmative and by ut nōn when negative. They have their verbs in the subjunctive.*

Substantive Clauses of Result. — *Substantive clauses of result may be used with ut and ut nōn as the objects of verbs of effecting, accomplishing, and the like, and with quīn¹ as the objects² of verbs of hindering, refusing, and preventing, when these are negatived.*

NOTE. — Clauses of result are very often introduced by *ita*,³ *thus, so*; *tālis*, *-e, such*; *tantus*, *-a, -um, so great*; *tam*,⁴ *as*. Learn these words.

Make a review of the subjunctive mood (269 et seq.).

371.

VOCABULARY

<i>exercitātiō, -ōnis, f., practice, skill</i>	<i>perterreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, terrify greatly</i>
<i>mercātor, -ōris, m., trader, merchant</i>	<i>perturbō, -āre, -avi, -ātus, disturb greatly</i>
<i>vōx, vōcis, f., voice, word</i>	<i>incrēdibilis, -e, incredible</i>
<i>contineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentus, restrain, keep back</i>	<i>tantus, -a, -um, so great</i>
<i>efficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus, effect, bring about, make</i>	<i>facile, adv., easily</i>
	<i>prō, prep. w. abl., in front of, before, in behalf of, instead of</i>

¹ Other particles used with the same meaning in this construction are *nē* and *quōminus*.

² They may be used also as the subjects of impersonal verbs.

³ Use with verbs.

⁴ Use with adjectives and adverbs.

372.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Ita perterriti sunt ut fugerent, ita perturbati sunt ut in eō locō manēre nōn possent. 2. Hostēs ita vōcibus Gallōrum perturbati sunt ut statim arma trāderent. 3. Germāni tam ingenti magnitūdine corporum erant ut nostrī eōrum cōnspectum sustinēre nōn possent. 4. Captivī ita fallēbantur ut castra hostium dēmōnstrārent. 5. Terror Gallōrum et mercātōrum tantus erat ut incrēdibili celeritāte dē colle altō dēcurrent. 6. Militēs tam incrēdibili exercitātiōne in armis erant ut omnis hostis facile superārent. 7. Mercātōrēs continēre nōn possunt quin in finis Germānōrum veniant. 8. Prō castris sex hōrās manēbant, neque retinēri potuerunt quin pila et hastās in nostrōs iacerent.

II. 1. The soldiers fought so fiercely that they took the town within three hours. 2. The Germans were of so great skill in arms that they easily conquered their enemies. 3. We could not keep our men back from making an attack on the Gauls. 4. They made¹ the centurions flee with incredible speed. 5. The townsmen and merchants were so greatly terrified that they fled to the mountains.

373.

READING LESSON

Aedui ad Caesarem veniēbant quod Harūdēs eōrum finis vāstābant. Lēgāti eōrum dixērunt, "Obsidibus datis pācem Ariovisti redimere nōn possumus."² Trēveri quoque veniēbant quod Germānōrum centum pāgī ad ripās Rhēni erant. Quā dē causā Caesar ad Ariovistum magnis itineribus contendere cōstituit. Ariovistus autem Vesontionem quod³

¹ Use proper form of *efficiō* with an *ut* clause.

² *we can*.

³ The relative usually agrees in gender with its predicate noun, when it has one, rather than with its antecedent.

est maximum oppidum Sēquanōrum, occupāre mātūrābat. Itaque Caesar iter āvertit ad id oppidum, nam ibi omnium rērum quae ūsui ad bellum erant magna facultās erat. Caesar id oppidum occupāvit et ibi praesidium disposuit.

374. Root *leg-*, *gather*.

<i>legō, I gather</i>	<i>dēligō, I choose</i>	<i>dīlīgenter, —?</i>
<i>legiō, —?</i>	<i>dīlīgentia, diligence</i>	<i>intellegō, I know</i>

ENG. DER. — Coil, cull, collection, legion, legend, intellect, neglect.

Form others; the English dictionary will help you in this and open a very interesting field of work.

375.

WORD LIST VII

<i>aciēs</i>	<i>fortūna</i>	<i>mercātor</i>	<i>relinquō</i>
<i>amplus</i>	<i>gracilis</i>	<i>mīrus</i>	<i>reprehendō</i>
<i>Ariovistus</i>	<i>grātus</i>	<i>modus</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>cārus</i>	<i>gravis</i>	<i>molestus</i>	<i>similis</i>
<i>celer</i>	<i>hīc</i>	<i>mora</i>	<i>spīritus</i>
<i>circiter</i>	<i>honor</i>	<i>nam</i>	<i>stipendiārius</i>
<i>cōgnōscō</i>	<i>humilis</i>	<i>nihil</i>	<i>sui</i>
<i>conloquium</i>	<i>idōneus</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tantus</i>
<i>contineō</i>	<i>incrēdibilis</i>	<i>parātus</i>	<i>tempus</i>
<i>culpa</i>	<i>ingēns</i>	<i>perterreō</i>	<i>triplex</i>
<i>dēdūcō</i>	<i>itaque</i>	<i>perturbō</i>	<i>tristis</i>
<i>dēterior</i>	<i>īterum</i>	<i>possum</i>	<i>tū</i>
<i>dissimilis</i>	<i>iūdex</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>vāstus</i>
<i>efficiō</i>	<i>iūdicō</i>	<i>prō</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>ego</i>	<i>laetus</i>	<i>proximus</i>	<i>vōx</i>
<i>exercitiō</i>	<i>mandātum</i>	<i>quam</i>	
<i>facile</i>	<i>mandō</i>	<i>redūcō</i>	

LESSON 51

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES—REVIEW OF COMPARISON—
SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC—READING LESSON

376. *ūllus, -a, -um, any* *uter, -tra, -trum, which (of two)*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	<i>ūllus</i>	<i>ūlla</i>	<i>ūllum</i>	<i>uter</i>	<i>utra</i>	<i>utrum</i>
G.	<i>ūllius</i>	<i>ūllius</i>	<i>ūllius</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>	<i>utrius</i>
D.	<i>ūlli</i>	<i>ūlli</i>	<i>ūlli</i>	<i>utri</i>	<i>utri</i>	<i>utri</i>
Ac.	<i>ūllum</i>	<i>ūllam</i>	<i>ūllum</i>	<i>utrum</i>	<i>utram</i>	<i>utrum</i>
Ab.	<i>ūllō</i>	<i>ūllā</i>	<i>ūllō</i>	<i>utrō</i>	<i>utrā</i>	<i>utrō</i>

a. Note the irregular forms in the genitive and dative singular in all genders and the exception to the general laws of quantity found in *-ius* of the genitive singular. The rest of the singular and the entire plural follow *fidus* and *pulcher*, respectively. Learn the following list of adjectives declined as above:—

<i>alius, -a, -ud, another</i>	<i>tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire</i>
<i>alter, -era, -erum, the other</i>	<i>ūllus, -a, -um, any</i>
<i>neuter, -tra, -trum, neither</i> (of two)	<i>nūllus, -a, -um, no, none</i>
<i>sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only</i>	<i>ūnus, -a, -um, one, alone</i>
	<i>uter, -tra, -trum, which (of two)</i>

b. Note the peculiar ending of *alius* in the neuter singular.

c. Make a careful review of comparison, 342, 343, a and b, 360, a-c.

377. Study the following sentences:—

1. *Erant qui venirent, there were some who came.*

2. **Nēmō** est qui hoc nōn intellegat, *there is no one who does not know this.*

3. **Quis** est qui hoc nōn intellegat? *Who is there that does not know this?*

4. **Neque** is erat qui fugeret, *he was not the man to flee (or such a man as to flee).*

a. In each of the above sentences a relative clause is used which describes the word which stands as the antecedent of the relative. Such clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive and are called Relative Clauses of Characteristic or Description. They follow the law of Sequence of Tenses (277, 278). They are regularly used after general expressions of existence (1) and non-existence (2), after questions implying a negative answer (3), and after certain demonstratives and adjectives, as: **is**, **tālis**, **ūnus**, **sōlus**, and others. In such sentences as 2 and 3 above **quīn** may stand for **quī nōn**.

b. Compare these two sentences:—

1. **Nōn** erat **is** qui fugeret, *he was not the man to flee.*

2. **Nōn** erat **is** qui fūgit, *he was not the man who fled.*

In 1 the clause **quī fugeret**, because its verb is in the subjunctive, describes the kind of man spoken of; in 2 **quī fūgit**, because its verb is in the indicative, states the fact that the man spoken of actually fled. Use this principle, where needed, in your exercises.

378.

RULE

The Subjunctive of Characteristic.— *The subjunctive is used, especially after expressions of existence and non-existence and questions implying a negative answer, to express a characteristic of the subject.*



THE ROMAN FORUM — LOOKING WEST.

379.

VOCABULARY

Arar, -aris (acc. -im, abl. -ī), m., <i>the Arar or Sabne</i> , a river in Gaul	quis, interrog. pron. (392), <i>who?</i> alius . . . alius, <i>one . . .</i> <i>another</i>
commeātus, -ūs, m., <i>sup-</i> <i>plies, provisions</i>	alter . . . alter, <i>the one . . .</i> <i>the other</i>
cōnsanguineus, -ī, m., <i>rela-</i> <i>tive, kinsman</i>	cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suē-
glōria, -ae, f., <i>glory</i>	tus, <i>become accustomed;</i>
negōtium, negōtī, n., <i>busi-</i> <i>ness, trouble</i>	perf., <i>be accustomed</i>
salūs, -ūtis, f., <i>safety</i>	omnīnō, adv., <i>at all, all to-</i> <i>gether</i>

Note the difference between *alius . . . alius* and *alter . . . alter*.

380. A peculiar use of *alius* and *alter* is shown in the following:—

Alius aliam in partem properāvit, one hastened in one direction, another in another.

381.

RULE

Alius and alter repeated in another case express briefly a double statement.

382.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Ūllius, neutrius, ūlli, neutri, alius, alius, aliis, ūni, sōlius, nūllius, alii. 2. Alii bellum ācritter gessērunt, alii salūtem fugā petiērunt. 3. Alteri gladium dedit, alteri scūtum. 4. Quis est quī nesciat, nēmō est qui nesciat, sunt quī nesciant. 5. Nēmō est quīn cōnsuēverit salūtem suam paene omnī modō petere. 6. Magnō commeātū magnōque negōtiō militēs ūnum in locum condūxit.

7. Nūllus est miles quī prō glōriā patriae suae nōn pugnet.
 8. Nōn erat tālis quī terrōre perturbāri posset. 9. Eis
 persuāsit ut ē finibus maximā celeritāte contenderent.
 10. Nēmō erat in Caesaris castris quin (qui nōn) prō glōriā
 imperātōris interficerētur.

II. 1. Who is there whom his friends do not praise?
 2. There is no one who is bringing together all the forces
 of the enemy. 3. One hastened to the hill, another ran
 down to the sea. 4. The one was accustomed to lead
 his army without provisions, the other with great trouble
 carried supplies on carts. 5. Who is there that will not
 drive out the enemies of the Roman people? 6. They
 came by night to the river Arar and led the soldiers across
 the bridge.

383.

READING LESSON

Intereā ex vōcibus Gallōrum et mercātōrum, quī praedi-
 cābant Germānōs ingenti magnitūdine corporum et incre-
 dibili virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armis esse, tantus
 timor subitō omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut omnium men-
 tis perturbāret. His rēbus cōgnitis, Caesar longā ōrātiōne
 centuriōnēs omnium ōrdinum vehementer incūsāvit. Dixit
 eōrum timōrem falsum esse, omnia enim sibi ¹ cūrae futūra
 esse. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mentēs omnium conversae sunt,
 summaque alacritās et cupiditās belli innāta est.²

384. Root *ac-*, *sharp*.

acer, *sharp* *acerbus*, *bitter, sour* *aciēs*, *edge, line of battle*
ācus, *needle* *ācritēr*, — ? *acerbitās*, *sharpness*

ENG. DER. — Edge, acrobat, acid, acrimonius.

¹ See 321, b, 4.

² *sprang up*.

LESSON 52

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS—REVIEW
OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES—READING LESSON

385. Adverbs are formed largely from adjectives :—

ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
1. <i>cārus</i> , base <i>cār-</i> , <i>dear</i> .	<i>cārē</i> , <i>dearly</i>
<i>pulcher</i> , base <i>pulchr-</i> ,	<i>pulchrē</i> , <i>beautifully</i>
<i>beautiful</i>	
<i>liber</i> , base <i>liber-</i> , <i>free</i>	<i>liberē</i> , <i>freely</i>

a. Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding *-ē* to the base of the positive.

2. <i>ācer</i> , base <i>ācr-</i> , <i>sharp</i>	<i>ācriter</i> , <i>sharply</i>
<i>lēnis</i> , base <i>lēn-</i> , <i>smooth</i>	<i>lēniter</i> , <i>smoothly</i>
<i>prūdēns</i> , base <i>prudēt-</i> ,	<i>prūdenter</i> , <i>prudently</i>
<i>prudent</i>	

a. Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension with two or three endings by adding *-iter* to the base of the positive, from adjectives of one ending by adding *-ter* to the base of the positive. When the base ends in *-t*, that letter is dropped before *-ter*.

3. <i>multus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> , <i>much</i>	<i>multum</i> , <i>much</i>
<i>subitus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> , <i>sudden</i>	<i>subitō</i> , <i>suddenly</i>
<i>facilis</i> , <i>-e</i> , <i>easy</i>	<i>facile</i> , <i>easily</i>

a. Sometimes the neuter accusative singular is used as an adverb, as *multum*, *facile*; sometimes the neuter ablative singular, e.g. *subitō*.

Review regular comparison of adjectives (342, 343, *a* and *b*).

386. The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular comparative of the adjective. The superlative of the adverb is formed by adding *-ē* to the base of the superlative of the adjective.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
cārē	cārius	cārissimē
facile	facilius	facillimē
pulchrē	pulchrius	pulcherrimē

387. Review irregular comparison of adjectives (360, *a-c*) and learn the following:—

bene, well	melius, better	optimē, best
male, ill	peius, worse	pessimē, worst
magnopere, greatly	magis, more	maximē, most, especially
multum, much	plūs, more	plūrimum, most
parum, not enough	minus, less	minimē, least

Note resemblances to adjectives compared in 360, *a*.

388.

VOCABULARY

postulātum, -i, n., demand	doleō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, suf-
sponte, abl., of one's own	fer, grieve, be grieved
accord	interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clū-
meā sponte, of my own ac-	cus, cut off, shut off
cord	breviter, adv., briefly
certus, -a, -um, certain, sure	graviter, adv., gravely, scri-
dēbeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, owe,	ously, severely
ought	vigilanter, adv., watchfully

389.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Ācerimē pugnātum est,¹ ācrius pugnātum erit, gravissimē dolēbat. 2. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris breviter respondit. 3. Ariovistus dixit sē nōn suā sponte in Galliam vēnisse. 4. Iūstius est in Galliā imperium Caesaris quam Ariovisti. 5. Dixit sē gravius quam amicum dolēre. 6. Certā dē causā nostrōs finis vigilantius dēfendere dēbēmus. 7. Proeliō dēstitērunt quod ā commēatū diūtius interclūsi erant.

II. 1. Most seriously, very watchfully, quite briefly, for certain reasons.

2. I did not come into Gaul of my own accord.

3. There were some who said that they did not come into Gaul of their own accord. 4. He will more easily make the revenues of Ariovistus of less value. 5. He is more prudent than his friend, therefore he replies briefly to² the general's demands.



ROMANS WEARING TOGAS.

390.

READING LESSON

Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus ad eum lēgātōs misit, qui dicerent Ariovistum sine ūllō periculō ad con-

¹ Impersonal use of the passive of an intransitive verb; lit., *it was fought*, translate *they fought*.

² ad.

loquium venire posse. Caesar diem colloquō ex eō diē. quintum dixit.¹ Intereā saepe inter eōs lēgāti mittēbantur. Ariovistus ad colloquium sēsē nōn ventūrum esse nisi cum exercitū dixit. Itaque Caesar decimam legiōnem equis vehi² iussit. Ubi ad colloquium vēnērunt,³ Caesar sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit:⁴ Ariovistum rēgem appellātum esse ā senātū et amplissima mūnera ad eum missa esse. Tandem ea postulāvit quae lēgātis dixerat.

391. Root *sta-*, *stand*.

<i>stō</i> , <i>I stand</i>	<i>stabulum</i> , — ?	<i>statūra</i> , — ?
<i>stabilis</i> , <i>firm</i>	<i>statiō</i> , — ?	<i>statim</i> , <i>immediately</i> .

ENG. DER. — State, station, stand, distant, constant, standard.

LESSON 53

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN—DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUESTIONS—READING LESSON

392. The interrogative pronoun is used to ask a question directly, or to introduce a quoted question. In the English sentences: *Who comes? Whom do you see? What is this? who, whom, and what* are interrogative pronouns used in direct questions. In the sentences: *I asked him whom he saw, He knows what is here, He sees who is coming, whom, what, and who* are interrogative pro-

¹ *appointed*.

² *to be borne (to ride) on horses (on horseback)*.

³ Translate *had come*.

⁴ *commemorāvit* implies a verb of saying followed by indirect discourse.

nouns used in indirect questions. In Latin, the same uses occur except that indirect questions have their verbs in the subjunctive.¹

393. The substantive interrogative pronoun is thus declined: —

		SINGULAR			
		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		
N.	quis , <i>who?</i>		quid , <i>what? which?</i>		
G.	cuius , <i>of whom? whose?</i>		cuius , <i>of what? whose?</i>		
D.	cui , <i>to or for whom?</i>		cui , <i>to or for what or which?</i>		
Ac.	quem , <i>whom?</i>		quid , <i>what? which?</i>		
Ab.	quō , <i>with, from, etc., whom?</i>		quō , <i>with, from, etc., what or which?</i>		

a. The plural is declined like the relative (255).

b. The interrogative adjective **qui**, **quae**, **quod** is declined like the relative in both singular and plural.

394. Study the following and distinguish interrogative pronouns and adjectives.

a. Direct Questions: —

1. **Quis mē vocāvit**, *who called me?*
2. **Quī puer mē vocāvit**, *what boy called me?*
3. **Quid vidēs**, *what do you see?*
4. **Quod animal vidēs**, *what animal do you see?*
5. **Cuius pater fortis est**, *whose father is brave?*
6. **Quōrum filli boni sunt**, *whose sons are good?*

b. Indirect Questions: —

- I. **Quaerō quid** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{faciās,} \\ \text{fēceris,} \end{array} \right.$ *I ask what* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{you are doing or do.} \\ \text{you have done or did.} \end{array} \right.$

¹ Such questions are introduced, like direct questions, by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs.

2. *Quaerēbam quid* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{facerēs, } I \text{ asked what} \\ \text{fēcissēs,} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{you were do-} \\ \text{ing or did.} \\ \text{you had done.} \end{array} \right.$

NOTE. — You will see in *b*, 1 and 2, that the present and imperfect subjunctive in a subordinate clause express incomplete action, going on at the same time as that of the principal verb; while the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive express completed action, finished before the time of the principal verb.

395.

RULE

Indirect Questions. — *Indirect questions are used with words of asking, saying, knowing, and in general with verbs of mental action. They have their verbs in the subjunctive and follow the law of Sequence of Tenses (277, a-c, 278).*

396.

VOCABULARY

<i>vulgus</i> , -i, n., <i>crowd, common people</i> (an exception in gender)	<i>coniciō</i> , -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, <i>cast, hurl, throw together</i>
<i>adequitō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>ride up</i>	<i>cōnsidō</i> , -ere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, <i>settle, encamp</i>
<i>committō</i> , -ere, -misi, -missus, <i>commit, begin</i>	<i>prōdūcō</i> , -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, <i>lead forward or forth</i>
<i>proelium committere</i> , <i>join battle</i>	<i>quaerō</i> , -ere, -sivi, -situs, <i>ask</i>
<i>conclāmō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>cry out</i>	<i>quantus</i> , -a, -um, <i>interrog. and rel. adj., how great</i>
	<i>unde</i> , <i>interrog. and rel. adv., whence</i>

397.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Quid erat impedimentō tribūnis? Sciō quid impedimentō tribūnis sit.* 2. *Quis exercitum ad montem prōdūcit? Scivī quis exercitum ad montem prōdūceret.*

3. Quaesivit cūr equitēs Ariovisti ad nostra castra adequitārent. 4. In vulgō militum quaesitum est quantā adrogantiā esset Ariovistus. 5. Conclāmāns “Virum videō,” ad eum celerrimē adequitāvit et quaesivit unde vēnisset. 6. Sciam qui imperātor proelium integris viribus committat. 7. Scīvit quō in locō exercitus inimicus cōnsēdisset. 8. Dux, tēlis coniectis, ad hostis adequitat et ut obsidēs dent postulat. 9. Audivērunt quantus timor exercitum occupāvisset.

II. 1. Who are joining battle? They know who are joining battle. 2. What boy is at the river? I know what boy is at the fountain. 3. They will ask why the horsemen of Ariovistus are riding up to our camp. 4. Ariovistus sent messengers to Caesar to demand a conference. 5. Ariovistus was a man of so great boldness that he said, “This part of Gaul is mine.”



ROMAN EMPEROR.

398.

READING LESSON

Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, et dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit. Dixit sē Rhēnum nōn suā sponte trānsisse,¹ sed rogātum² et arcessitum² ā Gallis; nōn sēsē Gallis, sed Gallōs sibi, bellum intulisse;³ sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam⁴ populum Rōmānum; Caesarem

¹ that he had crossed.

² Participle agreeing with sē.

³ Perf. Inf., had brought.

⁴ priusquam, conj., before. This word is often separated into two parts by intervening words.

nōn amicum sed hostem esse; prōvinciam suam hanc partem Galliae esse nōn ¹ potius esse Ariovisti ¹ quam populi Rōmāni; aut ² imperium Rōmānōrum iūstissimum esse in Galliā aut ² liberam dēbere esse Galliam.

399. Root *fā-*, *shine, show.*

fābula, *fable, story*

fāma, *report*

fābulōsus, — ?

fās, *right* (by divine law)

fābulōsē, — ?

nēfās, — ?

infāns, *infant*

infandus, *unspeakable*

fātum, *fate* (things spoken)

ENG. DER. — Fable, fame, fate, nefarious, infamous.
Form others.

LESSON 54

REVIEW OF THE PASSIVE VOICE — QUESTIONS WITH
nōnne, *num* AND *-ne* — READING LESSON

Make a careful review of the passive voice (95, 166, 171, 264). This will be easy if you have kept the forms in mind as the work has gone on.

400. Direct questions which are answered by *yes* or *no* occur with three different interrogative words, as follows: —

1. *Nōnne Helvētīi pācem cōfirmant, do not the Helvetians establish peace?*

2. *Num est palūs magna? the marsh is not large, is it?*

¹ *did not belong to Ariovistus rather than to the Romans* (was of).

² *aut . . . aut, either . . . or.*

3. *Vidēsne signum? do you see the standard?*

a. Here *nōnne* suggests the answer *yes*, *num* the answer *no*, and *-ne*, always enclitic, asks for information and suggests nothing as to the answer expected.

401. **Answers.** — These questions may be answered by repeating the verb — with *nōn*, if negative — or by using the affirmative adverbs *vērō*, *certē*, *ita*, etc., or the negative adverbs *nōn*, *minimē*, etc., as:—

Pugnābatne, was he fighting? Pugnābat, he was; nōn pugnābat, he was not.

Venitne, is he coming? Vērō, certē, certainly; ita, yes; nōn, no; minimē, by no means.

402.

VOCABULARY

<i>aetās, -ātis, f., age</i>	<i>dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,</i>
<i>arbor, -oris, f., tree</i>	<i>show, point out</i>
<i>contumēlia, -ae, f., affront,</i>	<i>incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, urge</i>
<i>insult</i>	<i>on, incite</i>
<i>indignitās, -ātis, f., indignity</i>	<i>perspiclō, -ere, -spēxi, -spec-</i>
<i>claudō, -ere, clausi, clausus,</i>	<i>tus, see through, perceive</i>
<i>close up; agmen claudere,</i>	<i>deinde, adv., then, next</i>
<i>bring up the rear</i>	<i>identidem, adv., repeatedly</i>
	<i>quam, adv., how</i>

403.

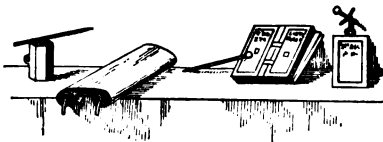
EXERCISES

- I. 1. Num duo amici eādem¹ aetāte erant? Nōn erant.
2. Nōnne propter contumēliās indignitātēsque ad bellum incitātus est? Incitātus est.
3. Clauditne agmen exercitus qui identidem in hostis impetum fēcit? Nōn claudit.
4. Estne in ōrdinibus nostrōrum perspectus? Perspectus

¹ the same.

est. 5. Nōne dēmōnstrābat quō in locō nostrī essent? Vērō. 6. Dixitne quam multi lēgātī in castris Caesaris essent? Minimē. 7. Quam multae arborēs erant in agris agricolae? Centum arborēs erant in agris agricolae. 8. Primum praesidia dispōnent, deinde Gallōs ā castris repellent.

II. 1. Did he not perceive that the lieutenant was bringing up the rear? He did. 2. He did not perceive that



WRITING MATERIALS.

the lieutenant was bringing up the rear, did he? No. 3. Were the men incited to war by their brave leaders? Yes. 4. They did not show what

the Helvetians were answering, did they? No. 5. Were the scouts and spies seen in the camp of the enemy? They were.

404.

READING LESSON

Dum haec geruntur,¹ Caesari nūtiātum est equitēs Ariovisti propius tumulum² accēdere et lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Certis dē causis Caesar proelium nōn committere cōstituit; itaque suōs in castra redūxit. Postquam nūtiātum est Ariovistum magnā adrogantiā ūsum esse,³ multō maius studium pugnae exercitūi iniectum est.⁴ Biduō post⁵ Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē conloquio misit. Itaque Caesar C. Valerium Procillum, summā virtūte virum, ad eum mittere cōstituit. Alius quoque, qui amicus Ariovisti erat, missus est. Sed Ariovistus, lēgātōs

¹ While this was going on.

² nearer to the mound.

³ ūsum esse is used with the abl.; had used great arrogance.

⁴ was inspired in the army.

⁵ two days after.

vidēns in castris suis, conclāmāvit, “Quārē ad mē vēnistis?” et eōs in catēnās coniēcit.

405. Root *dic-*, *show, point*.

<i>dicō</i> , <i>I say, tell</i>	<i>index</i> , <i>pointer, witness</i>	<i>abdicō</i> , —?
<i>dictātor</i> , —?	<i>iūdex</i> , <i>law speaker, judge</i>	<i>praedicō</i> , —?
<i>ēdictum</i> , —?	<i>iūdicium</i> , —?	<i>praedictiō</i> , —?

ENG. DER. — Diction, dictionary, dictate, ditto, judge, edict, benediction. Form others. Do not forget the aid a large dictionary will give you.

LESSON 55

DEPONENT VERBS — THE ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEPONENTS — READING LESSON — WORD LIST VIII

406. Certain verbs are active in meaning but passive in form. They have the participles of both voices. The perfect participle has sometimes an active sense. Their principal parts are passive: —

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT INDICATIVE
1. <i>cōnor</i> , <i>I attempt</i>	<i>cōnārī</i>	<i>cōnātus sum</i>
2. <i>polliceor</i> , <i>I promise</i>	<i>pollicērī</i>	<i>pollicitus sum</i>
3. <i>ūtor</i> , <i>I use, enjoy</i>	<i>ūtī</i>	<i>ūsus sum</i>
4. <i>patior</i> , <i>I suffer, allow</i>	<i>patī</i>	<i>passus sum</i>
5. <i>potior</i> , <i>I become master of</i>	<i>potīrī</i>	<i>potitus sum</i>

Give translations in second and third columns of the above.

a. For conjugation of deponents see 625. You will observe that they are conjugated largely like the passive voice of other verbs, with a few additional active forms. Select and remember these active forms.

407. Examine the following :—

1. **Armīs ūtitur**, *he uses arms.*
2. **Prōvinciā potitur**, *he becomes master of the province.*

Notice the case used here, and compare it with the English use of a direct object.

408.

RULE

Special Deponents.— *Certain deponents, with their compounds, take the ablative. These verbs are :—*

ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, *use, enjoy*

fruor, frui, frūctus sum, *enjoy*

fungor, fungi, fūctus sum, *perform*

potior, potiri, potitus sum, *become master of, gain possession of*

vēscor, vēsci, —, eat

a. Inflect these verbs in the indicative and subjunctive.

Write synopses in the third person singular.

b. Learn this list. The ablative used with these verbs is an ablative of means.

409.

VOCABULARY

hospitium, hospiti, n., *hospitality, friendship*

mors, mortis, f., *death*

occāsus, -ūs, m., *setting; occasus sōlis, sunset*

sēdēs, -is, f., *seat, abode*

insequor, -qui, -cūtus sum, *pursue, follow after*

vereor, -ēri, veritus sum, *fear*

videor, -ēri, visus sum, *passive of videō, often used as a deponent, seem, appear (w. complementary inf.)*

tandem, adv., *at length*

ūsq̄ue, adv., *even up to, as far as*

410.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. **Hospitiō fruimur, Galliā potitur, hostis insequen-**
tur, periculum veriti sunt.
2. **Multis magnum periculum**

mortis est, sed nōs nihil verēmur. 3. Pāce fruī dēbēmus, multa enim proelia commisimus et potentissimās gentis superāvimus. 4. Sēdēs in Galliā nōbis ā tē datae sunt, quibus maximē fruimur. 5. Caesar hostis insequitur et eōrum oppidis potitur. 6. Quaesivit cūr Sēquanī tam tristēs vidērentur. 7. Occāsū sōlis manum magnam militum praeter eum locum ūsque ad montem prōcēdere iussit.

II. 1. We shall enjoy peace, you have pursued the Gauls, they seemed to be our friends. 2. Caesar of his own accord gave them abodes in Gaul, which they enjoyed. 3. At sunset, drawing up a triple line of battle, they advanced quickly to the hill, in order that they might not be seen by the Gauls. 4. They fought even up to evening and enjoyed peace on the next day. 5. I know that they hastened on the next day to a place beyond Caesar's camp. 6. I know why they hastened on the next day to a place beyond Caesar's camp.

411.

READING LESSON

Eō diē Ariovistus castra prōmōvit, et milibus passuum sex ā¹ Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit. Postridiē eius diēi praeter Caesaris castra suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit. Caesar, ubi intellēxit Ariovistum sē castris tenēre, ultrā eum locum circiter passūs sescentōs ab Germānis, locum castris idōneum dēlēgit, aciēque triplici instrūctā, ad eum locum vēnit. Proximō diē Caesar cōpiās suās ēdūxit et aciem instrūxit. Eō diē ācriter pugnātum est² ūsque ad vesperum. Sōlis occāsū Ariovistus, multis vulneribus acceptis, suās cōpiās in castra redūxit.

¹ *six miles away from.*² *they fought fiercely.* Notice the idiom.



INTERIOR OF A ROMAN HOUSE. (Restored.)

412. Root *es-*, *be*, *exist*.

sum , <i>I am</i>	insum , —?	absentia , —?
intersum , —?	subsum , —?	essentia , —?
supersum , —?	absēns , <i>absent</i>	praesentia , —?

ENG. DER.— Entity, essential, present, interest, absentee, quintessence.

413.

WORD LIST VIII

adequitō	graviter	polliceor
aetās	hospitium	postulātum
alius	identidem	potior
alter	incitō	prōducō
arbor	indignitās	proelium
bene	insequor	quaerō
breviter	interclūdō	quam
certus	magis	quantus
claudō	magnopere	quis
commeātus	male	salūs
committō	maximē	sēdēs
conclāmō	minus	sōlus
coniciō	mors	sponte
cōnor	multum	subitus
cōnsanguineus	negōtium	tandem
cōnsidō	neuter	ūllus
contumēlia	nūllus	unde
dēbeō	occāsus	ūsque
deinde	omnīnō	uter
dēmōnstrō	parum	ūtor
doleō	patior	vereor
fruor	perspiciō	videor
fungor	plūrimus	vigilanter
glōria	plūs	vulgus

LESSON 56

SEMI-DEPONENTS—DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS—
READING LESSON

414. **Semi-deponents.**—Some verbs have the forms from the present stem active and the rest passive. These are called semi-deponents. Learn the following list:—

CONJ.	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
II.	<i>audeō, I dare</i>	<i>audēre, to dare</i>	<i>ausus sum, I dared</i>
II.	<i>gaudeō, I rejoice</i>	<i>gaudēre, to rejoice</i>	<i>gāvisus sum, I rejoiced</i>
II.	<i>soleō, I am wont</i>	<i>solēre, to be wont</i>	<i>solitus sum, I was wont</i>
III.	<i>fidō, I trust</i>	<i>fidere, to trust</i>	<i>fisus sum, I trusted</i>

a. Note the irregularity in the form of the perfect participle of *gaudeō*. Inflect *audeō* and *fidō* in the indicative and subjunctive. Write synopses in the third plural of *gaudeō* and *soleō*.

415. Some verbs are intransitive in Latin, and are used with a dative of the indirect object, while their English equivalents are transitive. The following examples illustrate the use of such verbs:—

1. *Suis militibus favet, he favors his soldiers (shows favor to).*
2. *Mihi crēdit, he believes me (gives belief to me).*
3. *Aeduis imperāvit, he ordered the Aeduans (gave orders to).*
4. *Huic legiōni cōfidēbat, he trusted this legion (gave confidence to).*
5. *Hostibus restitit, he resisted the enemy (gave resistance to).*

6. *Helvētiis persuāsit, he persuaded the Helvetians (offered persuasion to).*

7. *Pāci studuit, he desired peace (gave attention to).*

a. Learn these examples, noticing carefully the meaning of the verbs, and the fact that they govern the dative case. Observe that they contain the idea of giving, and fit an indirect object.

b. In the passive the dative is retained, and the verb is used impersonally, as: *I was persuaded by him, mihi ab eō persuāsum est.* Note the ablative of the personal agent with *ā*, used instead of the nominative of the active.

416.

RULE

The Dative with Special Verbs. — *Some verbs, intransitive in Latin though transitive in English, are followed by a dative of the indirect object. Such are verbs signifying to favor, please, trust, assist, command, obey, serve, resist, pardon, threaten, spare, and others of similar nature.*

417.

VOCABULARY

alacritās, -ātis, f., <i>eagerness,</i>	ignōscō, -ere, -nōvi, -nōtus,
<i>alacrity</i>	<i>pardon</i>
lūx, lūcis, f., <i>light; primā</i>	noceō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, in-
<i>lūce, adverbial phrase, at</i>	<i>jure</i>
<i>daybreak</i>	parcō, -ere, peperci, parsūrus,
studium, studi, n., <i>zeal, de-</i>	<i>spare</i>
<i>sire</i>	persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsi, -suā-
tumulus, -i, m., <i>mound</i>	<i>sūrus, persuade</i>
crēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, <i>believe</i>	resistō, -ere, -stiti, —, resist
faveō, -ēre, fāvi, fautūrus,	ob, prep. w. acc., on account
<i>favor</i>	<i>of</i>
	vix, adv., scarcely, hardly

418.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Mihi persuāsit, tibi persuāsum est, eī vix crēdidit, amicis favet, amicis ab eō favētur.



AQUILIFER.

2. Ausus erat, fisi erimus, gāvisus est, populus Rōmānus his ignōverat.

3. Maior alacritās studiumque belli exercitui iniectum est.

4. Iis ut in Ītaliā venirent persuāsit.

5. Ariovistus gāvisus est Caesarem cōpiās pedestris ad tumulum nōn dūxisse.

6. Hostibus ā Caesare nōn nocēbitur.

7. Primā lūce proelium commīsērunt et hostibus diū restitērunt.

8. Sunt in exercitū qui hostibus parcant.

II. 1. I shall rejoice, we dared, they had trusted, we shall have rejoiced, you have been wont.

2. I rejoiced that my friends had been

faithful to me. 3. The soldiers on account of their eagerness and zeal for battle resisted the enemy a long

- time. 4. For a certain reason Caesar spared the Gauls; he said that for a certain reason Cæsar spared the Gauls.
5. Who is there that does not favor his friends?

419.

READING LESSON

Postridiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō castris paucōs reliquit. Ipse, triplici aciē instructā, ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum Germāni suās cōpiās castris ēdūxērunt. Caesar ipse ā dextrō cornū¹ proelium commisit. Nostrī ācritē in hostis, signō datō, impetum fēcērunt, et diū in ūnō locō pugnātum est. Tandem hostēs fugere coepērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam² ad flūmen Rhēnum, milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quinquāgintā, pervēnērunt. Multī in eā pugnā atque fugā occisī sunt. Ariovistus ipse ēvāsit.

420. Root *da-*, *give*.

dō, *I give*

dōnō, *I give, donate* *ēdō*, *I give out*

dēdō, *I give up*

dōnum, — ?

trādō, *I give over*

dēditō, — ?

vēndō, *I sell*

trāditiō, — ?

ENG. DER. — Date, dot, dative, edition, donate, donor, traitor, vend.

LESSON 57

THE DEMONSTRATIVE AND INTENSIVE PRONOUNS—
READING LESSON

421. The demonstratives are : *hic, this* ; *is, this* or *that* ; *ille, that* ; *iste, that* ; *idem, the same*. The intensive pro-

¹ on the right wing.

² neque . . . quam, and did not cease to flee until; priusquam is often separated into parts by intervening words.

noun is *ipse*. *Īdem* is the demonstrative *is* with the emphatic suffix *-dem*; its first part only is declined. *Ipse* alone has a vocative. They are declined as follows:—

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
G.	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>
D.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>
Ac.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
Ab.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>

PLURAL

N.	<i>hi</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
G.	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
D.	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
Ac.	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
Ab.	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

SINGULAR

N.V.	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>īdem</i>
G.	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>
D.	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
Ac.	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>īdem</i>
Ab.	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>

PLURAL

N.V.	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
				(<i>eīdem</i>)		
G.	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
D.	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>īisdem</i>	<i>īisdem</i>	<i>īisdem</i>
				(<i>eīsdem</i>)	(<i>eīsdem</i>)	(<i>eīsdem</i>)
Ac.	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
Ab.	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>īisdem</i>	<i>īisdem</i>	<i>īisdem</i>
				(<i>eīsdem</i>)	(<i>eīsdem</i>)	(<i>eīsdem</i>)

a. **Iste, ista, istud** is declined like **ille**. Notice the resemblance in the genitive and dative singular to the irregular adjectives (376).

b. Observe the change from **m** to **n** before **d** in forms of **idem**.

c. The demonstratives have both an adjective and a substantive use: **hic puer, this boy; hic, this person, he**, etc. In their adjective use they regularly precede the nouns to which they belong.

d. **Hic** is used of that which is near the speaker, **iste** of that which is near the person spoken to, **ille** of that which is remote from the speaker. **Ille** often means *that well-known* or *famous person*, or *thing*, and in this use regularly follows its noun.

e. **Hic** often means *the latter* (near the speaker), **ille** *the former* (remote from the speaker).

f. **Ipse** is used with the personals, alone, or with a noun: **ego ipse, I myself; ipse, he himself; vir ipse, the man himself**. Distinguish carefully **ipse, self**, from **ille, that**, also the reflexive **sui** from the intensive **ipse**. The following illustrate these differences:—

1. **Puer ipse, the boy himself; ille puer, that boy.**
2. **Vir sē laudat, the man praises himself; vir ipse laudat, the man himself praises (somebody else).**

422.

VOCABULARY

insidiae, -ārum, f. pl., am-	interior, gen. -ōris, comp.
<i>bush, snares</i>	adj., <i>interior</i>
rūmor, -ōris, m., rumor	ulterior, gen. -ōris, comp.
citerior, gen. -ōris, comp.	adj., <i>farther</i>
adj., <i>hither</i>	commoveō, -ēre, -mōvi,



CONSUL, ATTENDED BY LICTORS.

-mōtus, <i>move greatly,</i>	proficiscor, -i, -fectus sum, <i>set</i>
<i>alarm</i>	<i>out, advance</i>
coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>conspire</i>	nōn solum . . . sed etiam, <i>correlative conjunction,</i>
populor, -āri, -ātus sum, <i>ravage</i>	<i>not only . . . but also</i>

423.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Illi puerō, huius puellae, eī rēgnō, iste homō, homō ipse, eiusdem rŭmōris, in eādē palūde. 2. Exercitus eandem alacritātem et exercitātiōnem in armis praebuit. 3. Quod¹ his idōneum est nōn est idōneum illis. 4. Rŭmōribus auditis profectus est ut in interiōrem² Galliam perveniret. 5. Illa pars Galliae ulterior appellāta est, haec citerior. 6. Nōn solum cum hostibus populī Rōmāni coniūrāvērunt sed etiam lēgātōs in multās civitātēs dē bellō misērunt. 7. Imperātor ipse insidiīs captus est neque sē liberāre potuit. 8. His rŭmōribus commōtus Caesar ad interiōrem Galliam profectus est.

II. 1. To this camp, for that army, of the same ambush, the attack itself, that attack, his practice in arms. 2. We blame ourselves, we ourselves blame the man. 3. This man praises himself ; that man blames his friends. 4. The former remains in the city, the latter is setting out for the lake. 5. Moved by these frequent rumors he set out for hither Gaul. 6. They say that the Belgae are conspiring against the Roman people.

424.

READING LESSON

Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā in hibernis, crēbri rŭmōrēs ad eum adferēbantur et certior fiēbat³ omnis Bel-

¹ (id) quod, *that which.*

² See 361, 362.

³ certior fiēbat, *he was informed.*

gās contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē¹ dare. His nūntiis commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōscripsit, et in itā aestāte² in interiōrem Galliam cum eis Q. Pedium lēgātum misit. Ipse, cum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet,³ ad exercitum vēnit. Finitimī Belgārum Caesarī nūntiāvērunt exercitum hostium in ūnum locum condūci. Quārē Caesar ad eōs proficisci cōstituit. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet, diēbusque circiter quindecim ad finis Belgārum pervēnit.

425. Root *ag-*, *drive*.

agō, *I drive*

agmen, *line of march*

actor, — ?

agitō, *I put in motion*

agilis, — ?

exiguus, *driven out, scanty*

agitātiō, — ?

cōgō, *I drive together*

exigō, — ?

ENG. DER. — Acre, act, agriculture, cogent, agent, cogitate, ache. Find others.

LESSON 58

THE GERUND—READING LESSON

426. The gerund is a verbal noun found only in the oblique cases of the neuter singular. It has the construction of other nouns, and the meaning of the English verbal in *-ing*. Distinguish this verbal in both English and Latin from the present participle. In the expression *ars scribendī*, *the art of writing*, *scribendī* is a gerund and

¹ to one another.

² in the beginning of summer.

³ when there began to be.

writing the verbal in *-ing*; while in the statement *eum scribentem vidi, I saw him writing*, *scribentem* and *writing* are both present participles.

CONJ.	I	II	III
G.	vocandi	monendi	regendi
D.	vocandō	monendō	regendō
Ac.	vocandum	monendum	regendum
Ab.	vocandō	monendō	regendō
CONJ.	III	IV	
G.	capiendi	audiendi	
D.	capiendō	audiendō	
Ac.	capiendum	audiendum	
Ab.	capiendō	audiendō	

Write synopses of the model verbs, including the gerund.

a. The gerund is formed from the present stem of the verb by adding **-ndi, -ndō, -ndum, -ndō** to make the several cases. Note in the table above the shortening of the long stem vowels before **-nd** and certain other changes in the fourth conjugation and in **-iō** verbs of the third.

427. 1. **Magister artem legendi docet, the master teaches the art of reading.**

2. **Hī libri idōnei sunt legendō, these books are suitable for reading.**

3. **Magister mihi librōs ad legendum dat, the master gives me books to read (for reading).**

4. **Magister sapiēns legendō factus est, the master was made wise by reading.**

a. Note carefully in the above examples the use of the gerund in each of the oblique cases, depending upon **artem, idōnei, dat,** and **factus est,** respectively.

428. 1. *Cōsiliū pācem cōfirmandi, a plan for establishing peace.*

2. *Magister sapiēns factus est librōs legendō, the master was made wise by reading books.*

a. Note that the gerund in these sentences governs an object in the same case as any other form of the verb.

CAUTION. — Use the gerund with an object only when the gerund itself stands in the genitive or in the ablative without a preposition.

429.

RULE

The Gerund. — *The gerund as a noun has the construction of other nouns, and as a verb retains its power of governing an object.*

430.

VOCABULARY

ars, artis, f., art

imperātum, -i, n., order, command

potestās, -ātis, f., power

victōria, -ae, f., victory

sē suaque omnia, acc. pl., themselves and all their property

bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wage war

coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-

tus, join together; sē coniungere, unite, join themselves together with

doceō, -ēre, -ui, -tus, teach

legō, -ere, lēgi, lēctus, collect, read

diligenter, adv., promptly, diligently

ad diem, prepositional phrase, to the day

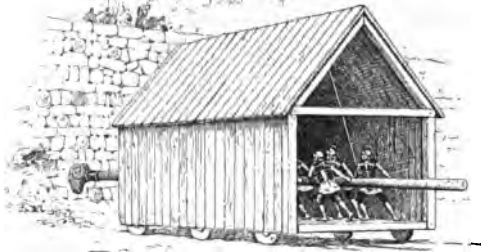
431.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Bellandī spēs, vincendī cupiditās, legendī studium, ei arma ad bellandum dedit.* 2. *Omnibus militibus erat*

magnum bellandi studium. 3. Labiēnus suōs in locum omnibus rēbus idōneum pugnandō dūxit. 4. Rēmī dixērunt sē cupiditātem bellandi nōn habēre sed sē suaque omnia in potestātem Caesaris permittere. 5. Laetā spē victōriæ sē magnō studiō bellandi ad hoc proelium coniūxērunt. 6. Diligenter ad diem studiō maximō bellandi cum Belgīs sē coniūxērunt. 7. Maximā alacritāte Caesaris imperāta fēcērunt.

II. 1. Zeal for¹ conquering, desire for¹ waging war, hope of hastening to



BATTERING RAM.

the mountains, a place suitable for encamping. 2. Caesar had² a very great desire for waging war. 3. These books are not suitable for reading. 4. A desire for victory and a hope of conquering were inspired in Caesar's army.³ 5. They intrusted themselves and all their property to Caesar in order that they might be saved by him. 6. They will do everything promptly to the day in order to have⁴ a hope of conquering.

432.

READING LESSON

Rēmī ad Caesarem lēgātōs, prīmōs civitātis, misērunt, qui dixērunt Rēmōs sē suaque omnia in potestātem populi Rōmāni permittere, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et

¹ = *of*.

² Dat. of possessor.

³ Dative.

⁴ Note all signs of subjunctive construction.

imperāta facere; reliquōs omnis Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant,¹ sēsē cum his coniūnxisse. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus, omnem senātum ad sē convenire, principumque liberōs ad sē addūcī, iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt.

433. Root *ten-*, *stretch, hold*.

tendō, *I stretch*

tenāx, — ?

tenuiter, — ?

teneō, *I hold*

tenāciter, — ?

tenuitās, — ?

tener, *tender*

tenācītās, — ?

tenuō, *I make thin*

Note the correspondence of Latin *-tās* to English *-ty*.
Form derivatives.

LESSON 59

THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE — SOME WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE — READING LESSON

434. The Gerundive is a verbal adjective made from the present stem of the verb in the same way as the Gerund, but it is found in both numbers and in all genders and cases. It is always accompanied by a noun or pronoun with which it agrees in gender, number, and case.

a. Make a careful study of the following examples of gerund and gerundive uses, comparing them so thoroughly with each other that you will always be able to distinguish them. Refer to the CAUTION under 428.

435. I. Nulla erat spēs

a. pācem faciendī (gerund), *there was no hope of making peace.*

¹ *dwell.* For reason for subjunctive see 557, 2.

b. pācis faciendae (gerundive), there was no hope of making peace.

2. Tempus erat idōneum

a. pāci faciendae (gerundive), the time was suitable for making peace.

3. Mīsīt lēgātōs

a. ad pācem faciendam (gerundive), he sent ambassadors to make peace.

4. Cōnsilia fēcīt

a. dē pāce faciendā (gerundive), he made plans for making peace.

5. Sapiēns factus est

a. librōs legendō (gerund), he was made wise by reading books.

b. librīs legendīs (gerundive), he was made wise by reading books.

In the above examples observe carefully and learn the following points : —

1. The gerund with an object or the gerundive in agreement with a noun or pronoun may be used in the genitive case or in the ablative without a preposition.

2. In all other cases the gerundive in agreement with a noun or pronoun takes the place of a gerund with an object. Here the noun or pronoun takes the case which the gerund, if used, would have had.¹

3. The gerund and gerundive are translated alike.

¹ This construction seems to be preferred even with the genitive and the ablative without a preposition.

436. We have seen that purpose may be expressed by the use of a subordinate clause introduced by *ut*, negative *nē*, or by a relative pronoun (283, 284, 295, 296).

It is also expressed by the use of the gerund or the gerundive, as you will see in the following examples:—

Vēnit

a. *pācem faciendi causā* (gerund), *he came to make peace (for the purpose of making).*

b. *pācis faciendae causā* (gerundive), *he came to make peace (for the purpose of making).*

c. *ad pācem faciendam* (gerundive), *he came to make peace (for the purpose of making).*

In the construction of *a* and *b* above, *causā* always follows the gerund or gerundive.



ARCHER.

CAUTION.— Use the gerundive, not the gerund, with an object, when a preposition occurs in the construction.

437.

RULE

The Gerundive Construction. — *The gerundive construction is used by preference instead of the gerund where the latter*

would, if used, take a direct object. This object is then put into the case in which the gerund, if used, would have been, and the gerundive agrees with it in gender, number, and case.

a. Do not forget that the gerund is always a noun and the gerundive always an adjective.

438.

VOCABULARY

causā , abl., f., <i>for the sake of</i> , always placed after a limiting genitive	arbitror , -āri, -ātus sum, <i>think, suppose</i>
funditor , -ōris, m., <i>slinger</i>	coepi , -isse, perf. tense; de- fective verb, <i>began</i>
sagittārius , -i, m., <i>archer</i>	expugnō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>take</i> <i>by storm, capture</i>
cupidus , -a, -um, <i>eager for</i> , <i>desirous of</i> , w. genitive	ēgregiē , adv., <i>excellently</i>
satis , adv., <i>enough, sufficiently</i>	

439.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Funditōrēs cupidī bellandī, ad hās rēs cōnficiendās, palūdis videndae causā. 2. Pābulum flāgitandī causā, spēs pācem petendī, spēs pācis petendae, ad exercitum distinendum. 3. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās annum satis esse arbitrātus est. 4. Multis oppidīs ex itinere expugnātīs maximum studium pācis faciendae mentis omnium occupāvit.

5. Spēs erat magna lēgātō rēgnum occupandī. 6. Funditōrēs sagittāriique ad mūrōs magnā cum spē oppidī expugnandī pervēnerunt. 7. Magnō impetū castra oppugnāt in locō quō nostrī ad ea dēfendenda missi sunt.

II. 1. For the purpose of persuading, to accomplish all these things, a desire for wintering in Gaul. 2. They were sent to conquer the enemy, they will come to cut down the bridge. 3. Caesar had a great desire for carrying on war. 4. Their hope of capturing the town was

great, I think that their hope of capturing the town was great. 5. The camp was excellently fortified, but there were few men to defend¹ it. 6. There were some who² had no hope of defending the towns.



SLINGER.

440.

READING LESSON

Ā castrīs Rōmānōrum oppidum Rēmōrum, nōmine Bibrax, aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Cum proeli finem nox fēcisset, Īccius, vir summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter Rēmōs, quī tum oppidō³ praefuerat, nūntium ad Caesarem misit quī

¹ Use proper form of subjunctive (283, a, 6).

² Dat. of possessor.

³ Dat. with *praefuerat*, *had been in command of*.

diceret; sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse. Caesar statim auxilium mīsit, sagittāriōs et funditōrēs, quōrum adventū oppidum reliquērunt hostēs et ad Caesaris castra omnibus cōpiis contendērunt. Caesar fossam perdūxit, castella cōstituit, tormenta conlocāvit. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus in castris relictis, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs quoque suās cōpiās instrūxērunt.

441. Root *cap-*, *take*.

<i>capio</i> , <i>I take</i>	<i>captō</i> , <i>I take eagerly</i>	<i>praecipuē</i> , <i>especially</i>
<i>capax</i> , — ?	<i>captatiō</i> , — ?	<i>principium</i> , <i>beginning</i>
<i>capacitās</i> , — ?	<i>captivus</i> , — ?	<i>caput</i> , <i>head</i>

Form compound verbs with *con*, *dē*, *ex*, *per*, *re*, and give meanings. Note change in root vowel in forming compounds.

ENG. DER. — Capture, captive, captivate, reception, acceptable, accept.

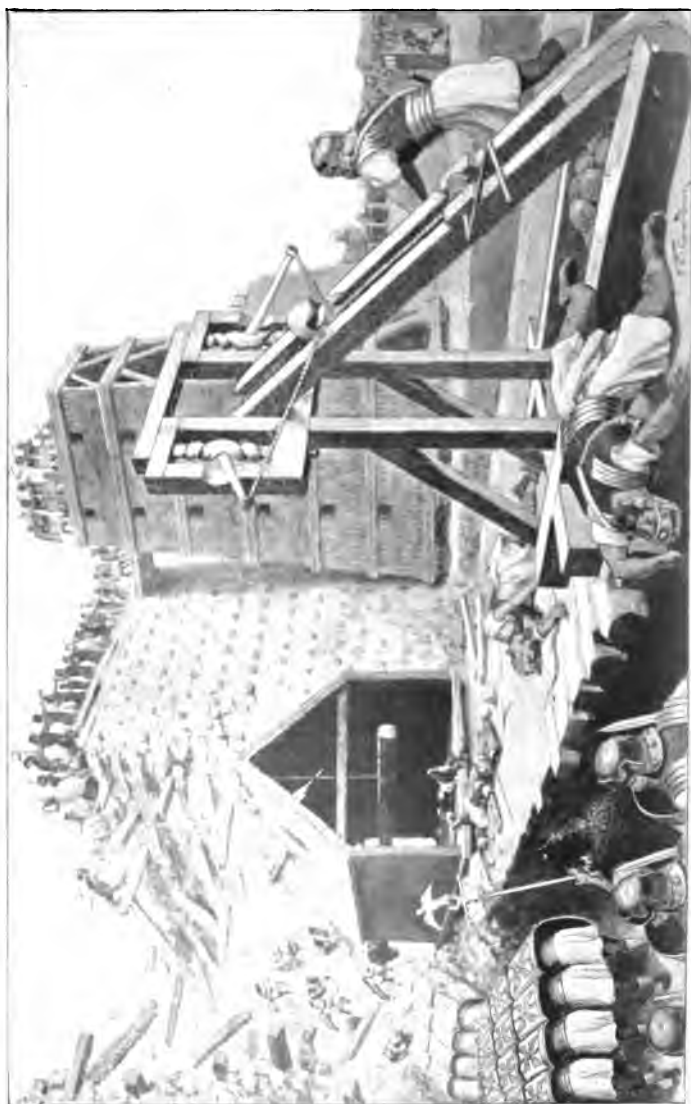
LESSON 60

PREPOSITIONS—REVIEW OF MEANS AND AGENCY— READING LESSON—WORD LIST IX

442. Prepositions in Latin are properly used with two cases only, the accusative and the ablative. Some govern the accusative only, some the ablative only, and some the accusative or the ablative with a difference of meaning.

443. Study carefully the following examples: —

1. *Ab urbe properāvit*, *he hastened away from the city.*
2. *Ex urbe properāvit*, *he hastened out of the city.*
3. *Dē urbe properāvit*, *he hastened down from the city.*
4. *In urbem vēnit*, *he came into the city.*



SIRRIE ENGINES.

5. *Ad urbem vēnit, he came to the city.*
6. *In castra vēnit, he came into the camp.*
7. *In castris manēbat, he remained in the camp.*
8. *Sub pontem vēnit, he came under the bridge.*
9. *Sub ponte manēbat, he remained under the bridge.*

Fix in mind the meaning of each of the above prepositions and the case or cases governed by each.

444.

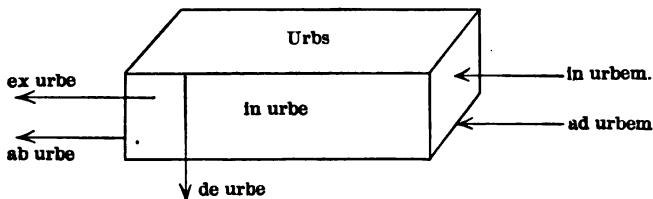
RULES

Special Prepositions. — I. *Ab* is used where motion away from a place is to be expressed, *ex* where motion out of a place, and *dē* where motion down from a place is indicated.

2. *In* and *sub* govern the accusative with verbs of motion, the ablative with verbs of rest.

3. *Ad* is used where motion to a place and *in* where motion into a place is indicated.

a. These points may be conveniently illustrated by the following diagram : —



b. The following are the most important prepositions governing the ablative case only : —

ā or *ab*, away from

cōram, in the presence of

cum, with

dē, down from

ē or *ex*, out of

prae, before, in front of

prō, for, before, in behalf of,

instead of

sine, without

c. All others given in this book (and nearly all others in the language), except **in** and **sub**, govern the accusative. Therefore the memorizing of this list will settle for you, at once and forever, the question of what case to use with each preposition.

445.

VOCABULARY

rēmus , -i, m., <i>oar</i>	laccessō , -ere, -ivi, -itus, <i>excite</i> ,
Suessiōnēs , -um, m., <i>the</i>	<i>provoke</i>
<i>Succionēs</i> , a people of Gaul	permovēō , -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, <i>move greatly, alarm</i>
vēlum , -i, n., <i>sail</i>	postridiē , adv., <i>on the day</i>
vīnea , -ae, f., <i>shed</i> (for protection of besiegers)	<i>after, used w. following genitive; postridiē eius</i>
comportō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>bring together, collect</i>	diēi , <i>on the day after that day</i>

446.

EXERCISES

I. 1. In Ītaliā, in Ītaliā, sub ponte erat, sub pontem nāvīgāvit, cum multīs amicīs, praeter finis Gallōrum. 2. Eō tempore magnō cum clāmōre ad flūmen Ararim contendērunt. 3. Postridiē eius diēi castra reliquērunt quod montēs ab hostibus tenēbantur. 4. Initium fugae ā Dumnorige factum est, quārē frāter eius graviter dolēbat. 5. Haec nāvis rēmīs agitur, illa vēlis. 6. Aedui crēbris proeliīs ā Germānis laccessīti ad Caesarem lēgātōs misērunt qui auxilium peterent. 7. Ad mūrōs vīneās maximā cum celeritāte egērunt.

II. 1. Why were the soldiers praised by their commanders? 2. On the third day the grain will be collected from the fields into the city. 3. We have come hither into the woods because the towns have been attacked by

the enemy with fire and sword. 4. They were greatly moved by the rumors which were reported by the scouts. 5. The forces of Caesar are in hither Gaul and will hasten into winter quarters.

447.

READING LESSON

Equitēs hostium cum nostris prō palūde contendērunt. Caesar cōpiās suās in castra redūxit. Hostēs statim ad flūmen Axonam properāvērunt et partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, ut castellum, cui praeerat lēgātus, expugnārent et pontem interscinderent. Caesar omnīs equitēs et funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūxit, et ad eōs contendit. In eō locō ācritēr pugnātum est. Nostrī magnum numerum hostium occidērunt. Conciliō convocātō, hostēs domum¹ contendere et suōs finis dēfendere cōstituērunt. Eā rē cōstitutā, secundā vigiliā² magnō cum tumultū castris ēgressi sunt. Caesar insidiās veritus cōpiās suās castris continuit.

448. Root *reg-*, *stretch, guide*.

<i>regō, I rule</i>	<i>regiō, region</i>	<i>rēgālis, —?</i>
<i>rēx, king</i>	<i>rēgina, queen</i>	<i>rēgāliter, —?</i>
<i>rēgnō, I reign</i>	<i>rēgnum, —?</i>	<i>rēctor, —?</i>

ENG. DER. — Regal, direct, rector, correct, correction, incorrigible.

449.

WORD LIST IX

<i>ad diem</i>	<i>arbitror</i>	<i>audeō</i>	<i>causā</i>
<i>alacritās</i>	<i>ars</i>	<i>bellō</i>	<i>coepī</i>

¹ *home* (452, 453). ² *in the second watch* (somewhere between nine and twelve in the evening).

commoveō	funditor	primā luce	satis
comportō	gaudeō	nōn solum . . .	sē suaque
cōnfidō	hic	sed etiam	omnia
coniungō	idem	ob	soleō
coniūrō	ignōscō	parcō	studeō
cōram	ille	permoveō	studium
crēdō	imperātum	populor	Suessiōnēs
cupidus	insidiae	postridiē	tumulus
diligenter	interior	potestās	ulterior
doceō	ipse	prae	vēlum
ēgregiē	iste	proficīscor	vērō
expugnō	laccessō	rēmus	victōria
faveō	legō	resistō	vinea
fidō	lūx	sagittārius	vix

LESSON 61

CONSTRUCTIONS OF PLACE

450. Note use and omission of prepositions in the following :—

1. *Ā Galliā nāvigāvit, he sailed away from Gaul.*
2. *Rōmā profectus est, he set out from Rome.*
3. *Ex urbe ēgressus est, he went out of the city.*
4. *Dēlō vēnit, he came from Delos.¹*
5. *Domō exiit, he went out from home.*

a. In the above, motion from or out of a place is expressed.

¹ Delos is a small island in the Aegean Sea.

451.

RULE

The Place from Which. — *The place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative with a preposition, generally ab, dē, or ex; but names of towns and small islands, also domus and rūs, omit the preposition.*

452. Note in the following the use and omission of prepositions and the classes of nouns with which they are omitted.

1. *Ad finis Belgārum properat, he hastens to the territory of the Belgae.*
2. *Rōmam profectus est, he set out for Rome.*
3. *In Ītaliā vēnit, he came into Italy.*
4. *Dēlum nāvīgāvit, he sailed to Delos.*
5. *Domum contendet, he will hasten home.*
6. *Rūs vēnit, he came into the country.*

453.

RULE

The Place to Which. — *The place to which or into which is regularly expressed by the accusative with a preposition; but names of towns and small islands, also domus and rūs, omit the preposition.*

454. Note very carefully the use and omission of prepositions and the forms of the nouns in the following:—

1. *In urbe mānsit, he remained in the city.*
2. *Rōmae mānsit, he remained in Rome.*
3. *Athēnīs fuit, he was at Athens.*
4. *Dēlī nōn fui, I was not at Delos.*
5. *Rēx erat Curibus, the king was at Cures.*
6. *Domī erāmus, we were at home.*

a. In 1 you find the *place in which* expressed by the ablative with the preposition *in*. This use is regular with most nouns. In 2-6 you find a case which is new to you, but which in some of its forms is the same as the dative or ablative. This case is called the Locative (cf. **locus**, *place*), which in singulars of the first and second declen-



DELOS.

sions is like the genitive, but in singulars of the third declension and in all plurals is like the dative or ablative. The locative forms of **domus** and **rūs** are **domī** and **rūrī** (rarely **rūre**).

455.

RULE

The Place in Which. — *The place in which is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition in; but names of towns and small islands, also domus and rūs, are put into the locative.*

456.

VOCABULARY

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., <i>Athens</i>	levis, -e, <i>light</i>
Curēs, -ium, f. pl., <i>Cures</i>	cōsentiō, -ire, -sēnsī, -sēnsus,
Dēlos, -i, f., <i>Delos</i>	<i>agree with, conspire</i>
rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmen- tāriae, f., <i>grain supply</i>	ēgredior, -i, -gressus sum, <i>go</i> <i>or march out</i>
rūs, rūris, n., <i>country</i> (op- posed to <i>city</i>)	impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus,
	<i>place upon, assign</i>
	vivō, -ere, vixī, victus, <i>live</i>

457.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dēli, Athēnis, Athēnās, Curibus, domum, rūs, rūri, domī, Rōmae. 2. Omnēs cōsentiunt melius esse rem frūmentāriam Rōmam portāre. 3. Impetū factō in mūlta oppida, Rōmam statim profectus est. 4. Rēbus frūmentāriis conlētīs, Dēlum cum maximā multitudīne profectus erat. 5. Levī currū ab urbe domum revertit. 6. Athēnis sunt multī et fortēs virī, quī statim Dēlum nāvīgābunt. 7. Multōs annōs rūri vīxit, sed dēnique in urbem vēnit. 8. Rē frūmentāriā iūmentis impositā, currū Rōmam vēctus est.

II. 1. He came to Rome on the tenth day and set out immediately for Athens. 2. Grain supplies were brought to Delos, for the inhabitants feared an attack of the enemy. 3. You will come immediately into the country, for there is lack of a grain supply in the city. 4. He will have set out for Delos within four days. 5. He lives in Athens, a very beautiful city,¹ but he comes often to Rome. 6. They are coming from the city to the country.

¹ Abl. either with or without *in* if it stands after the word for Athens; with the preposition if it stands before it.

458. Root *man-*, *ma-*, *measure*.

<i>manus</i> , <i>hand</i>	<i>manceps</i> (<i>manus</i> + <i>capiō</i>), <i>one</i>
<i>mandō</i> , <i>I put into the hand,</i>	<i>who takes by the hand, purchaser</i>
<i>mandatum</i> , —?	<i>manipulus</i> , <i>handful, company</i>

ENG. DER. — Manacle, manage, manifest, manner, manual, manufacture, manuscript, maintain, maneuver.

LESSON 62

REVIEW OF CARDINALS AND ORDINALS—ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE—*Cum* CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE—READING LESSON

Make a careful review of 287, 288, 311.

459. Study and carefully compare the following sentences:—

1. *Puer multō maior est quam soror, the boy is much larger than his sister (larger by much).*

2. *Flūmen multis pedibus altius est quam fossa, the river is many feet deeper than the ditch.*

Multō and **multis pedibus** are each in the ablative case and express the degree of difference between two persons or things.

460.

RULE

The Degree of Difference.—*The ablative is used without a preposition to express the degree of difference between two persons or things.*

461. *a.* The conjunction *cum* meaning *since* introduces a Causal Clause and takes the subjunctive.

b. **Cum** meaning *although* introduces a Concessive Clause and takes the subjunctive. Study the following illustrations.

1. **Cum** nōbīs nāvēs nōn essent, trānsire nōn potuimus, *since we did not have boats, we could not cross.*

2. **Cum** nōbīs nāvēs essent, tamen nōn trānsivimus, *although we had boats, yet we did not cross.*

In 1 **cum** is causal, in 2 concessive. Note sequence of tenses (277, 278).

462.

RULE

Cum Causal and Concessive. — **Cum** causal and concessive is followed by the subjunctive. The law of sequence of tenses is observed.

463.

VOCABULARY

numerus, -i, m., <i>number, quantity</i>	cōservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>save, preserve, spare, w.</i>
possessio, -ōnis, f., <i>possession</i>	accusative
socius, soci, m., <i>ally</i>	intercēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessū-
perpetuus, -a, -um, <i>perpetual</i>	rus, <i>be between, intervene</i>
singuli, -ae, -a, <i>single, individual, separate, one-by-one</i>	ante, adv., <i>before</i>
conlocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>set, place</i>	post, adv., <i>after</i>
	cum, conj. (causal and concessive), <i>since, although</i>
	tamen, conj., <i>nevertheless</i>

464.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Tribus diēbus ante, post duōbus annis, iūnior decem annis, tribus annis senior. 2. Duōbus ante diēbus ad mūrūm vēnit et ibi tormenta conlocāvit. 3. Cum legiōnēs singulae prōcēderent facile superātae sunt. 4. Cum

legiōnēs singulae prōcēderent, tamen ab hostibus superātae nōn sunt. 5. Cum omnēs, et viri et liberi, cōservārentur, Galli gāvīsī sunt. 6. Cum in dēdiōnem accepti sint, tamen gaudēre nōn possunt. 7. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis, cum in dēdiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpisset, exercitum redūxit.



RUINS OF DWELLING, DELOS.

II. 1. Three days after, two days before, three years ago (before), two months younger, a ditch three feet longer. 2. Since their redoubts are fortified, we will not attack the enemy. 3. Although our redoubts are fortified, yet we will not attack the enemy. 4. He says that a great quantity of baggage was between the two legions. 5. The allies of the Roman people were provoked for many years by the injustice of Ariovistus. 6. On the fifth day they stormed the redoubts in order to capture the camp.

465.

READING LESSON

Postridiē eius diē Caesar in fīnis Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit, et magnō itinere cōfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Ibi, castris mūnitis, vineās agere coepit. Magnitūdine operum et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē miserunt. Caesar vērō, obsidibus acceptis armisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditis, in dēditionem Suessiōnis accēpit, exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūxit, quī pācem ā Rōmānis statim petiērunt.

466. Root *lūc-*, *shine*.

<i>lūceō</i> , <i>I shine</i>	<i>lūcus</i> , <i>sacred grove</i> ,	<i>lūstrō</i> , <i>I light up</i>
<i>lūx</i> , <i>light</i>	<i>the shining place</i>	<i>inlūstris</i> , — ?
<i>lūmen</i> , <i>light</i>	<i>lūna</i> , <i>moon</i>	<i>lūcidus</i> , — ?

ENG. DER. — Luster, illustrious, illumine, lucid, lunatic.

LESSON 63

COMPOUNDS OF **sum**—REVIEW OF PURPOSE AND
RESULT CLAUSES—READING LESSON

467. **Sum** is compounded without change with the prepositions **ab**, **ad**, **dē**, **ex**, **inter**, **ob**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, and **super**. In the compound **prōsum**, *I help*, **prō** appears in the form **prōd** before a vowel.

PRESENT

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>prōsum</i> , <i>I help</i>	<i>prōsumus</i> , <i>we help</i>	<i>prōsim</i>	<i>prōsimus</i>
2. <i>prōdes</i> , <i>you help</i>	<i>prōdestis</i> , <i>you help</i>	<i>prōsis</i>	<i>prōsitis</i>
3. <i>prōdest</i> , <i>he helps</i>	<i>prōsunt</i> , <i>they help</i>	<i>prōsit</i>	<i>prōsint</i>

INDICATIVE

<i>Imperf.</i>	pröderam , etc., <i>I was helping</i> , etc.
<i>Future</i>	pröderō , etc., <i>I shall help</i> , etc.
<i>Perfect</i>	prōfui , etc., <i>I helped</i> , etc.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	prōfueram , etc., <i>I had helped</i> , etc.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	prōfuerō , etc., <i>I shall have helped</i> , etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Imperf.</i>	prōdessem , etc.	prōdessemus , etc.
<i>Perfect</i>	prōfuerim , etc.	prōfuerimus , etc.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	prōfuissem , etc.	prōfuissemus , etc.

468.

VOCABULARY

opus , -eris, n., <i>work</i>	peritus , -a, -um, <i>skilled</i> , used w. genitive
vadum , -i, n., <i>ford</i>	
adversus , -a, -um, <i>opposite</i> ; adversō colle, adverbial phrase, <i>uphill</i>	absum , -esse, āfui , āfutūrus , <i>be absent, be away</i>
medius , -a, -um, <i>middle</i> ; in mediō colle, <i>on the middle of the hill</i>	adsum , -esse, -fui , -futūrus , <i>be present</i>
militāris , -e, <i>military</i> ; rēs militāris , <i>military affairs</i>	cohortor , -ārī, -ātus sum, <i>exhort, encourage</i>
longē , adv., <i>a long way off, far</i>	reperiō , -ire, repperī , -pertus, <i>find</i>

469.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Adsum, adestis, āfuērunt, āfuimus, adfuērunt, āfueritis. 2. Ibi, vadis reptētis, partem suōrum militum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, quī hostis pellerent. 3. Per multōs diēs in mediō colle et longē ā castris erat. 4. Palūs tam magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum erat, ut militēs trādūcī nōn possent. 5. Deinde incrēdibilī celerī-

tāte adversō colle contendērunt atque in aciem hostium identidem impetum fēcērunt. 6. Reī militāris peritus est quārē hostis suōs semper superat. 7. Flūmen trānsgressī hōris post paucis in castris hostium erant. 8. Caesar suōs cohortātus aciem instrūxit ut¹ ōrdō reī militāris postulābat.

¹ Not *that*; see General Vocabulary.



CAESAR CROSSING THE RUBICON.

II. 1. We are present, you are absent, we were far away from the ford. 2. Caesar sent the tenth legion through the fields to defend the camp. 3. The lieutenant came with a hundred soldiers to cut down the bridge. 4. The Remi sent ambassadors to say that they had not conspired against the Romans. 5. The king had been repeatedly called the friend of the Roman people. 6. The cavalry, having crossed¹ the marsh, hastened uphill to a place where the soldiers were occupied in the work of fortifying² the camp.

470.

READING LESSON

Caesar sē Bellovacōs cōservātūrum³ dixit et sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. His trāditis omnibusque armis ex oppidō conlātis,⁴ ab eō locō ad Nervios contendit. Quōrum⁵ dē naturā reperiēbat: Mercātōrēs ad sē adire⁶ nōn patī, nihil patī vini⁷ inferri,⁸ esse hominēs ferōs magnaēque virtūtis, incūsāre reliquōs Belgās qui sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent. Quīdam ex Belgis⁹ ad Nervios pervēnērunt et iis dixērunt, inter singulās legiōnēs magnum numerum impedimentōrum intercēdere. Itaque Nervii cum prima legiō in castra vēnisset, eam sub sarcinīs adoriri cōstituērunt. Sed quod ad hostīs appropinquābant, Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat, post eās omnia impedimenta conlocāverat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōscriptae erant, agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant.

¹ trāsgressī.² Gerundive construction.³ In compound infinitives the forms of **sum** are often omitted.⁴ brought together.⁷ nihil vini, no wine.⁵ Of these.⁸ to be brought in.⁶ to approach.⁹ Certain of the Belgae.

471. Root *mu-*, *mov-*, *move*.

moveō , <i>I move</i>	mōtus , <i>a moving</i>	mōbilitās , —?
mōtiō , —?	mox , <i>soon</i>	mūtō , <i>move, change</i>
mōtor , —?	mōbilis , <i>movable</i>	mūtātiō , —?
mōmentum , <i>weight</i>	mollis , <i>easily moved</i>	prōmoveō , —?

ENG. DER. — Motion, movable, mobile, motor, automobile, moment, motive, mob.

LESSON 64

THE IRREGULAR VERB *ferō* AND ITS COMPOUNDS—
THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS—READING LESSON

472. Certain verbs, called irregular, annex the personal endings for the most part directly to the root.

ferō, *I bear, carry*; Root, *fer-*

Pres. stem, *fer-* Perf. stem, *tul-* Part. stem, *lāt-*

Principal Parts : *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus*; perf. inf., *tulisse*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>ferō, I bear</i>	<i>ferimus, we bear</i>
2. <i>fers, you bear</i>	<i>fertis, you bear</i>
3. <i>fert, he bears</i>	<i>ferunt, they bear</i>

Imperf. *ferēbam*, etc., *I was bearing*, etc.

Future *feram, ferēs*, etc., *I shall bear*, etc.

Perfect *tuli*, etc., *I bore*, etc.

Pluperf. *tuleram*, etc., *I had borne*, etc.

Fut. Perf. *tulerō*, etc., *I shall have borne*, etc.

PASSIVE VOICE

	SINGULAR	PRESENT	PLURAL
1.	<i>feror, I am borne</i>		<i>ferimur, we are borne</i>
2.	<i>ferris, you are borne</i>		<i>ferimini, you are borne</i>
3.	<i>fertur, he is borne</i>		<i>feruntur, they are borne</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>ferēbar, etc., I was being borne, etc.</i>		
<i>Future</i>	<i>ferar, etc., I shall be borne, etc.</i>		
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>lātus sum, etc., I was borne, etc.</i>		
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>lātus eram, etc., I had been borne, etc.</i>		
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>lātus erō, etc., I shall have been borne, etc.</i>		

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

	SINGULAR			
	Present	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
1.	<i>feram</i>	<i>ferrem</i>	<i>tulerim</i>	<i>tulisse</i>
2.	<i>ferās</i>	<i>ferrēs</i>	<i>tuleris</i>	<i>tulissēs</i>
3.	<i>ferat</i>	<i>ferret</i>	<i>tulerit</i>	<i>tulisset</i>
	PLURAL			
1.	<i>ferāmus</i>	<i>ferrēmus</i>	<i>tulerimus</i>	<i>tulissēmus</i>
2.	<i>ferātis</i>	<i>ferrētis</i>	<i>tuleritis</i>	<i>tulissētis</i>
3.	<i>ferant</i>	<i>ferrent</i>	<i>tulerint</i>	<i>tulissent</i>

PASSIVE VOICE

	SINGULAR			
1.	<i>ferar</i>	<i>ferrer</i>	<i>lātus sim</i>	<i>lātus essem</i>
2.	<i>ferāris (-re)</i>	<i>ferrēris (-re)</i>	<i>lātus sis</i>	<i>lātus essēs</i>
3.	<i>ferātur</i>	<i>ferrētur</i>	<i>lātus sit</i>	<i>lātus esset</i>
	PLURAL			
1.	<i>ferāmur</i>	<i>ferrēmur</i>	<i>lāti simus</i>	<i>lāti essēmus</i>
2.	<i>ferāmini</i>	<i>ferrēmini</i>	<i>lāti sitis</i>	<i>lāti essētis</i>
3.	<i>ferantur</i>	<i>ferrentur</i>	<i>lāti sint</i>	<i>lāti essent</i>

a. Learn at once the principal parts of this verb together with the present indicative, active and passive. Use **regō** as a model for the other forms. Notice the quantity of the penult of **ferō** and accent its compounds correctly.

b. Inflect the following like **ferō** : —

adferō, adferre, attuli, adlātus, bring to, report.

dēferō, dēferre, dētuli, dēlātus, bring down from, report.

inferō, inferre, intuli, inlātus, bring in or on, inflict.

perferō, perferre, pertuli, perlātus, bring to an end, endure.

c. Observe the change in **ad** before **-t** in the perfect tense.

473. Many verbs compounded with certain prepositions take a dative of the indirect object. There are two classes of these verbs : —

1. Intransitive verbs which cannot take a dative of the indirect object unless compounded with a preposition.

2. Transitive verbs which take only a direct object, but which, when compounded with a preposition, take a dative of the indirect object also, the direct object depending upon the force of the simple verb and the indirect upon the force of the preposition in composition with the verb.

Examples : —

- a.* First Class.
1. **Omnibus periculis adfuit, he was present in (to) all dangers.**
 2. **Eōrum cōsiliis obstitit, he opposed their plans.**
 3. **Hominēs hominibus et prōsunt et ob-
sunt, men both benefit and injure
men.**

4. **Labiēnus exercitū praefuit**, *Labiennus was in command of the army.*

b. Second Class. 1. **Labiēnum exercitū praefecit**, *he placed Labiennus in command of the army.*

2. **Bellum populō Rōmānō intulit**, *he brought war upon the Roman people.*

3. **Glōriam potentiae antepōnit**, *he prefers glory to power.*

Note that the verbs in these examples are compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **in**, **ob**, **prae**, and **prō**, and that they take the dative case.

474.

RULE

The Dative with Compounds. — *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super take the dative case of the indirect object.*

NOTE. — Since this use of the dative is that of the indirect object, it follows that the original construction of the simple verb remains, if the meaning acquired in the compound is not suited to an indirect object, as for example : —

Militēs in castra convocāvit, *he called the soldiers together into the camp.*

CAUTION. — Where motion from one place to another is clearly indicated, these verbs regularly take a preposition with its object in the accusative instead of the dative : —

In hostis infertur, *he is being borne against the enemy.*

475.

VOCABULARY

agger, -eris, m., mound
altitūdō, -inis, f., height

strepitus, -ūs, m., noise, din
vēxillum, -i, n., banner, flag

sinister, -tra, -trum, left	praeficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus,
compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus,	<i>place in command of, w.</i>
<i>drive together, drive</i>	<i>acc. and dat.</i>
dēsum, deesse, dēfui, -futūrus,	praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus,
<i>lack, be wanting, w. dat.</i>	<i>be over, command, w. dat.</i>
occurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursūrus,	supersum, -esse, -fui, -futū-
<i>run to meet, meet, w. dat.</i>	rus, be over, survive, w. dat.
	rūrsus, adv., again

476.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Ferēs, fertur, fert, ferunt, tulerō, tulistis, tulērunt, attulistis, dētuleram. 2. Exercitūi praefuit, amicis nōn deērit, omnibus reliquīs supersunt. 3. Militēs nōnae et



From a photograph

THE COLOSSEUM AS IT LOOKS TO-DAY.

decimae legiōnis Caesarī nōn dēfuērunt sed hostis ā superiore locō compulērunt. 4. Nōne Galli saepe Germānis restitērunt? 5. Nōne magnō cum strepitū ad aggerem contendunt ut dūci adsint? 6. Aggere maximā altitudine factō, omnēs qui proeliō superfuērunt oppidum rūsus oppugnāvērunt. 7. Victōria Caesaris hostibus magnam calamitātem attulit.

II. 1. I shall carry, you were carried, he will be carried, they have carried, we shall have brought war on the Roman people. 2. We shall be over the camp, he will command the army, they survived the battle. 3. On the day after that day, having given and received many wounds, they led their forces to the middle of the hill. 4. After inflicting many wounds on the enemy the commander led his left wing back to the camp. 5. We met the Gauls and conquered them. 6. Caesar placed Labienus in command of the troops which he sent to the top of the hill.

477:

READING LESSON

Equitēs nostrī, cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trānsgressi, cum hostium equitātū proelium commiserunt, qui identidem sē in silvās ad suōs recēpērunt. Deinde subitō omnibus cōpiis impetum in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs incredibili celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs qui in opere occupāti erant contendērunt. Caesar militēs cohortātus proelium commisit. Instrūctō exercitū magis ut¹ loci natūra quam ut¹ rei militāris ordō postulābat eventūs fortunāe varii sequēbantur.

¹ *as.* When used with the indicative *ut* means *as* or *when*.

478. Root *fer-*, *bear, carry.*

fertillis, —?	fertilitās, —?	fortūna, —?
ferō, <i>I bear</i>	forte, <i>by chance</i>	dēferō, —?

ENG. DER. — Fertile, fortune, infer, offer, refer, suffer.

LESSON 65

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN — THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE — READING LESSON

479. The Indefinite Pronouns are used, as in English, to show that some person or thing is meant without pointing out what particular one, as: *aliquis, any one; quidam, a certain one.*

a. These words are used both as pronouns and adjectives, as: *aliquis, some one; aliquid, something; aliquis puer, some boy; aliquod animal, some animal.*

b. *Quis* and *qui* are found mainly after *sī, nisi, num, and nē*; as, *sī quis, if any one.* In other cases *aliquis* is generally used instead.

c. The indefinite adjective *qui, quae, quod* is declined like the relative, as is also the plural of the indefinite pronoun *quis*,¹ *quid* (255). The singular of the latter is declined as follows: —

	SINGULAR	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	<i>quis, any one</i>	<i>quid, anything</i>
G.	<i>cuius, of any one</i>	<i>cuius, of anything</i>
D.	<i>cui, to or for any one</i>	<i>cui, to or for anything</i>
Ac.	<i>quem, any one</i>	<i>quid, anything</i>
Ab.	<i>quō,² from any one</i>	<i>quō,² from anything</i>

¹ *qua* is generally used instead of *quae* in the nom. and acc. neuter plural.

² The ablative may also be translated *with, by, by means of, out of, etc.*

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	aliquis (aliqui)	aliqua	aliquid (-quod)
G.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
D.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (-quod)
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

480. The other important indefinite pronouns are : —

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
quidam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam),	<i>a certain one</i>
quisquam	quaequam	quidquam (quicquam),	<i>any one</i>
quisque	quaeque	quidque (quodque),	<i>each one, every one</i>

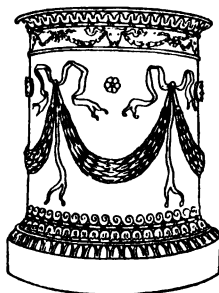
a. These are declined like the simple pronouns, but **quidam** changes **m** to **n** before **d** : **quendam**, **quōrundam**.

481. Compare carefully the Latin and English in each of the following : —

1. Pars montis, *a part of the mountain.*
2. Hōrum fortissimi, *the bravest of these.*
3. Maior frātrum, *the elder of the brothers.*
4. Quid cōnsili? *what plan?*
5. Tantum spatii, *so much space.*
6. Satis pābuli, *enough fodder.*

a. In each of the above expressions the genitive denotes a whole, out of which a part — the same in kind, of course — is taken. This part is denoted by the word which the genitive limits. In examples 1–3 the English idiom is the same as the Latin; in 4–6 it is different. Follow these examples in your exercises.

b. This use is called the Genitive of the Whole, or the Partitive Genitive.



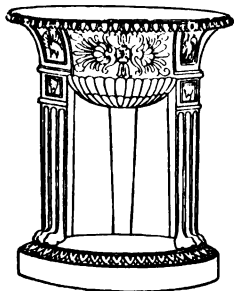
ROMAN ALTAR.

482. RULE

The Genitive of the Whole. — *Words denoting a part are used with a genitive of the whole to which the part belongs.*¹

NOTE. — Partitive words are nouns, pronouns, and adjectives and adverbs used substantively.

483. Compare with the above examples the following: —



ROMAN ALTAR.

1. *Ūnus ex militibus, one of the soldiers.*
2. *Quidam dē nostris, certain of our men.*
3. *Primus omnium, the first of all.*
4. *Duo milia hominum, two thousand men (thousands of men).*

a. Observe the use of **ex** and **dē** with **ūnus** and **quidam**, and of the genitive with **primus** and **milia**.

¹ Would you express *all of us* by the genitive of the whole? If not, why not? How would you express it?

484.

RULE

Quidam, Ūnus, etc. — *Quidam and the cardinal numerals (except millia) generally take the ablative with ex or dē to express the whole of which a part is taken; the ordinals generally take the genitive.*

485.

VOCABULARY

Aduatuci, -ōrum, m. pl.,
the *Aduatuci*, a Gallic
people
moenia, -ium, n. pl.,
walls (of a city), *ram-*
parts

multitūdō, -inis, f., *multitude*,
great number
principātus, -ūs, m., *chief place*,
leadership
contentus, -a, -um, *content, satis-*
fied, w. abl.

appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *ap-*
proach, w. dat.

revertor, -verti, -versus sum, dep.,
except in the perf., pluperf.,
and fut. perf., which have *re-*
verti, reverteram, etc., from
revertō, -ere, -i, *return, come or*
go back

dēmum, adv., *at last*

nimum, adv., *too much*.



MARBLE BUST OF A BARBARIAN, PROBABLY A GAUL.

486.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Nihil spatī, satis frūmentī, parum pābulī, quid temporis, magna pars exercitūs. 2. Duo milia passuum, iūnior duōrum frātrum, senior duārum sorōrum. 3. Quod satis frūmentī

exercitūi nōn erat, Caesar id Aeduōs¹ cotidie flāgitābat.
 4. Aliquōs milites quōque diē vidēmus. 5. Quīdam ex
 lēgātis quī ad Gallōs missi
 erant in catēnās iacti sunt.
 6. Suō locō nōn erat con-
 tentus sed prīncipatūi stu-
 duit. 7. Cum magnā
 multitudine militum populō
 Rōmānō bellum inferēbat.
 8. Moenibus appropinquā-
 bant ut auxilium amicis ad-
 ferrent. 9. Quis nostrum,
 tam magnā multitudine in-
 terfectā, in patriam suam
 revertētur?

II. 1. Some of these
 men, enough speed, too
 much grain, six thousand
 paces, ten miles. 2. He
 hastened with very great
 speed into the country of the Aduatuci. 3. He returned
 to the ramparts within three days. 4. It is just that
 enough fodder should be given² to the horses and enough
 grain to the soldiers. 5. Certain of the centurions
 came each day to the ramparts of the city. 6. Some
 are not content with the leadership in their own states.



MARBLE BUST OF A DYING GAUL.

487.

READING LESSON

Legiōnis nōnae et decimae milites, quī in sinistrā parte
 aciē instrūcti erant, hostis ex locō superiōre compulērunt

¹ kept demanding this of the Aeduans; verbs of demanding, etc., take
 two accusatives.

² dari, pres. pass. inf. of dō.

et multōs eōrum interfēcērunt. Nervii autem cōnfertissimō agmine ad castra nostra contendērunt. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī qui primō impetū hostium pulsī erant, rūsus aliam in partem fugā salūtem petēbant.

Caesar cum¹ suōs urgēri vidēret, in primam aciem prōcessit et milītēs cohortātus est. Eius adventū milītēs ācrius fortiusque pugnāre coepērunt, et T. Labiēnus decimam legiōnem nostris² subsidiō misit. Huius legiōnis adventū nostrī tam fortiter pugnāre coepērunt ut hostēs brevī tempore pellerentur.³ Hōc proeliō factō Nervii lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt. Quōs Caesar in dēditionem accēpit et finitimōs ab iniūriā maleficiōque prohibuit.

488. Root *iug-*, *join*, *yoke*.

<i>iungō</i> , <i>I join</i>	<i>iugulum</i> , <i>collar bone</i>	<i>confūrō</i> , <i>I conspire</i>
<i>iugum</i> , <i>yoke</i>	<i>iūdex</i> , <i>judge</i>	<i>iumentum</i> , <i>yoke animal</i>
<i>iūs</i> , <i>right</i>	<i>iubeō</i> , <i>I order</i>	<i>iūstitia</i> , <i>— ?</i>

ENG. DER. — Judge, jury, junction, conjugate, conjunction, joint, jugular, subjugate.

LESSON 66

THE IRREGULAR VERB *volō* AND ITS COMPOUNDS — TEMPORAL CLAUSES — READING LESSON

489. *volō*, *be willing*, *wish*

Principal Parts : *volō*, *velle*, *volui*

Perfect stem *volu-*; perfect infinitive *voluisse*

nōlō (*nōn volō*), *be unwilling*

Principal Parts : *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōlui*

¹ *cum*, *when*.

² See 297, 298.

³ Account for mood and tense. See 369, 370.

Perfect stem *nōlu-*; perfect infinitive *nōluisse*

mālō (*magis volō*), *wish rather, prefer*

Principal Parts: *mālō, mälle, mālui*

Perfect stem *mālu-*; perfect infinitive *māluisse*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT TENSE

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
1.	<i>volō</i>	<i>volumus</i>	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>nōlumus</i>	<i>mālō</i>	<i>mālumus</i>
2.	<i>vis</i>	<i>vultis</i>	<i>nōn vis</i>	<i>nōn vultis</i>	<i>māvis</i>	<i>māvultis</i>
3.	<i>vult</i>	<i>volunt</i>	<i>nōn vult</i>	<i>nōlunt</i>	<i>māvult</i>	<i>mālunt</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE

volēbam, etc. *nōlēbam, etc.* *mālēbam, etc.*

FUTURE TENSE

volam, volēs, etc. *nōlam, nōlēs, etc.* *mālam, mālēs, etc.*

PERFECT TENSE

volui, etc. *nōlui, etc.* *mālui, etc.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

volueram, etc. *nōlueram, etc.* *mālueram, etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

voluerō, etc. *nōluerō, etc.* *māluerō, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT TENSE

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
1.	<i>velim</i>	<i>velimus</i>	<i>nōlim</i>	<i>nōlimus</i>	<i>mālim</i>	<i>mālimus</i>
2.	<i>velis</i>	<i>velitis</i>	<i>nōlis</i>	<i>nōlitis</i>	<i>mālis</i>	<i>mālitis</i>
3.	<i>velit</i>	<i>velint</i>	<i>nōlit</i>	<i>nōlint</i>	<i>mālit</i>	<i>mālint</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE

vellem, vellēs, etc. *nōllem, nōllēs, etc.* *māllem, mällēs, etc.*

PERFECT TENSE

voluerim, etc. nōluerim, etc. māluerim, etc.

PLUPERFECT TENSE

voluissem, etc. nōluissem, etc. māluissem, etc.

a. Notice that the irregularities occur in the present tense only.

490. Make a careful study of the following:—

1. *Postquam Caesar pervēnit, pontem interscindi iussit, after Caesar had arrived, he ordered the bridge to be cut down.*

2. *Ubi Caesar pervēnit, suās cōpiās in castra redūxit, when Caesar arrived, he led his forces back into the camp.*

a. *Postquam* and *ubi* denote time and are followed by the indicative; *simul ac*, *as soon as*, and *ut* meaning *when*, take the same construction. Note the tense used.

491.

RULE

Clauses with *postquam*, etc. — *Postquam*, *ubi*, *simul ac* (*atque*), and *ut* temporal are used with the indicative, generally the perfect.

492. You have become familiar with *cum* as introducing a clause of cause and of concession with the subjunctive mood. *Cum* is also a conjunction denoting time, and takes sometimes the indicative and sometimes the subjunctive. You should carefully distinguish these uses and learn the signs of both constructions. The following examples will help you:—

1. *Tum cum in Ītaliā vēnit urbem condidit, at that time when he came into Italy he founded a city.*

2. *Cum per eōrum finis iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivis . . .*, when he had marched through their territories, he learned from the captives . . .

In 1 the clause with *cum* fixes the time of founding the city; in 2 the clause with *cum* describes the circumstances under which the information was received.

493. 1. *Cum amici adsunt, laetus sum, I am glad when my friends are present.*

2. *Cum vidēbis, tum sciēs, when you see, you will know.* Observe carefully the mood and tenses used with *cum*.

494.

RULES

Cum Temporal. — 1. *Cum temporal is used with the indicative to fix or define the time of an action, and with the subjunctive to describe the circumstances under which it occurred. In narration cum almost always takes the subjunctive when the tense is imperfect or pluperfect.*

2. *Cum temporal referring to present time takes the present indicative; referring to future time, the future indicative.*

495.

VOCABULARY

<i>cālō, -ōnis, m., soldier's servant, camp follower</i>	<i>cum, conj., when, w. ind. and subj.</i>
<i>condiciō, -ōnis, f., condition, terms</i>	<i>postquam, 'conj., after, w. ind.</i>
<i>turpitudō, -inis, f., disgrace</i>	<i>simul ac (atque), conj., as soon as, w. ind.</i>
<i>loquor, -quī, -cūtus sum, speak, talk</i>	<i>ubi, conj., when, w. ind.</i>
<i>redigō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctus, reduce</i>	<i>ut, conj., when, w. ind.</i>
	<i>ut primum, conj., as soon as, w. ind.</i>

496.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Volumus, māluī, nōlēbat, nōluistis, māluerāmus, māluimus. 2. Vult, nōn vult, nōlunt, mālunt, voluistis, voluērunt, voluerimus. 3. Ubi portae clausae sunt, nūlla potestās civibus data est salūtem fugā petendī. 4. Tum



ROMANS STORMING A CITY.

cum dē condiōne pācis locūsus sum eam recūsāvit. 5. Cālōnēs ut turpitūdinem fugae dēlērent fortiter pugnāvērunt. 6. Simul ac p̄ma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs vīsa sunt, sē in locum ēgregiē mūnītum recēpērunt. 7. Cum ad quīngentōs militēs redāctī essent, sē dēdidērunt. 8. Ubi proelium commissum est, cālōnēs sē fugae mandāvērunt.

II. 1. They have wished, we have been unwilling, since they have preferred, when they had wished. 2. Although

they were unwilling, he said that he wished, the camp was so excellently fortified that he was unwilling to attack it. 3. As soon as Caesar found out in what place the enemy were, he hastened towards them. 4. When no power of defending themselves was given them, they cast themselves down from the wall into the ditch. 5. The tribune spoke to his soldiers, saying, "We will accept no terms of peace." 6. When the camp followers came into the city they talked with their friends. 7. The enemy refused to accept the terms of peace.

497.

READING LESSON

Aduatucī autem, quī omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nervii vēnerant, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, ex itinere domum revertērunt, suaque omnia in oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt. Id nostrī, vineis āctis turriq̄ue exstrūctā, oppugnāre coepērunt. Ubi vērō turrim movēri et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt. Hīs Caesar locūtus est: Sē condiciōnem dēditionis nūllam acceptūrum esse, nisi armīs trāditis.¹ Rē nūntiātā, Aduatuci dīxērunt sē factūrōs esse quae imperārentur.² Armōrum vērō magnā multitudīne dē mūrō in fossam iactā, circiter autem tertiā parte cēlātā et in oppidō retentā, portis patefactis eō diē pāce ūsi sunt.

498. Root *ped-*, *tread*.

pēs, *foot* *impediō*, *I entangle* *pedester*, *on foot*
pedes, *foot soldier* *expediō*, —? *impedimentum*, —?

ENG. DER. — Pedal, pedestal, pedestrian, biped, impede.

¹ *unless they gave up their arms.*

² *what was ordered (what things were ordered).*

LESSON 67

THE IRREGULAR VERBS **eō** AND **fiō** — REVIEW OF
THE IRREGULAR VERBS — READING LESSON — WORD
LIST X

499. **eō**, *go*. Principal Parts: **eō**, **ire**, **ii** (**ivī**), **itūrus**.
Perf. inf. **isse** (**ivisse**). Pres. stem **i-**. Perf. stem **i-** or **iv-**.
Part. stem **it-**.

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

PRESENT TENSE		<i>Imperf.</i>	ibam , etc.
Singular	Plural	<i>Future</i>	ibō , etc.
1. eō	imus	<i>Perfect</i>	ii (ivī), etc.
2. is	itis	<i>Pluperf.</i>	ieram (iveram), etc.
3. it	eunt	<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	ierō (iverō), etc.

Supply omitted forms. **Eō** is used impersonally in the third person singular passive: **itur** (*it is gone*), *they go*.

The compounds **adeō**, *I approach*, and **ineō**, *I enter*, are transitive and have a passive inflection also.

INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF **adeō**

PRESENT TENSE		<i>Imperf.</i>	adībar , etc.
Singular	Plural	<i>Future</i>	adībor , etc.
1. adeor	adimur	<i>Perfect</i>	aditus sum , etc.
2. adiris (-re)	adimini	<i>Pluperf.</i>	aditus eram , etc.
3. adītur	adeuntur	<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	aditus erō , etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR			
Pres.	Imperf.	Perfect	Pluperf.
1. eam	irem	ierim (iverim)	issem (ivissem)
2. eās	irēs	ieris (iveris)	issēs (ivissēs)
3. eat	iret	ierit (iverit)	isset (ivisset)

PLURAL

1. eāmus Irēmus Ierimus (Iverimus) issēmus (Ivissēmus)
 2. eātis Irētis Ieritis (Iveritis) issētis (Ivissētis)
 3. eant Irent Ierint (Iverint) issent (Ivissent)

SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE OF adeō

SINGULAR

Pres.	Imperf.	Perfect	Pluperf.
1. adear	adirer	aditus sim	aditus essem
2. adeāris (-re)	adirēris (-re)	aditus sis	aditus essēs
3. adeātur	adirētur	aditus sit	aditus esset

PLURAL

1. adeāmur adirēmur aditī simus aditī essēmus
 2. adeāminī adirēminī aditī sitis aditī essētis
 3. adeantur adirentur aditī sint aditī essent

a. Inflect in both active and passive *trānseō*, *go across*, and *praetereō*, *go by*. Accent accurately. Note all irregularities of form.

500. *fiō*, used as passive of *faciō*, *be made, become, come to pass*. Principal Parts: *fiō, fierī, factus sum*.

INDICATIVE

PRESENT TENSE			
Singular	Plural		
1. <i>fiō</i>	[<i>fimus</i>]	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>fiēbam</i> , etc.
2. <i>fis</i>	[<i>fitis</i>]	<i>Future</i>	<i>fiam, fiēs</i> , etc.
3. <i>fit</i>	<i>fiunt</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>factus sum</i> , etc.
		<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>factus eram</i> , etc.
		<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>factus erō</i> , etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE

1. *fiam* *fiāmus* *Imperf.* *fierem*, etc.
 2. *fiās* *fiātis* *Perfect* *factus sim*, etc.
 3. *fiat* *fiant* *Pluperf.* *factus essem*, etc.

NOTE. — *Fīō* has *i* except in the form *fit* and before *-er*.



THE ACROPOLIS AT ATHENS.

Review the irregular verbs (355, 467, 472, 489, 499).

501. Examine the following:—

1. *Caesarem certiōrem facit, he informs Caesar (makes Caesar more certain).*

2. *Caesar certior factus est, Caesar was informed.*

Here certior is an adjective in the comparative degree and is declined like any other comparative. Note the difference between the active and passive construction, also the agreement of the predicate adjective.

502.

VOCABULARY

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f., custom, habit

iniquitās, -ātis, f., unevenness, unfavorableness

nēmō, dat. nēmīni, (gen. and abl. supplied from nūllus), m. and f., no one, nobody

abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead away

accidō, -ere, -cidi, —, happen, occur

adlungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, add to, join to

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, overpower, overwhelm

trānseō, -ire, -ī (-īvi), itus, cross over, go across

nē . . . quidem, (with the emphatic word between the two parts), not even

etiam, adv. and conjunction, even, yet, still

503.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Fīebātis, fient, fierī, fit, factus sum, factī erātis, factī eritis, factus est.* 2. *Eō, itur, ibimus, istis, ieris, ieritis, imus, ibunt, trānsitum est, adībunt.* 3. *Accidit ut, cum ācritēr pugnātum esset, nēmō hostem fugientem vidēret.* 4. *Fit ut propter iniquitātem locī exercitus trānsire nōn possit.* 5. *Cum nostrī hostibus fortiter resisterent, tamen ad flūmen compellēbantur.* 6. *Factum est ut nostrī nē primum quidem impetum eōrum sustinēre possent.* 7. *Caesar*

cum Gallis in locō iniquō pugnāre nōluit. 8. Germāni cōnsuētūdine suā,¹ hostibus oppressis, agrōs populābantur. 9. Auxiliō amicōrum adiūctō, tamen hostis opprimere nōn potuerunt.

II. 1. I go, they will have gone, he had crossed over, they had become, we shall prefer. 2. He wished, he informed Caesar, he did not wish, we shall bear, they will become, no one went. 3. Since Caesar encourages his soldiers, they will prefer to fight. 4. Although many disasters are brought upon us, let us bear² them bravely. 5. Why do they wish to cross the river in this unfavorable place? 6. They could not even lead their men away from the camp for the purpose of attacking the enemy.³ 7. The scouts informed Caesar that the enemy were coming.

504.

READING LESSON

Multis dē causis acciderat ut subitō Galli bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent, primum quod legiōnem nostram propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant, tum etiam quod propter iniquitātem loci nē primum quidem impetum suum sustinēre posse existimābant. Dolēbant quoque quod liberī suī obsidēs ā Rōmānis abducērentur, et existimāvērunt Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis Alpīs occupāre et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere cōnārī.

505. Root *i-*, *go*.

eō, <i>I go</i>	aditus, —?	comes, <i>companion</i>
iter, <i>journey</i>	adeō, —?	initium, <i>beginning</i>

ENG. DER. — Exit, initial, itinerant, ambition, transit, initiation.

¹ according to their custom.

² See 271, 1, a.

³ Use gerundive construction. What other might you use?

506.

WORD LIST X

abdūcō	cōnsuētūdō	militāris	quisque
absum	contentus	moenia	redigō
accidō	cum	multitūdō	reperiō
adeō	dēferō	nē . . . quidem	rēs frūmen-
adferō	Dēlos	nimum	tāria
adiungō	dēmum	nōlō	revertor
adsum	dēsum	numerus	rūs
Aduatucī	ēgredior	occurrō	simul ac
adversus	eō	opprimō	singulī
agger	etiam	opus	sinister
aliquis	ferō	perferō	socius
altitūdō	fiō	peritus	strepitus
ante	impōnō	perpetuus	supersum
appropinquō	inferō	possessiō	tamen
Athēnae	inīquitās	post	trānseō
cālō	intercēdō	postquam	turpitūdō
cohortor	laccessō	praeficiō	ubi
compellō	levis	praesum	ut
condiciō	longē	prīncipātus	vadum
conlocō	loquor	prōsum	vēxillum
cōnsentiō	mālō	quīdam	vīvō
cōnservō	medius	quis	volō

LESSON 68

NOUN AND ADJECTIVE REVIEW—THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES—CONDITIONS OF FACT—READING LESSON

Review carefully nouns and adjectives of the first and second declensions. This should be pleasant and successful

work for you if you learned them thoroughly at first and have used them accurately since.

507. Conditional Sentences. — A conditional sentence consists of at least one principal and one subordinate clause. The subordinate clause contains the condition and is called the Protasis; the principal clause contains the conclusion and is called the Apodosis. In the sentence, *If he is my friend, I rejoice*, the clause *if he is my friend* is the protasis, and the clause *I rejoice* is the apodosis. Study the following sentences and select the protasis and the apodosis in each. Note also mood and tenses used.

1. **Si venit, fidus est**, *if he comes, he is faithful.*
2. **Si vēnit, fidus erat**, *if he came, he was faithful.*
3. **Si veniet, fidus erit**, *if he comes (shall come), he will be faithful.*
4. **Si vēnerit, fidus erit**, *if he comes (shall have come), he will be faithful.*

a. The subordinate clause in each of the above assumes the condition as a fact, and the conclusion necessarily follows, followed, or will follow. Do you see this clearly?

b. The protasis is regularly introduced, when affirmative, by **si**, *if*; when negative by **si nōn**, *if not*, when a single word is negated; and by **nisi**, *unless*, when the entire protasis is negated.

508.

RULE

Conditions of Fact. — *Conditions of fact are found in present, past, or future time, and take the indicative mood in any tense required by the nature of the thought. They are classed as Past, Present, and Future.*

509. TABLE OF CONDITIONS OF FACT

Conditions of Fact	1. Present	1.	Protasis, The present indicative
		2.	Apodosis, The present indicative or any form required by the nature of the thought
	2. Past	1.	Protasis, A past tense of the indicative
		2.	Apodosis, A past tense of the indicative
	3. Future	1.	Protasis, The future (or fut. perf.) indicative
		2.	Apodosis, The future indicative

NOTE. — You may use the future perfect in the protasis of a future condition of fact if you wish to express the act of the protasis as finished before the act of the apodosis is begun.

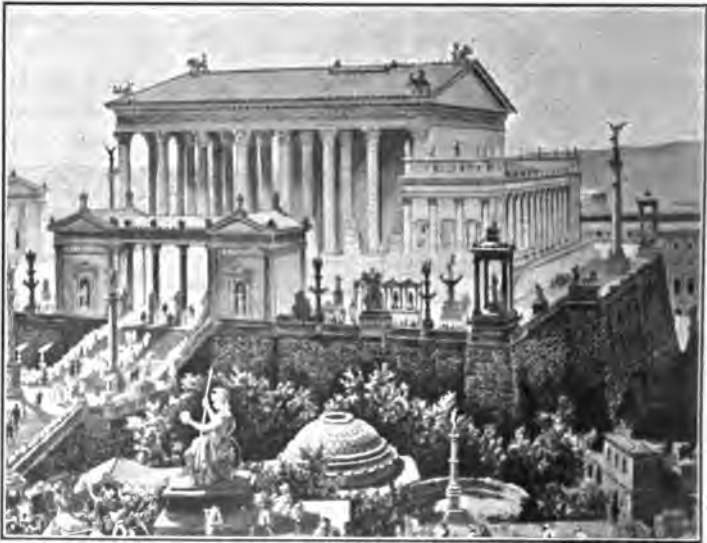
510. VOCABULARY

plānitiēs , -iēi, f., <i>plain</i>	prōiciō , -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, <i>hurl forward, abandon</i>
tuba , -ae, f., <i>trumpet</i>	relanguēscō , -ere, —, —, <i>become weak</i>
vigilia , -ae, f., <i>watch</i>	vergō , -ere, —, —, <i>turn, slope</i>
vinum , -i, n., <i>wine</i>	aequālīter , adv., <i>uniformly</i>
importō , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>bring in, import</i>	nisi , conditional particle, <i>if not, unless</i>
peragō , -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, <i>accomplish</i>	si , conditional particle, <i>if</i>

511. EXERCISES

- I. 1. Si collis aequālīter ad plānitiem vergit, iter facile est. 2. Si hoc peragit, fortis est. 3. Si tēlum prōiēcīt,

virum interfēcit. 4. Si signum tubā dabit, omnēs cōpiae proelium committere volent. 5. Si tertiā vigiliā ibit, laeti erunt amici. 6. Nisi tertiā vigiliā ibunt, amici trīstēs erunt. 7. Si vinum importātur, mentēs incolārum relanguēscunt. 8. Si vīnum importābitur, mentēs incolārum



TEMPLE OF JUPITER CAPITOLINUS (Restoration).

relanguēscunt. 9. Putat virum m̄ximā aetāte nōn facile tēla prōicere posse.

II. 1. If he comes, he is good ; if he comes, I shall see him. 2. Unless the hill slopes uniformly to the plain, the road is difficult. 3. If the signal was not given, the men could not fight. 4. If they are pushing up the sheds, they are a help to Caesar. 5. If the Belgae are unwilling to import wine, they are wise. 6. If they imported

too much wine, their minds became weak. 7. They asked why the soldiers came in the third watch.

512.

READING LESSON

Brevi spatiō interiectō, hostēs ab omnibus partibus signō datō dēcucurrērunt et lapidēs tēlaque in vāllum coniciēbant. Nostrī primō integrīs viribus fortiter pugnāvērunt, neque ūllum tēlum frūstrā ex locō superiōre misērunt. Cum iam sex hōrās continenter pugnātum¹ esset,² et nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent² atque hostēs ācrius instārent,² ūna spēs sōla salūtis manēbat, si nostrī, eruptiōne factā, impetum in hostīs facerent.

513. Root *clā-*, *call*.

<i>clāmō</i> , <i>I call, cry out</i>	<i>clārus</i> , <i>famous</i>	<i>clāssis</i> , <i>fleet</i>
<i>clāmōr</i> , — ?	<i>praeclārus</i> , — ?	<i>conclāmō</i> , — ?

ENG. DER. — Clamor, claim, exclaim, class, classical, calendar.

LESSON 69

NOUN AND ADJECTIVE REVIEW (*Continued*)—CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT—READING LESSON

Make a careful review of consonant stems, nouns, and adjectives of the third declension. (See 141-143, 147-149, 194-198.)

¹ Explain impersonal use of this verb.

² Why are these verbs in the subjunctive? Is the time dated or described? What tenses are used? (See 492, 2; 494.)

514. Study the following, noting use of mood and tenses :—

1. **SI pater mē timēret, ab eius oculis concēderem, if my father feared me, I should withdraw from his sight.**

2. **SI pater mē timuisset, ab eius oculis concēdissem, if my father had feared me, I should have withdrawn from his sight.**

Sentence 1 implies: My father does not fear me, I do not withdraw. The condition (protasis) is not fulfilled, the conclusion (apodosis) does not follow. The time is present and the imperfect subjunctive is used.

Sentence 2 implies: My father did not fear me, I did not withdraw. The condition was not fulfilled, the conclusion did not follow. The time is past and the pluperfect subjunctive is used.

515.**RULE**

Conditions Contrary to Fact.— *In conditions contrary to fact the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in both protasis and apodosis, the imperfect to express present time, the pluperfect to express past time.*

NOTE.— Compare the conditional sentences in this lesson with those in the preceding, and note that the indicative is used in conditions of fact and the subjunctive in conditions contrary to fact. Note also the difference in the nature of the thought expressed.

516. TABLE OF CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT

Conditions Contrary to Fact	1. Present	1. Protasis, Imperfect subjunctive
		2. Apodosis, Imperfect subjunctive
	2. Past	1. Protasis, Pluperfect subjunctive
		2. Apodosis, Pluperfect subjunctive

517.

VOCABULARY

aqua, -ae, f., <i>water</i>	<i>be at hand, press on, w.</i>
lapis, -idis, m., <i>stone</i>	dat.
memoria, -ae, f., <i>memory</i>	recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus,
ratio, -ōnis, f., <i>plan</i>	<i>take back; sē recipere, be-</i>
prīstinus, -a, -um, <i>former</i>	<i>take one's self, draw back,</i>
dēficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus,	<i>retreat</i>
<i>fail, be lacking</i>	frūstrā, adv., <i>in vain</i>
instō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātūrus,	undique, adv., <i>from all sides</i>

518.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Si Caesar aliam ratiōnem bellī cēpisset, celerius omnīs Gallōs vicisset. 2. Si dux militēs cohortārī voluisset, fortiter ūsque ad vesperum pugnāvissent. 3. Si cōsul fierēs, omnīs cōpiās hostium sē recipere cōgerēs. 4. Si flūmen trānsire nōlēs, tē hic expectābō. 5. Si rūsus contrā hostēs institissent, sociī ad eōs undique vēnissent. 6. Amicī iis nōn dēficiēt, si prīstinam virtūtem praebēbunt. 7. Nisi militēs longā ōrātiōne monuisset, memoriā prīstinae virtūtis nōn retinuisent. 8. Nisi lapidēs in moenia oppidī frūstrā coniēcissent, oppidānōs dē mūrīs dēpulissent.

II. 1. If the hill slopes uniformly to the plain, the place is suitable for a camp. 2. If you had retreated to the mountains, you would not have been driven from your position. 3. If you were willing to retain the memory of your former valor, you would conquer all your enemies. 4. If I can make terms of peace, I shall prefer not to fight again. 5. If we shall be willing to make terms of peace, Caesar will pardon us. 6. If they had retreated to the mountain, they would have saved themselves. 7. If our strength fails us, we shall no longer fight.



A ROMAN BANQUET.

519.

READING LESSON

Itaque proelium intermittunt, sē ex labōre reficiunt, signō datō¹ ex castris ērumpunt. Omnī spē in virtūte positā, subitō ex omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā, hostibus facultātem neque cōgnōscendī² quid fieret neque suī cōnligendi relinquunt. Itaque fortunā mūtātā, eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum² veniēbant undique circumventōs interficiunt, et, ex hominum milibus trigintā plūs tertiā parte interfectā, reliquōs in fugam coniciunt atque nē in locis inferiōribus quidem cōsistere patiuntur.

520. Root *voc-*, *call*.

<i>vocō</i> , <i>I call</i>	<i>vocābulum</i> , <i>name,</i> <i>word</i>	<i>vōciferor</i> , <i>I cry aloud</i>
<i>vōx</i> (<i>voc + s</i>), <i>voice</i>	<i>vōcula</i> , <i>a feeble</i> <i>voice</i>	<i>vocātivus</i> , <i>—?</i>

Form compound verbs with *ā*, *con*, *dē*, *prō*, *re*, and give their meanings.

ENG. DER. — Vocal, vocabulary, voice, vocation, vociferate, revoke, vocative.

LESSON 70

NOUN REVIEW—REVIEW OF CONDITIONS OF FACT AND CONTRARY TO FACT—CONDITIONS OF POSSIBILITY—READING LESSON

Make a careful review of noun forms of the fourth and fifth declensions. See 254, 312. Recall to mind classes

¹ Construction? Are there similar constructions elsewhere in this passage? If so, have they the same meaning?

² Gerund or gerundive construction? See 435, 436.

of conditional sentences already studied, together with the verb forms used in the protasis and apodosis of each, referring to 507-509, 514-516.

521. Study the following sentences:—

1. *Si veniat, laetus sim, if he should come, I should be glad.*

2. *Si vēnerit, laetus sim, if he should come (should have come), I should be glad.*

3. *Si veniat (vēnerit), laetus sis, if he should come, you would be glad.*

a. Note in the above sentences the following points:—

1. The subjunctive mood is used in both clauses.

2. The tense of the protasis is either present or perfect.

3. The tense of the apodosis is present.

4. The condition is represented as possible, and the time is future.

5. In the protasis and in the first person of the apodosis, the verb is translated by the English potential with *should*. In the second and third person in the apodosis, it is translated by the English potential with *would*.

b. Make a table of conditions of possibility, following the model of the other classes.

522.

VOCABULARY

lacrima, -ae, f., *tear*

mulier, -eris, f., *woman*

saepēs, -is, f., *hedge*

adorior, -iri, -ortus sum, *at-*
tack

circumveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ven-
tus, *surround*

conligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctus,
collect

cōnsistō, -ere, -stiti, —, *stop,*
halt

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *urge*
on, incite

proximē, adv., *very recently*

523.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Sī Athēnās videās, pulchram et clāram urbem videās.* 2. *Sī multīs cum lacrimīs sē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiciant, iīs ignōscat neque incūset.* 3. *Nisi magnus strepitus factus esset, hostēs effugissent.* 4. *Sī Nervii saepēs faciant, finitimōs prohibeant.* 5. *Sī Gallōs ad bellum incitāvissent, magnam iniūriam fēcissent.* 6. *Sī*



ROMAN AQUEDUCT AT NÎMES, FRANCE.

in itinere cōsistant, hostēs eōs adorianur. 7. *Sī mulierēs pācem petent et sē Caesarī ad pedēs prōicient, iīs ignōscet.*

II. 1. If he should go into Gaul, he would incite the inhabitants to war. 2. If you should cross the river, I should not blame you. 3. If you had crossed the river, I should not have blamed you. 4. If the fathers lay down their arms, the sons will not fight. 5. If you should attack the towns of the Nervii, you would not conquer that

brave tribe. 6. If you had been surrounded by hostile forces, you would have fought bravely.

524.

READING LESSON

His rēbus cōfectis, omnibus cōpiīs hostium in fugam conversis, sē in castra mūitiōnēsque suās recēpērunt. Galba autem, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre nōlēbat atque inopiā frūmenti maximē permōtus est, posterō diē, omnibus hostium aedificiīs incēnsis, in prōvinciam reverti contendit, ac, nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante, incolumem legiōnem in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hie-māvit. His rēbus gestis, Caesar in Īlyricum profectus est ut aliās quoque nātiōnēs adiret et regiōnēs cōgnōsceret. Quō factō, bellum in Galliā subitō coörtum est.

Select and explain all ablative absolute phrases in the above.

525. ROOT *flu-*, *flow*.*fluō, flow**flūmen, —?**flūctus, wave, flood**flēō, weep**inflūō, —?**fluitō, float*

ENG. DER. — Fluid, flush, fluctuate, flux, flume, influence, fluency.

LESSON 71

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD — REVIEW OF NOUNS COMPLETED — READING LESSON — WORD LIST XI

526. The Imperative Mood in Latin as in English expresses a command or entreaty: *Go! Come!* It has two tenses, the present and the future. In the present only the second person, singular and plural, is found; in the future only the second and third persons.

		PRESENT	
		ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Sing.</i>	2. <i>vocā, call, call thou</i>	<i>vocāre, be called, be thou called</i>	
<i>Plur.</i>	2. <i>vocāte, call, call ye</i>	<i>vocāmini, be called, be ye called</i>	

		FUTURE	
<i>Sing.</i>	2. <i>vocātō, call, you shall call</i>	<i>vocātor, be called, you shall be called</i>	
	3. <i>vocātō, he shall call</i>	<i>vocātor, he shall be called</i>	
<i>Plur.</i>	2. <i>vocātōte, call, you shall call</i>	—	
	3. <i>vocantō, they shall call</i>	<i>vocantor, they shall be called</i>	

		ACTIVE		ENDINGS	
<i>Pres. S.</i>	2. <i>monē</i>	<i>rege</i>	<i>cape</i>	<i>audi</i>	—
	<i>Pl. 2. monēte</i>	<i>regite</i>	<i>capite</i>	<i>audite</i>	-te
<i>Fut. S.</i>	2. <i>monētō</i>	<i>regitō</i>	<i>capitō</i>	<i>auditō</i>	-tō
	3. <i>monētō</i>	<i>regitō</i>	<i>capitō</i>	<i>auditō</i>	-tō
	<i>Pl. 2. monētōte</i>	<i>regitōte</i>	<i>capitōte</i>	<i>auditōte</i>	-tōte
	3. <i>monentō</i>	<i>reguntō</i>	<i>capiuntō</i>	<i>audiuntō</i>	-ntō

		PASSIVE			
<i>Pres. S.</i>	2. <i>monēre</i>	<i>regere</i>	<i>capere</i>	<i>audire</i>	-re
	<i>Pl. 2. monēmini</i>	<i>regimini</i>	<i>capimini</i>	<i>audimini</i>	-mini
<i>Fut. S.</i>	2. <i>monētor</i>	<i>regitor</i>	<i>capitor</i>	<i>auditor</i>	-tor
	3. <i>monētor</i>	<i>regitor</i>	<i>capitor</i>	<i>auditor</i>	-tor
<i>Pl. 2.</i>	—	—	—	—	—
	3. <i>monentor</i>	<i>reguntor</i>	<i>capiuntor</i>	<i>audiuntor</i>	-ntor

a. The second person singular of the present imperative active is the present stem of the verb. The other forms are made by adding to this stem the active imperative endings. This stem in the third conjugation changes *-e* to *-i*.

In the third and fourth conjugations -u is inserted before -ntō in the third person plural of the future.

b. The second person singular of the present imperative passive is the same as the present active infinitive. The other forms are made by adding the passive imperative endings to the present stem. The second person plural of the future is lacking.

c. Learn the list of endings and inflect in the imperative, active and passive, *laudō*, *habeō*, *mittō*, *dūcō*,¹ *iaciō* and *vinciō*, giving meanings.

527. Examine the following:—

1. *Mūnite oppidum, fortify the town.*
2. *Meōs liberōs vōbīs permittam; eōs cōservātōte, I shall intrust my children to you, guard them carefully.*
3. *Nē mūniveritis oppidum, do not fortify the town.*
4. *Nōlite oppidum mūnīre, do not (be unwilling to) fortify the town.*

a. From these examples you will see that:—

(1) The present imperative is used in affirmative commands, unless distinct reference is made to future time, as in 2. In this case the future imperative is used.

(2) *Nē* with the second person of the perfect subjunctive or the present imperative of *nōlō* with a complementary infinitive is used to express a prohibition.

528. Review carefully the rules for gender. See 306.

a. In the following list of words state in tabular form the declension, gender, nominative and genitive singular and plural.

¹ Four verbs, *dīcō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, and *ferō* have the forms *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, and *fer* in the second person singular present imperative active.

aciēs	caput	exercitus	iuvenis	mulier	spatium
adventus	castra	finis	lacus	multitūdō	tempus
aestās	centuriō	flūmen	lĕgātīō	ōrdō	vectīgal
agger	cohors	frīgus	locus	palūs	vīnea
agmen	cōpia	genus	lūx	pōns	vīnum
agricola	diēs	homō	mēns	Rhēnus	vir
bellum	dolus	ignis	mīles	scūtum	virtūs
cālō	domus	iter	mōns	soror	vīs

529.

VOCABULARY

interneciō , -ōnis, f., <i>destruction, annihilation</i>	sequor, sequi, secūtus sum , <i>follow</i>
testūdō , -inis, f., <i>testudo, roof of shields</i>	temptō , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>tempt, try</i>
intentus , -a, -um, <i>intent, eager</i>	valeō , -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, <i>be well, be strong</i> ; valē , valēte , <i>farewell</i>
permittō , -ere, -misi, -missus, <i>permit, intrust</i>	clam , adv., <i>secretly</i>

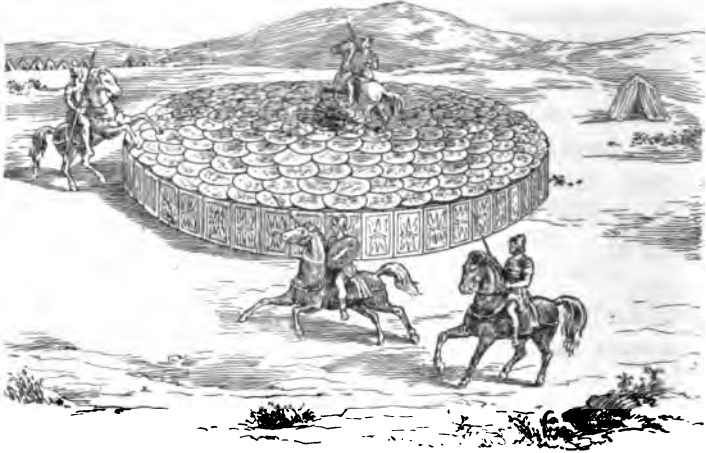
530.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Valē, valēte, permittite, permittitōte, temptātor, morantor, iaciuntō, mūniuntō, ēdūc, dic, fac. 2. Iaciuntor, permittite liberōs incolumis vestris amīcis. 3. Dimittēmus nūntiōs ad vōs in finitimās cīvitātēs; eōs accipitōte. 4. Contende cum hostibus, Labiēne, et tuōs amīcōs dēfende. 5. Agmen claude et cum omnibus cōpiīs ducem ad pontem sequere. 6. Nē permiseris nostrōs hostis incolumis ad suōs ire. 7. Nē eōs inermis ad interneciōnem redēgeritis. 8. Testūdine factā, clam ad mūrōs urbis inimicæ contendite.

II. 1. Lead, he shall follow, be praised, let them be praised, speak, make. 2. Lead the horsemen secretly

into the native country of the Gauls. 3. Come with us¹ in order that we may fortify a camp. 4. Let us not reduce these unarmed men to destruction, do not reduce these unarmed men to destruction. 5. Do not abandon the hope of safety, but fight bravely till evening. 6. Let us not intrust our children as hostages to the power of our enemies.



ROMAN TESTUDO WITH HORSEMAN ON IT.

531.

READING LESSON

Sabinus locō² omnibus rēbus idōneō sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium passuum spatiō cōnsēdisset, cotīdiēque prōductis cōpiis, pugnandi potestātem faceret, ita ut iam Sabinus hostibus in contemptiōnem venīret,³ tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebēret³ ut iam hostēs ad moeniā castrōrum accēdere audērent.³ Id eā dē

¹ See 321, b, 3.

² The abl. of *locus* is often used without a preposition.

³ Reasons for mood and tense? See 369, 370.

causā Sabīnus faciēbat quod cum tantā multitudīne, praesertim eō absente quī summam imperī tenēbat, contendere nōlēbat. Hāc opīniōne timōris cōfirmatā quendam hominem idōneum dēlēgit, Gallum ex iis quōs auxili causā sēcum habēbat, et eum prō perfugā ad hostis misit. Quī ubi ad eōs vēnit timōrem Rōmānōrum nūntiāvit.

532. Root *cad-*, *fall*.

cadō, I fall *accidō, happen* *cadāver, dead body*
cāsus, accident *discēdō, depart* *discessus, —?*

ENG. DER. — Case, casual, accident, secede, ancestor, success.

533.

WORD LIST XI

adorior	importō	nisi	recipiō	tuba
aequāliter	incitō	peragō	relanguēscō	undique
circumveniō	īnstō	permittō	saepēs	valeō
clam	interneciō	plānitiēs	sequor	vergō
conligō	lacrima	prīstinus	sē recipere	vigilia
cōnsistō	lapis	prōiciō	sī	vinum
dēficiō	memoria	proximē	temptō	
frūstrā	mulier	ratiō	testūdō	

LESSON 72

PRONOUN REVIEW — THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, IRREGULAR VERBS — READING LESSON

Review classes and forms of pronouns. See 319.

534. *ferō* *nōlō* *eō* *sum* *fiō*

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	ACTIVE	ACTIVE	ACTIVE
<i>Pres. S. 2.</i>	<i>fer</i>	<i>ferre</i>	<i>nōli</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>fi</i>
<i>Pl. 2.</i>	<i>ferte</i>	<i>ferimini</i>	<i>nōlite</i>	<i>ite</i>	<i>este</i>	<i>fite</i>

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	ACTIVE	ACTIVE
<i>Fut. S. 2.</i>	fertō	fertor	nōlitō	itō	estō
3.	fertō	fertor	nōlitō	itō	estō
<i>Pl. 2.</i>	fertōte	—	nōlitōte	itōte	estōte
3.	feruntō	feruntor	nōluntō	euntō	suntō

a. How does the inflection of these verbs differ from that of the regular verbs? Compare forms in 526.

535.

VOCABULARY

currus, -ūs, m., <i>chariot</i>	administrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>manage</i>
Liger, -eris, m., <i>the Loire</i> or <i>Liger, a river in Gaul</i>	aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>build</i>
praemium, praemi, n., <i>reward,</i> <i>prize</i>	auferō, -ferre, abstuli, ablā- tus, <i>bear away or off</i>
Venetī, -ōrum, m. pl., <i>the</i> <i>Veneti, a people of Gaul</i>	ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>equip</i>
apertus, -a, -um, <i>open</i>	vehō, -ere, vēxi, vectus, <i>bear,</i> <i>carry; currū vehi, ride in</i> <i>a chariot; equō or equis</i> <i>vehi, ride on horseback</i>
recēns, gen. -entis, <i>fresh,</i> <i>recent</i>	

536.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Fer, ferte, feruntor, fertor, nōlite, nōlitō, nōlitōte, ferimini, fi, fite, estō. 2. Ferte militibus prō recentī victōriā multa et magna praemia. 3. Ōrnāte nāvīs, militēs, et amicōs in Ītaliā ferte. 4. Administrāte, tribūnī, diligenter omnīs rēs, et prō patriā fortiter pugnāte. 5. Este fortēs in periculō subitō, et praemia victōriā auferete. 6. Currū per ordinēs hostium vehere et, si necesse erit, prō patriā morere. 7. Aedificāte multās nāvīs in flūmine Ligerī et ad Venetōs celeriter ite.

II. 1. Fight bravely for your country, soldiers, in order to bear off the rewards of victory. 2. Do not cast the

anchor from the boat, but sail quickly to Delos. 3. Equip your boat with oars, for it is necessary to go to Athens. 4. Drive your chariot through the open places in order that you may not be frightened by any sudden danger. 5. Do not retain the ambassadors in your camp. 6. Become wiser and better every day. 7. Ride on horseback to the river Loire. 8. Build boats near the bank of the river.

537.

READING LESSON

His rēbus auditis omnēs Gallī conclāmant ad castra Rōmānōrum ire necesse esse. Locus castrōrum ēditus erat. Hūc magnīs itineribus contendērunt ut quam minimum spatī¹ ad sē conligendōs² armandōsque Rōmānis darētur, exanimātique pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea onera quae ferēbant, subitō duābus portis ēruptiōnem fierī iussit. Factum est virtūte militum et aliīs dē causis ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum sustinērent et statim terga verterent. Quōs impeditōs militēs nostrī integrīs viribus secūti magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt. Ubi Gallī dē his victōriis certiōrēs factī sunt, sē suaque omnia statim dēdidērunt.

538. Root *col-*, *till*.

<i>colō, I till, inhabit</i>	<i>incolō, I inhabit</i>	<i>agricola, —?</i>
<i>colōnus, tiller, colonist</i>	<i>incola, —?</i>	<i>agricultūra, —?</i>
<i>cultus, cultivation</i>	<i>colōnia, —?</i>	<i>incultus, —?</i> ³

Form English derivatives.

¹ as little time as possible.

² Explain construction.

³ Here the prefix *in* has a negative force.



A ROMAN CHARIOT RACE.

LESSON 73

GENERAL VERB REVIEW — THE SUPINE — EXPRESSIONS
OF PURPOSE — READING LESSON

Make a careful review of all verbs as given in the appendix. Be able to give, with meaning, any form of the indicative, imperative, infinitive, and participle. Be able also to give any subjunctive form.

539. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension found only in the accusative singular (former supine) and in the ablative singular (latter supine): **rogātum, rogātū**.

540. In the sentence, **Lēgāti pācem petitum vēnērunt**, *the ambassadors came to seek peace*, **petitum**, the former supine, is used with **vēnērunt**, and expresses the purpose for which the ambassadors came.

541.

RULE

The Former Supine. — *The former supine is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion.*

542. Note the sentences:—

1. **Hoc est difficile factū**, *this is difficult to do (in respect to the doing)*.

2. **Hoc est fās dictū**, *this is right to say*.

Here **factū** and **dictū** express acts in respect to which the quality is asserted.

543.

RULE

The Latter Supine. — *The latter supine is used with some adjectives and a few other words to express the act in reference to which the quality is asserted.*

544. You have already learned several ways of expressing purpose. The following sentences illustrate the most common of these : —

Lēgātī vēnērunt	}	1. ut pācem peterent,	} <i>ambassadors came to seek peace.</i>
		2. qui pācem peterent,	
		3. pācis petendae causā,	
		4. pācem petendi causā,	
		5. ad pācem petendam,	
		6. pācem petitum,	

a. Here purpose is expressed by : —

1. A clause with *ut* and the subjunctive.
2. A clause with the relative pronoun and the subjunctive.
- 3, 4. The gerundive or gerund with *causā*.
5. The gerundive in the accusative with *ad*.
6. The former supine with a verb of motion.

545.

VOCABULARY

ascēnsus, -ūs, m., <i>ascent</i>	<i>gate</i> , because here the
ēruptiō, -ōnis, f., <i>sally</i>	tenth legion was stationed
fās, indecl. noun, n., <i>right</i>	repentinus, -a, -um, <i>sudden</i> ,
speciēs, -ēi, f., <i>appearance</i>	<i>unexpected</i>
supplex, -icis, m. and f., <i>sup-</i> <i>pliant</i>	singulāris, -e, <i>singular</i> , <i>re-</i> <i>markable</i>
decumānus, -a, -um, <i>belong-</i> <i>ing to the tenth</i> ; hence	grātulor, -āri, -ātus sum, <i>con-</i> <i>gratulate</i>
porta decumāna, <i>the rear</i>	

546.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmam iit Caesarem grātulātum, domum ibit patrem visum. 2. Difficile est dictū, optimum erat factū,

fās erat auditū. 3. Facile est dictū Germānōs ā Gallis superārī posse. 4. In agrōs Aeduōrum duae legiōnēs frūmentātum (ad frūmentandum, frūmentandī causā) mis-sae sunt. 5. Missī sunt ut satis magnam cōpiam pābuli domum auferrent. 6. Caesar ad eōs lēgātōs misit quī dicerent sē eōs in dēditiōnem acceptūrum (esse). 7. Ēruptiōne factā ē portā decumānā iērunt et ad collem difficili ascēnsū sē recēpērunt. 8. Equī singulārī speciē duo frātrēs in proelium portāvērunt. 9. Repentinō periculō territī supplicēs ad Caesarem pācem petitum contendērunt.

II. 1. They came to congratulate the suppliants, we hold in memory that which is difficult to say. 2. In the memory of our fathers the Gauls made a sally from their towns to attack the enemy. 3. They came to ask aid (*four ways*). 4. The suppliants ask what is best to say, hear, do. 5. The memory of all these things was fresh in their minds.

547.

READING LESSON

Eōdem fere tempore¹ P. Crassus, cum in Aquitāniam pervēnisset nōn parvam diligentiam¹ sibi¹ adhibendam esse¹ cōgnōvit. Itaque, rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliis equitātūque comparātō,² multis praetereā viris convocātis, in Sontiātum finis exercitum dūxit, cuius adventū cōgnitō,¹ Sontiātēs magnis cōpiis equitātūque coactis³ in itinere in agmen nostrum impetum fēcērunt. Primum equestre proelium commiserunt, deinde, equitātū suō pulsō atque

¹ Construction ?² Notice agreement and compare with footnote 3.³ Notice agreement and compare with footnote 2. An adjective or participle may agree with the nearer of two nouns, or may be in the plural to agree with both.



THE VICTOR IN A CHARIOT RACE.

a. FIRST (ACTIVE) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION
INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	vocātūrus ¹ sum, etc., <i>I am about to call, I intend to call, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	vocātūrus eram, etc., <i>I was about to call, etc.</i>
<i>Future</i>	vocātūrus erō, etc., <i>I shall be about to call, etc.</i>
<i>Perfect</i>	vocātūrus fui, etc., <i>I was about to call, etc.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	vocātūrus fueram, etc., <i>I had been about to call, etc.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	vocātūrus fuerō, etc., <i>I shall have been about to call, etc.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>	vocātūrus sim, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	vocātūrus essem, etc.
<i>Perfect</i>	vocātūrus fuerim, etc.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	vocātūrus fuisset, etc.

INFINITIVE

<i>Present</i>	vocātūrus esse, <i>to be about to call</i>
<i>Perfect</i>	vocātūrus fuisse, <i>to have been about to call</i>

b. SECOND (PASSIVE) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION
INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	vocandus ¹ sum, etc., <i>I must or ought to be called, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	vocandus eram, etc., <i>I had to be called, etc.</i>
<i>Future</i>	vocandus erō, etc., <i>I shall have to be called, etc.</i>
<i>Perfect</i>	vocandus fui, etc., <i>I had to be called, etc.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	vocandus fueram, etc., <i>I had had to be called, etc.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	vocandus fuerō, etc., <i>I shall have had to be called, etc.</i>

¹ Of course the participle is inflected to agree with the subject.

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>	vocandus sim, etc.
<i>Imperf.</i>	vocandus essem, etc.
<i>Perfect</i>	vocandus fuerim, etc.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	vocandus fuisset, etc.

INFINITIVE

<i>Present</i>	vocandus esse, <i>to have to be called</i>
<i>Perfect</i>	vocandus fuisse, <i>to have had to be called</i>

550. Examine the following :—

1. *Quaerō quid factūrus sit, I ask what he intends to do, is going to do, will do.*

2. *Quaesivī quid factūrus esset, I asked what he intended to do, etc.*

a. In the indirect questions in the above, forms of the first periphrastic conjugation take the place of the lacking future subjunctive. Note that the law of sequence of tenses holds.

551. Study carefully the following sentences and observe the difference between the Latin and the English idiom :—

1. *Signum Caesari dandum erat, Caesar had to give the signal (the signal was to Caesar to be given, the signal had to be given by Caesar).*

2. *Militibus ad montem currendum erat, the soldiers had to run to the mountain (it was to the soldiers to be run to the mountain).*

a. In the above sentences duty, obligation, or necessity is implied, and the name of the person upon whom the duty, obligation, or necessity rests is in the dative case.

Intransitive verbs, as is seen in 2, are used impersonally in this construction.

552.

RULE

The Dative of the Agent. — *To express the person upon whom a duty, obligation, or necessity rests, the second periphrastic conjugation with the dative of the agent is used.*

553.

VOCABULARY

latus, -eris, n., <i>side, flank, wing (of an army)</i>	uterque, -traque, -trumque, <i>each, both</i>
supplicātiō, -ōnis, f., <i>thanksgiving</i>	dēcernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētus, <i>decree</i>
iniquus, -a, -um, <i>uneven, unfavorable</i>	refringō, -ere, -frēgi, -fractus, <i>break down</i>
ūniversus, -a, -um, <i>as a whole, entire</i>	quā, adv., <i>where</i>

554.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Supplicātiōnēs dēcernendae sunt, erant, fuērunt, fuerint. 2. Mihi scrībendum est, fuerat, fuerit, fuit. 3. Lēgātus septimam legiōnem ad collem missūrus est, erat, fuerat. 4. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore agenda sunt. 5. Castra nōbis mūnienda erant postquam cōpiās nostrās flūmen trādūximus. 6. Aciēs instruenda, sīgnum dandum, militēs ab opere revocandī sunt.¹ 7. Dēditione factā, nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs esse existimāvērunt. 8. Omnibus cōpiis subitō ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt, quā ascēsus ad nostra castra faciliōr vidēbātur. 9. Sinistrō latere pugnandum erat. 10. In utrīsque lateribus militēs cōstituendī erant.

¹ Note agreement of **sunt** with its nearest subject.

II. 1. I must speak, he is about to go, they will have to come. 2. The signal has to be given, messengers will have to be sent. 3. Caesar had to draw up a line of battle. 4. The lieutenant thought that he ought to occupy the hill. 5. He said that the senate intended to decree a thanksgiving. 6. They are about to come into an uneven place for the purpose of fighting. 7. The wall of the camp had to be broken down.

555. READING LESSON

Obsidibus¹ acceptis Crassus in finis Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbari commōti, quod oppidum et nātūrā et manū mūnitum paucis diēbus expugnātum erat, lēgātōs in omnis partīs mittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Lēgātī mittuntur etiam ad eās civitātēs quae Aquitāniae finitimae sunt. Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā cum hominum multitudīne, bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs² vērō iī dēliguntur quī summam scientiam rei militāris habēre existimantur. Hi loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere coepērunt. Proelium autem nōn commisērunt, sed exspectābant³ quid cōnsili nostrī caperent.



PRAETORIAN GUARDS.

¹ Explain this and all other ablatives in the passage.

² Appositive with iī, as leaders.

³ were waiting to see.

LESSON 75

REVIEW OF CASE CONSTRUCTIONS — COMPLEX SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE — READING LESSON

Make a careful review of 24, 26, 27, 29, 34, 97, 120, 137, 155, 161, 168, 181, 187. You have become familiar, through repeated practice, with the construction of the simple sentence in indirect discourse. Review carefully 223–230, 354, et seq., also the Law of Sequence of Tenses (277, 278, 394, Note).

556. The following examples illustrate the changing of complex sentences from the direct to the indirect form.

DIRECT STATEMENT

Vir quem laudō meus amicus est, the man whom I am praising is my friend.

INDIRECT STATEMENT

Primary Sequence :

<i>Dicit, he says</i>	}	virum quem laudet suum amicum esse, that the man whom he is praising is his friend.
<i>Dicet, he will say</i>		
<i>Dixerit, he will have said</i>		

Secondary Sequence :

<i>Dicēbat, he was saying</i>	}	virum quem laudāret suum amicum esse, that the man whom he was praising was his friend.
<i>Dixit, he said</i>		
<i>Dixerat, he had said</i>		

557. In changing a complex sentence from the direct to the indirect form remember the following points : —

1. The principal verbs follow the law of simple sentences and have tenses of the infinitive according to 354.

2. The subordinate verbs are in the subjunctive and follow the sequence of the introductory verb of saying.

3. Changes may take place in the person of the verb, the pronoun, or the pronominal adjective (354, Note, 1, 2).

NOTE. — All imperatives, and nearly all interrogative principal verbs, become subjunctives in the indirect discourse.

a. Remember that in the principal clause in the indirect discourse: —

1. The present infinitive stands for the present indicative of the direct.

2. The perfect infinitive stands for the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative of the direct.

3. The future infinitive stands for the future and future perfect indicative of the direct.

558. Study carefully the following examples: —

DIRECT

Virum quem omnēs laudant vidēbō, I shall see the man whom all are praising.

INDIRECT

Primary Sequence:

Dicit, he says	}	sē virum quem omnēs laudent
Dicet, he will say		visūrum esse, that he will see
Dixerit, he will have said		the man whom all are praising.

Secondary Sequence:

Dicēbat, he was saying	}	sē virum quem omnēs laudārent
Dixit, he said		visūrum esse, that he would see
Dixerat, he had said		the man whom all were praising.

DIRECT

Virum quem omnēs laudant vidi, I saw the man whom all are praising.

INDIRECT

Primary Sequence :

Dicit, <i>he says</i>	}	sē virum quem omnēs laudārent
Dicet, <i>he will say</i>		vidisse, that he saw the man
Dixerit, <i>he will have said</i>		whom all are praising.

Secondary Sequence :

Dicēbat, <i>he was saying</i>	}	sē virum quem omnēs laudārent
Dixit, <i>he said</i>		vidisse, that he saw or had
Dixerat, <i>he had said</i>		seen the man whom all were
		praising.

You see in the last examples that the subordinate verb **laudārent** follows the sequence of the perfect infinitive **vidisse** instead of that of the introductory verb of saying, and is in a secondary tense. This is regular when the perfect infinitive stands for the historical perfect (204, *b*) of the indicative.

559.

VOCABULARY

dolus, -i, m., <i>trick, fraud, deceit</i>	admiror, -āri, -ātus sum, <i>admire, wonder at</i>
gēns, gentis, f., <i>tribe</i>	nanciscor, -i, nactus sum, <i>get, obtain</i>
mūnitio, -ōnis, f., <i>fortification</i>	igitur, adv., <i>therefore</i> (seldom first in its clause)
servitūs, -ūtis, f., <i>slavery</i>	nūper, adv., <i>recently</i>
arduus, -a, -um, <i>steep</i>	
praeceps, -cipitis, <i>headlong</i>	

560.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Vidit equitēs, quod hostēs secūtī essent, ad collis sē praecipitēs recēpisse. 2. Dicit sē montis quōs videat

ascēnsūrum esse. 3. Dicit eum montis quōs videat ascēnsūrum esse. 4. Dicit sē, qui liber nunc sit, numquam in servitūtem ventūrum esse. 5. Gallī dicunt iniuriās quās accēperint magnās esse. 6. Nūntius dixit omnīs nātiōnēs quae nūper pācātae essent, coniūrātiōnem fēcisse. 7. Dicit sē pācem nanciscī nōn posse quod inimicī suī per dolōs sibi obsistant.

II. 1. He said that both camps which Caesar had pitched were being attacked by the Gauls. 2. I know why the enemy will not fight, he says that he knows why the enemy will not fight. 3. You wonder at the boldness



STANDARD BEARER AND SOLDIERS.

which Caesar showed, I know that you wonder at the boldness which Caesar showed. 4. He knows that he cannot blot out the disgrace of flight because he began it (made the beginning of it). 5. He says that he knows why they began the flight, therefore he blames them.

561. SPECIAL EXERCISES ON THE GENITIVE, DATIVE, AND ACCUSATIVE

I. 1. Agger eius mūnitiōnis quīndecim pedum in longitūdinem est. 2. Duo milia passuum ab hōc locō aberat Caesar. 3. Cōnsul sua et senātūs cōnsilia tribūnis mili-

tum retulit. 4. Dixerunt consulem sua et senatus consilia multis et fortibus viris retulisse. 5. Athenas et Romam ibit, urbes claras et pulchras, ut ibi multos mores multarum gentium videat. 6. Genavam iit ut de consiliis Helvetiorum cognosceret. 7. Omnes dicunt eum amicis favere, inimicis autem non nocere. 8. Putaverunt eas res Caesaris curae futurae esse. 9. Propter iter facile per provinciam nostram ire constituerunt. 10. Virum, quem ducem delegerant, de omnibus rebus statim certiores fecerunt.

II. 1. This boy's father is a man of great influence in many states. 2. For nine days the army remained across the river Rhine, then the commander set out for Rome. 3. He said that his sister was unlike many other girls. 4. I think that it will be very disagreeable to march for many hours along this steep and difficult road. 5. A wall of great height and a ditch of great width were a defense to this town.

562.

READING LESSON

Quod¹ ubi Crassus animadvertit, concilium convocavit et posterum diem pugnae constituit.² Prima luce productis omnibus copiis, duplici acie instructa, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis,³ expectabat quid consilii hostes caperent. Illi, quamquam propter multitudinem suam et veterem belli gloriam se tuto pugnare existimabant, tamen tutius esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, commeatum intercluso, sine ulla vulnere victoria⁴ potiri, et, si propter inopiam frumenti Romani sese recipere coepissent, impeditos in agmine adoriri cogitabant. Hoc consilio probato,

¹ And when Crassus perceived this.

² appointed.

³ having brought together.

⁴ See 408.

hostēs, Rōmānōrum cōpiis ab ducibus prōductis, sēsē castris tenēbant.

LESSON 76

REVIEW OF CASE CONSTRUCTIONS (*Continued*)— READING LESSON

Review carefully 212, 218, 239, 266, 290, 298, 314, 364, 408, 416, 444, 460, 474. Make table of ablative uses, with an example of each.

563.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Hōc proeliō factō, pontem in Ararī fēcit atque ita exercitum trādūxit. 2. Ā militibus dē mūrīs lapidibus telisque dēiectis, brevī tempore oppidum captum est. 3. Dīcunt Germānōs hominēs magnā statūrā atque incrēdibilibus viribus corporum esse. 4. Gallī paucōs magnitudīne corporum praestant, multōs autem vī animī. 5. Sī proeliō abstinēbit, multis perīculis liberābitur. 6. Cōnsiliū bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae ā Gallis captum erat. 7. Dux duābus legiōnibus in hostis impetum fēcit, sed brevī tempore in fugam conversus est. 8. Dīcunt Caesarem Dumnorigem reprehendisse cupiditāte rēgni, Dīviciacū autem liberālitāte laudāvisse. 9. Primā hōrā ē castris Helvētiōrum ad Rhēnum finisque Germānōrum contendimus. 10. Arbitrātus est eās legiōnēs quās in Galliā cōscriberet nōn fortiōris esse quam eās quās sēcum dūxisset.



ROMAN GENERAL.

II. 1. We saw in Gaul many men of small stature, bright eyes, and great strength of body. 2. Many men of great courage came from Germany to seize the territory of the Gauls. 3. Caesar ordered his men to fight bravely with their swords and keep the enemy from the march. 4. Having accomplished all these things, they set out for Athens in order to see the beautiful buildings of that famous city. 5. Having given hostages and established peace, the Gauls crossed the river and returned home.

564.

READING LESSON

Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum hostēs suā cūnctātiōne atque opiniōne timōris nostrōs ācriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, cohortātus suōs ad hostium castra contendit. Ibi cum aliī¹ fossās complērent² aliī,¹ multis tēlis coniectis, dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent,² equitēs, quī castra hostium circumierant, Crassō nūntiāvērunt nōn eādē diligentiā omnibus locis castra mūnita esse et facile aditum habēre. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, quid fieri vellet² ostendit. Illī, ut³ erat imperātum, ēductis iis cohortibus quae praesidiō⁴ castris⁴ relictæ erant, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eās, quās diximus, mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt, et prius⁵ castris potiti sunt quam⁵ plānē ab hīs vidēri aut quid gereretur cōgnōscī posset. Hāc victoriā audītā maxima pars Aquitāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque mīsit.

¹ See 379 and note.

² Explain subjunctive, also use of tense.

³ Not *that*.

⁴ See 297, 298.

⁵ See 398, footnote 4.

LESSON 77

REVIEW OF CLAUSE CONSTRUCTIONS, GERUND, GERUNDIVE, SUPINE—READING LESSON—WORD LIST XII

565. 1. Review 61, 283, 377, 461, 490, 492, 493. Remember that the indicative is the mood of fact in statements or questions. Distinguish its use from that of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses—relative, causal, concessive, and temporal.

2. Review 271, 1, *a-d*, 283, 295, 369, 377, 394, 461, 492. Make a table of subjunctive uses in independent clauses and in clauses of purpose, result, characteristic or description, cause, concession, and time, and in indirect questions.

3. Review 426-428, 434, 435. Distinguish between the gerund (a verbal noun) and the gerundive (a verbal adjective). When may the gerund with an object be used? When must the gerundive be substituted for the gerund with an object?

4. Review 539-544. State ways of expressing purpose, with an example of each.

5. Review 125, 127, 129, 223-230, 354, 394, 556, 557. Make a table of infinitive uses, including that in indirect discourse. What is the mood of the subordinate clause in an indirect statement or question? What law do its tenses follow? What is the law of tenses in the principal clause?

566.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Funditōrēs sagittāriique magnā exercitātiōne atque summā celeritāte Caesarī auxiliō veniunt. 2. Nōne strepitus discēdentis exercitūs magnus est? 3. Cum in Galliam veniet multa ācria proelia faciet. 4. Cum in Galliam vēnisset multa proelia fēcit. 5. Dicit sē, cum



CIRCUS MAXIMUS.

in Galliam vēnerit, multa proelia factūrum esse. 6. Caesar nōn est is quī suis amīcis iniūriam faciat. 7. Postquā turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlēvit suō imperātōrī grātus erat. 8. Vir bellī gerendī cupidus imperātōrī suō nōn molestus erit. 9. Bellum gerendī causā in terram inimīcam iit. 10. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās lēgātum Rōmam misit. 11. Tam ācritēr pugnātum est ut nullus hostis effugeret. 12. Vereor nē Caesar tōtam Galliam ad servitūtem redigat. 13. Pācem petītum ad ducem hostium vēnit.

II. 1. He came to seek ¹ peace, but remained for the purpose of waging war.² 2. There were (some) who asked why we were going to Athens. 3. The time is not suitable for establishing peace. 4. Who is there who will not defend his country if the enemy come to wage war? 5. Caesar encouraged his (men) to fight bravely. 6. When Caesar was in Cisalpine³ Gaul frequent rumors were brought to him. 7. Since Caesar is our leader let us be brave. 8. Although the river was deep they crossed it without boats.

567.

READING LESSON

Eōdem fere tempore Caesar, quod Morini⁴ Menapiique⁴ supererant, quī in armīs erant neque⁵ ad eum lēgātōs dē pāce miserant, contrā eōs exercitum dūxit.⁶ Illi, quod magnās silvās et palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia

¹ Use *supine*.

² Gerund or gerundive? See 426-428, 434, 435.

³ Use proper form of *citerior*.

⁴ Tribes in northern Gaul.

⁵ *and . . . not*.

⁶ Write the principal parts of all verbs in this Reading Lesson. Give infinitives and participles of the same.

contulērunt. Ad initium eārum silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre coepisset, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque, multīs interfectīs, in silvās reppulērunt. Deinde insecūtae sunt tempestātēs eiusmodi ut militēs nostrī diūtius in castris continēri nōn possent. Quārē Caesar exercitum redūxit et in hibernis conlocāvit.

568.

WORD LIST XII

administrō	dēcernō	inīquus	praemium	supplex
admiror	decumānus	latus	quā	supplicātiō
aedificō	dolus	Liger	recēns	ūniversus
apertus	ēruptiō	mūnitiō	refringō	uterque
arduus	fās	nancīscor	repentīnus	vehō
ascēsus	gēns	nūper	servitūs	Venetī
auferō	grātulor	ōrnō	singulāris	
currus	igitur	praeceps	speciēs	

TABLES OF DECLENSIONS

TYPICAL NOUNS

569.

FIRST DECLENSION

Stem ending *ā*

Stem, *silvā* Base, *silv-*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. <i>silva, f.</i>	<i>silvae</i>
G. <i>silvae</i>	<i>silvārum</i>
D. <i>silvae</i>	<i>silvis</i>
Ac. <i>silvam</i>	<i>silvās</i>
V. <i>silva</i>	<i>silvae</i>
Ab. <i>silvā</i>	<i>silvis</i>

570.

SECOND DECLENSION

Stem ending *o*

Stem, <i>lēgāto-</i>	bello-	gladio-	puero-	agrō-	viro-
Base, <i>lēgāt-</i>	bell-	gladi-	puer-	agr-	vir-
SINGULAR					
N. <i>lēgātus, m.</i>	<i>bellum, n.</i>	<i>gladius, m.</i>	<i>puer, m.</i>	<i>ager, m.</i>	<i>vir, m.</i>
G. <i>lēgātī</i>	<i>bellī</i>	<i>gladiī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>
D. <i>lēgātō</i>	<i>bellō</i>	<i>gladiō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>
Ac. <i>lēgātum</i>	<i>bellum</i>	<i>gladium</i>	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>
V. <i>lēgāte</i>	<i>bellum</i>	<i>gladie</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>
Ab. <i>lēgātō</i>	<i>bellō</i>	<i>gladiō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>

PLURAL

N. <i>lēgātī</i>	<i>bella</i>	<i>gladiī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>
G. <i>lēgātōrum</i>	<i>bellōrum</i>	<i>gladiōrum</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>
D. <i>lēgātīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>	<i>gladiīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>
Ac. <i>lēgātōs</i>	<i>bella</i>	<i>gladiōs</i>	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>
V. <i>lēgātī</i>	<i>bella</i>	<i>gladiī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>
Ab. <i>lēgātīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>	<i>gladiīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>

571.

THIRD DECLENSION

Stem ending with consonant			
Stem, duc-	milit-	legiōn-	corpor-
Base, duc-	milit-	legiōn-	corpor-
SINGULAR			
N. V. dux, m.	mīles, m.	legiō, f.	corpus, n.
G. ducis	militis	legiōnis	corporis
D. ducī	militī	legiōni	corpori
Ac. ducem	militem	legiōnem	corpūs
Ab. duce	militē	legiōne	corpore
PLURAL			
N. V. ducēs	militēs	legiōnēs	corpora
G. ducum	militum	legiōnum	corporum
D. ducibus	militibus	legiōnibus	corporibus
Ac. ducēs	militēs	legiōnēs	corpora
Ab. ducibus	militibus	legiōnibus	corporibus

572.

Stem ending i

Stem, hosti-	turri-	sedili-	urbi-
Base, host-	turr-	sedil-	urb-
SINGULAR			
N. V. hostis, m. f.	turris, f.	sedile, n.	urbs, f.
G. hostis	turris	sedilis	urbis
D. hostī	turri	sedili	urbi
Ac. hostem	turrim (-em)	sedile	urbem
Ab. hostī (-e)	turri (-e)	sedili	urbe
PLURAL			
N. V. hostēs	turrēs	sedilia	urbēs
G. hostium	turrium	sedilium	urbium
D. hostibus	turribus	sedilibus	urbibus
Ac. hostis (-ēs)	turris (-ēs)	sedilia	urbis (-ēs)
Ab. hostibus	turribus	sedilibus	urbibus

573.

Stem ending irregular

Stems, iter- and itiner-	senec- and sen-	vi- and vir-
Bases, iter- and itiner-	senec- and sen-	v- and vir-

SINGULAR			
N. V.	iter, n.	senex, m.	vis, f.
G.	itineris	senis	(vis)
D.	itinerī	senī	(vi)
Ac.	iter	senem	vim
Ab.	itinere	sene	vī

PLURAL			
N. V.	itinerā	senēs	vīrēs
G.	itinerum	senum	virium
D.	itineribus	senibus	viribus
Ac.	itinerā	senēs	vīrēs
Ab.	itineribus	senibus	viribus

574. **FOURTH DECLENSION**

Stem ending u

Stem, cāsū-	domu-	cornu-
Base, cās-	dom-	corn-

SINGULAR

N. V.	cāsus, m.	domus, f.	cornū, n.
G.	cāsūs	domūs (-i)	cornūs
D.	cāsūī	domūī (-ō)	cornū
Ac.	cāsūm	domūm	cornū
Ab.	cāsū	domō (-ū)	cornū

PLURAL

N. V.	cāsūs	domūs	cornua
G.	cāsuum	domuum (-ōrum)	cornuum
D.	cāsibus	domibus	cornibus
Ac.	cāsūs	domōs (-ūs)	cornua
Ab.	cāsibus	domibus	cornibus

575. **FIFTH DECLENSION**

Stem ending ē

Stem, diē-	Stem, rē-
Base, di-	Base, r-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	diēs, m. f.	diēs	rēs, f.	rēs
G.	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
D.	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

576.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

ā- and o-stems

Stems, fido-, fidā-, fido- misero-, miserā-, misero-
Base, fid- miser-

SINGULAR

N.	fidus	fida	fidum	miser	misera	miserum
G.	fidī	fidae	fidī	miserī	miserae	miserī
D.	fidō	fidae	fidō	miserō	miserae	miserō
Ac.	fidum	fidam	fidum	miserum	miseram	miserum
V.	fidē	fida	fidum	miser	misera	miserum
Ab.	fidō	fidā	fidō	miserō	miserā	miserō

PLURAL

N. V.	fidī	fidae	fida	miserī	miserae	misera
G.	fidōrum	fidārum	fidōrum	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D.	fidīs	fidis	fidīs	miserīs	miseris	miseris
Ac.	fidōs	fidās	fida	miserōs	miserās	misera
Ab.	fidīs	fidis	fidīs	miserīs	miseris	miseris

Stems, nostro-, nostrā-, nostro- Base, nostr-

SINGULAR

N. V.	noster	nostra	nostrum
G.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī
D.	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō
Ac.	nostrum	nostram	nostrum
Ab.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō

		PLURAL	
N. V.	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
G.	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
D.	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
Ac.	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
Ab.	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

577.

THIRD DECLENSION

Three terminations ; i-stems
Stem, ācri- Base, ācr-

		SINGULAR	
N. V.	ācer	ācris	ācre
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
		PLURAL	
N. V.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
Ab.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

578.

Two terminations ; i-stems
Stem, facili- Base, facil-

		SINGULAR		PLURAL	
N.V.	facilis	facile		facilēs	facilia
G.	facilis	facilis		facilium	facilium
D.	facili	facili		facilibus	facilibus
Ac.	facilem	facile		facilis (-ēs)	facilia
Ab.	facili	facili		facilibus	facilibus

579.

One termination ; consonant stems
Stem, ferāc- Base, ferāc-

		SINGULAR		PLURAL	
N. V.	ferāx	ferāx		ferācēs	ferācia
G.	ferācis	ferācis		ferācium	ferācium
D.	ferāci	ferāci		ferācibus	ferācibus

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Ac.	ferācem	ferāx	ferācis (-ēs)	ferācia
Ab.	ferāci (-e)	ferāci (-e)	ferācibus	ferācibus

580.

Comparative; consonant stems

Stem, fortior- Base, fortior-

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
N. V.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
G.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
D.	fortiōri	fortiōri	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Ac.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōris (-ēs)	fortiōra
Ab.	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

581.

Present participle; consonant stems

Stem, vocant- Base, vocant-

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
N. V.	vocāns	vocāns	vocantēs	vocantia
G.	vocantis	vocantis	vocantium	vocantium
D.	vocanti	vocanti	vocantibus	vocantibus
Ac.	vocantem	vocāns	vocantēs	vocantia
Ab.	vocanti (-e)	vocanti (-e)	vocantibus	vocantibus

582.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

SINGULAR

N.	ūllus	ūlla	ūllum	uter	utra	utrum
G.	ūllius	ūllius	ūllius	utrius	utrius	utrius
D.	ūlli	ūlli	ūlli	utri	utri	utri
Ac.	ūllum	ūllam	ūllum	utrum	utram	utrum
Ab.	ūllō	ūllā	ūllō	utrō	utrā	utrō

PLURAL

N.	ūlli	ūllae	ūlla	utri	utrae	utra
G.	ūllōrum	ūllārum	ūllōrum	utrōrum	utrārum	utrōrum
D.	ūllis	ūllis	ūllis	utris	utris	utris
Ac.	ūllōs	ūllās	ūlla	utrōs	utrās	utra
Ab.	ūllis	ūllis	ūllis	utris	utris	utris

LIST OF ADJECTIVES DECLINED AS ABOVE

alius alter neuter nullus solus totus ullus unus uter

583. duo, trēs, AND mille

PLURAL					
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	tribus	tribus
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, tris	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

SINGULAR		PLURAL
N.	mille	milia
G.	—	mīllum
D.	—	milibus
Ac.	mille	milia
Ab.	—	milibus

584. TABLE OF COMPARISONS

cārus	cārior	cāriissimus	īferus	īferior	īfimus
fortis	fortior	fortissimus			īmus
gracilis	gracilior	gracillimus	cis	citerior	citimus
ācer	ācrior	ācerrimus	in, intrā	interior	intimus
bonus	melior	optimus	prae, prō	prior	prīmus
malus	peior	pessimus	prope	propior	proximus
magnus	maior	maximus	ultrā	ulterior	ultimus
parvus	minor	minimus	posterus	posterior	postrēmus
multus	plūs	plūrimus			postumus
exterus	exterior	extrēmus	superus	superior	suprēmus
		extimus			summus

585. PRONOUNS

SINGULAR			PERSONAL		PLURAL
N.	ego	tū ¹	nōs		vōs
G.	mei	tui	nostrum (-i)		vestrum (-i)
D.	mihi	tibi	nōbīs		vōbīs
Ac.	mē	tē	nōs		vōs
Ab.	mē	tē	nōbīs		vōbīs

¹ In tū and ipse the vocative is like the nominative; it is lacking in the other pronouns.

586.

REFLEXIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	—	—
G.	sui	sui
D.	sibi	sibi
Ac.	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē
Ab.	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē

587.

DEMONSTRATIVE

SINGULAR

N.	hic	haec	hoc	is	ea	id
G.	huius	huius	huius	eius	eius	eius
D.	huic	huic	huic	eī	eī	eī
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hoc	eum	eam	id
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	eō	eā	eō

PLURAL

N.	hī	hae	haec	eī (īī)	eae	ea
G.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	hīs	hīs	hīs	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)
Ac.	hōs	hās	haec	eōs	eās	ea
Ab.	hīs	hīs	hīs	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)

SINGULAR

N.	ille ¹	illa	illud	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
G.	illius	illius	illius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
D.	illī	illī	illī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Ac.	illum	illam	illud	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Ab.	illō	illā	illō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

PLURAL

N.	illī	illae	illa	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	illis	illis	illis	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac.	illōs	illās	illa	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	illis	illis	illis	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

¹ iste is declined like ille.

	SINGULAR		
N. <i>idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>		<i>idem</i>
G. <i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>		<i>eiusdem</i>
D. <i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>		<i>eīdem</i>
Ac. <i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>		<i>idem</i>
Ab. <i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>		<i>eōdem</i>

	PLURAL		
N. <i>idem (eīdem)</i>	<i>eaedem</i>		<i>eadem</i>
G. <i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>		<i>eōrundem</i>
D. <i>iīdem (eīdem)</i>	<i>iīdem (eīdem)</i>		<i>iīdem (eīdem)</i>
Ac. <i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>		<i>eadem</i>
Ab. <i>iīdem (eīdem)</i>	<i>iīdem (eīdem)</i>		<i>iīdem (eīdem)</i>

588.

RELATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
N. <i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>	
G. <i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	
D. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	
Ac. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>	
Ab. <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	

589.

INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
N. <i>quis (quī)</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quid (quod)</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae (qua)</i>	
G. <i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	
D. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	
Ac. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quid (quod)</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>	
Ab. <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	

590.

INDEFINITE

	SINGULAR		
N. <i>aliquis (-quī)</i>	<i>aliqua</i>		<i>aliquid (-quod)</i>
G. <i>alicuius</i>	<i>alicuius</i>		<i>alicuius</i>
D. <i>alicui</i>	<i>alicui</i>		<i>alicui</i>
Ac. <i>aliquem</i>	<i>aliquam</i>		<i>aliquid (-quod)</i>
Ab. <i>aliquō</i>	<i>aliquā</i>		<i>aliquō</i>

	PLURAL		
N. aliqui	aliquae	aliqua	
G. aliquorum	aliquarum	aliquorum	
D. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus	
Ac. aliquos	aliquas	aliqua	
Ab. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus	

TABLES OF CONJUGATIONS: REGULAR VERBS ACTIVE VOICE

591. Present stems: *vocā-*, *monē-*, *regē-*, *capē-*, *audi-*

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

<i>vocō</i>	<i>monēō</i>	<i>regō</i>	<i>capiō</i>	<i>audiō</i>
<i>vocās</i>	<i>monēs</i>	<i>regis</i>	<i>capis</i>	<i>audis</i>
<i>vocat</i>	<i>monet</i>	<i>regit</i>	<i>capit</i>	<i>audit</i>
<i>vocāmus</i>	<i>monēmus</i>	<i>regimus</i>	<i>capimus</i>	<i>audimus</i>
<i>vocātis</i>	<i>monētis</i>	<i>regitis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>auditis</i>
<i>vocant</i>	<i>monent</i>	<i>regunt</i>	<i>capiunt</i>	<i>audiunt</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE

<i>vocābam</i>	<i>monēbam</i>	<i>regēbam</i>	<i>capiēbam</i>	<i>audiēbam</i>
<i>vocābās</i>	<i>monēbās</i>	<i>regēbās</i>	<i>capiēbās</i>	<i>audiēbās</i>
<i>vocābat</i>	<i>monēbat</i>	<i>regēbat</i>	<i>capiēbat</i>	<i>audiēbat</i>
<i>vocābāmus</i>	<i>monēbāmus</i>	<i>regēbāmus</i>	<i>capiēbāmus</i>	<i>audiēbāmus</i>
<i>vocābātis</i>	<i>monēbātis</i>	<i>regēbātis</i>	<i>capiēbātis</i>	<i>audiēbātis</i>
<i>vocābant</i>	<i>monēbant</i>	<i>regēbant</i>	<i>capiēbant</i>	<i>audiēbant</i>

FUTURE TENSE

<i>vocābō</i>	<i>monēbō</i>	<i>regam</i>	<i>capiam</i>	<i>audiam</i>
<i>vocābis</i>	<i>monēbis</i>	<i>regēs</i>	<i>capies</i>	<i>audies</i>
<i>vocābit</i>	<i>monēbit</i>	<i>reget</i>	<i>capiet</i>	<i>audiet</i>
<i>vocābimus</i>	<i>monēbimus</i>	<i>regēmus</i>	<i>capiemus</i>	<i>audiemus</i>
<i>vocābitis</i>	<i>monēbitis</i>	<i>regētis</i>	<i>capietis</i>	<i>audietis</i>
<i>vocābunt</i>	<i>monēbunt</i>	<i>regent</i>	<i>capient</i>	<i>audient</i>

PERFECT TENSE

vocāvī	monuī	rēxī	cēpī	audīvī
vocāvisti	monuisti	rēxisti	cēpisti	audivisti
vocāvit	monuit	rēxit	cēpit	audivit
vocāvimus	monuimus	rēximus	cēpimus	audivimus
vocāvistis	monuistis	rēxistis	cēpistis	audivistis
vocāvērunt	monuērunt	rēxērunt	cēpērunt	audivērunt

PLUPERFECT TENSE

vocāveram	monueram	rēxeram	cēperam	audiveram
vocāverās	monuerās	rēxerās	cēperās	audiverās
vocāverat	monuerat	rēxerat	cēperat	audiverat
vocāverāmus	monuerāmus	rēxerāmus	cēperāmus	audiverāmus
vocāverātis	monuerātis	rēxerātis	cēperātis	audiverātis
vocāverant	monuerant	rēxerant	cēperant	audiverant

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

vocāverō	monuerō	rēxerō	cēperō	audiverō
vocāveris	monueris	rēxeris	cēperis	audiveris
vocāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	cēperit	audiverit
vocāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	cēperimus	audiverimus
vocāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	cēperitis	audiveritis
vocāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	cēperint	audiverint

592.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

vocem	moneam	regam	capiam	audiam
vocēs	moneās	regās	capiās	audiās
vocet	moneat	regat	capiat	audiat
vocēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
vocētis	moneātis	regātis	capiātis	audiātis
vocent	moneant	regant	capiant	audiant

IMPERFECT TENSE

vocārem	monērem	regerem	caperem	audīrem
vocārēs	monērēs	regerēs	caperēs	audirēs
vocāret	monēret	regeret	caperet	audiret

vocārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	capērēmus	audirēmus
vocārētis	monērētis	regerētis	capērētis	audirētis
vocārent	monērent	regerent	caperent	audirent

PERFECT TENSE

vocāverim	monuerim	rēxerim	cēperim	audiverim
vocāveris	monueris	rēxeris	cēperis	audiveris
vocāverit	monusrit	rēxerit	cēperit	audiverit
vocāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	cēperimus	audiverimus
vocāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	cēperitis	audiveritis
vocāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	cēperint	audiverint

PLUPERFECT TENSE

vocāvissē	monuissē	rēxissē	cēpissē	audivissē
vocāvissēs	monuissēs	rēxissēs	cēpissēs	audivissēs
vocāvisset	monuisset	rēxisset	cēpisset	audivisset
vocāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rēxissēmus	cēpissēmus	audivissēmus
vocāvissētis	monuissētis	rēxissētis	cēpissētis	audivissētis
vocāvissent	monuissent	rēxissent	cēpissent	audivissent

593.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

vocā	monē	rege	cape	audī
vocāte	monēte	regite	capite	audite

FUTURE TENSE

vocātō	monētō	regitō	capitō	audītō
vocātō	monētō	regitō	capitō	audītō
vocātōte	monētōte	regitōte	capitōte	audītōte
vocantō	monentō	reguntō	capiantō	audiuntō

594.

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

vocāre	monēre	regere	capere	audire
--------	--------	--------	--------	--------

PERFECT

vocāvisse	monuisse	rēxisse	cēpisse	audivisse
-----------	----------	---------	---------	-----------

FUTURE

vocātūrus esse monitūrus esse rēctūrus esse captūrus esse audītūrus esse

595.

PARTICIPE

PRESENT

vocāns monēns regēns capiēns audiēns

FUTURE

vocātūrus monitūrus rēctūrus captūrus audītūrus

596.

GERUND

G. vocandī	monendī	regendī	capiendī	audiendī
D. vocandō	monendō	regendō	capiendō	audiendō
Ac. vocandum	monendum	regendum	capiendum	audiendum
Ab. vocandō	monendō	regendō	capiendō	audiendō

597.

SUPINE

FORMER

vocātum monitum rēctum captum auditum

LATTER

vocātū monitū rēctū captū auditū

PASSIVE VOICE

598.

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

vocor	moneor	regor	capior	audior
vocāris (-re)	monēris (-re)	regeris (-re)	caperis (-re)	audiris (-re)
vocātur	monētur	regitur	capitur	auditur
vocāmur	monēmur	regimur	capimur	audimur
vocāmini	monēmini	regimini	capimini	audimini
vocantur	monentur	reguntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT TENSE

vocābar	monēbar	regēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
vocābāris	monēbāris	regēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
(-re)	(-re)	(-re)	(-re)	(-re)
vocābātur	monēbātur	regēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
vocābāmur	monēbāmur	regēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
vocābāminī	monēbāminī	regēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
vocābantur	monēbantur	regēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

FUTURE TENSE

vocābor	monēbor	regar	capiar	audiar
vocāberis (-re)	monēberis (-re)	regēris (-re)	capiēris (-re)	audiēris (-re)
vocābitur	monēbitur	regētur	capiētur	audiētur
vocābimur	monēbimur	regēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
vocābimīnī	monēbimīnī	regēmīnī	capiēmīnī	audiēmīnī
vocābuntur	monēbuntur	regentur	capientur	audientur

PERFECT TENSE

vocātus sum	monitus sum	rēctus sum	captus sum	auditus sum
vocātus es	monitus es	rēctus es	captus es	auditus es
vocātus est	monitus est	rēctus est	captus est	auditus est
vocātī sumus	monitī sumus	rēctī sumus	captī sumus	audītī sumus
vocātī estis	monitī estis	rēctī estis	captī estis	audītī estis
vocātī sunt	monitī sunt	rēctī sunt	captī sunt	audītī sunt

PLUPERFECT TENSE

vocātus eram	monitus eram	rēctus eram	captus eram	auditus eram
vocātus erās	monitus erās	rēctus erās	captus erās	auditus erās
vocātus erat	monitus erat	rēctus erat	captus erat	auditus erat
vocātī erāmus	monitī erāmus	rēctī erāmus	captī erāmus	audītī erāmus
vocātī erātis	monitī erātis	rēctī erātis	captī erātis	audītī erātis
vocātī erant	monitī erant	rēctī erant	captī erant	audītī erant

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

vocātus erō	monitus erō	rēctus erō	captus erō	auditus erō
vocātus eris	monitus eris	rēctus eris	captus eris	auditus eris
vocātus erit	monitus erit	rēctus erit	captus erit	auditus erit

vocāti erimus	moniti erimus	rēcti erimus	capti erimus	auditi erimus
vocāti eritis	moniti eritis	rēcti eritis	capti eritis	auditi eritis
vocāti erunt	moniti erunt	rēcti erunt	capti erunt	auditi erunt

599.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

vocer	monear	regar	capiar	audiar
vocēris (-re)	moneāris (-re)	regāris (-re)	capīāris (-re)	audiāris (-re)
vocētur	moneātur	regātur	capīātur	audiātur
vocēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	capīāmur	audiāmur
vocēminī	moneāminī	regāminī	capīāminī	audiāminī
vocentur	moneantur	regantur	capiantur	audiantur

IMPERFECT TENSE

vocārer	monērer	regerer	caperer	audīrer
vocārēris (-re)	monērēris (-re)	regerēris (-re)	caperēris (-re)	audīrēris (-re)
vocārētur	monērētur	regerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
vocārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
vocārēminī	monērēminī	regerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
vocārentur	monērentur	regerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

PERFECT TENSE

vocātus sim	monitus sim	rēctus sim	captus sim	audītus sim
vocātus sis	monitus sis	rēctus sis	captus sis	audītus sis
vocātus sit	monitus sit	rēctus sit	captus sit	audītus sit
vocāti simus	moniti simus	rēcti simus	capti simus	auditi simus
vocāti sitis	moniti sitis	rēcti sitis	capti sitis	auditi sitis
vocāti sint	moniti sint	rēcti sint	capti sint	auditi sint

PLUPERFECT TENSE

vocātus essem	monitus essem	rēctus essem	captus essem	audītus essem
vocātus essēs	monitus essēs	rēctus essēs	captus essēs	audītus essēs
vocātus esset	monitus esset	rēctus esset	captus esset	audītus esset
vocāti essēmus	moniti essēmus	rēcti essēmus	capti essēmus	auditi essēmus
vocāti essētis	moniti essētis	rēcti essētis	capti essētis	auditi essētis
vocāti essent	moniti essent	rēcti essent	capti essent	auditi essent

600.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

vocāre	monēre	regere	capere	audire
vocāmini	monēmini	regimini	capimini	audimini

FUTURE TENSE

vocātor	monētor	regitor	capitor	auditor
vocātor	monētor	regitor	capitor	auditor
—	—	—	—	—
vocantor	monentor	reguntor	capiuntor	audiuntor

601.

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

vocāri	monēri	regi	capi	audiri
--------	--------	------	------	--------

PERFECT

vocātus esse	monitus esse	rēctus esse	captus esse	auditus esse
--------------	--------------	-------------	-------------	--------------

FUTURE

vocātum iri	monitum iri	rēctum iri	captum iri	auditum iri
-------------	-------------	------------	------------	-------------

602.

PARTICIPLE

PERFECT

vocātus	monitus	rēctus	captus	auditus
---------	---------	--------	--------	---------

GERUNDIVE

vocandus	monendus	regendus	capendus	audiendus
----------	----------	----------	----------	-----------

IRREGULAR VERBS

603.

sum

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRES.	IMPERF.	FUT.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
sum	eram	erō	fui	fueram	fuerō
es	erās	eris	fuisti	fuerās	fueris
est	erat	erit	fuit	fuerat	fuerit

sumus	erāmus	erimus	fuiumus	fuerāmus	fuerimus
estis	erātis	eritis	fuiistis	fuerātis	fueritis
sunt	erant	erunt	fuērunt	fuerant	fuerint

604.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

sim	essem	fuerim	fuissem
sis	essēs	fueris	fuisseēs
sit	esset	fuerit	fuisset
simus	essēmus	fuerīmus	fuissemus
sitis	essētis	fueritis	fuisseētis
sint	essent	fuerint	fuisissent

605.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

es
este

FUTURE TENSE

estō
estō
estōte
suntō

606.

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

esse

PERFECT

fuisse

FUTURE

fore or futūrus esse

607.

PARTICIPLE

futūrus, -a, -um

ACTIVE VOICE

613.

eō, ferō, dō

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

eō	ferō	dō
is	fers	dās
it	fert	dat
imus	ferimus	damus
itis	fertis	datis
eunt	ferunt	dant

IMPERFECT TENSE

Ibam, etc.	ferēbam, etc.	dabam, etc.
------------	---------------	-------------

FUTURE TENSE

Ibō, etc.	feram, etc.	dabō, etc.
-----------	-------------	------------

PERFECT TENSE

ii (ivi), etc.	tuli, etc.	dedi, etc.
----------------	------------	------------

PLUPERFECT TENSE

ieram (iveram), etc.	tuleram, etc.	dederam, etc.
----------------------	---------------	---------------

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

ierō (iverō), etc.	tulerō, etc.	dederō, etc.
--------------------	--------------	--------------

614.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

eam	feram	dem
eās	ferās	dēs
eat	ferat	det
eāmus	ferāmus	dēmus
eātis	ferātis	dētis
eant	ferant	dent

IMPERFECT TENSE

irem, etc.	ferrem, etc.	darem, etc.
------------	--------------	-------------

	PERFECT TENSE	
ierim (iverim), etc.	tulerim, etc.	dederim, etc.

	PLUPERFECT TENSE	
issem (ivissem), etc.	tulisse, etc.	dedissem, etc.

615. IMPERATIVE MOOD

	PRESENT TENSE	
i	fer	dā
ite	ferte	date

	FUTURE TENSE	
itō	fertō	datō
itō	fertō	datō
itōte	fertōte	datōte
euntō	feruntō	dantō

616. INFINITIVE

	PRESENT	
ire	ferre	dare
	PERFECT	
isse (ivisse)	tulisse	dedisse
	FUTURE	
itūrus esse	lātūrus esse	datūrus esse

617. PARTICIPLE

	PRESENT	
iēns, gen. euntis	ferēns	dāns
	FUTURE	
itūrus	lātūrus	datūrus

618. GERUND

eundi	ferendi	dandi
eundō	ferendō	dandō
eundum	ferendum	dandum
eundō	ferendō	dandō

619.

SUPINE

itum
itūlātum
lātūdatum
datū

PASSIVE VOICE

adeor, feror, dor

620.

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

adeor
adiris (-re)
adītur
adimur
adimini
adeunturferor
ferris (-re)
fertur
ferimur
ferimini
ferunturdor
daris (-re)
datur
damur
damini
dantur

IMPERFECT TENSE

adībar, etc.

ferēbar, etc.

dabar, etc.

FUTURE TENSE

adībor, etc.

ferar, etc.

dabor, etc.

PERFECT TENSE

aditus sum, etc.

lātus sum, etc.

datus sum, etc.

PLUPERFECT TENSE

aditus eram, etc.

lātus eram, etc.

datus eram, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

aditus erō, etc.

lātus erō, etc.

datus erō, etc.

621.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

adear
adeāris (-re)
adeāturferar
ferāris (-re)
ferāturder
dēris (-re)
dētur

adeāmur
adeāmini
adeantur

ferāmur
ferāmini
ferantur

dēmur
dēmini
dentur

IMPERFECT TENSE

adirer, etc.

ferrer, etc.

darer, etc.

PERFECT TENSE

aditus sim, etc.

lātus sim, etc.

datus sim, etc.

PLUPERFECT TENSE

aditus essem, etc.

lātus essem, etc.

datus essem, etc.

622.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

adire
adimini

ferre
ferimini

dare
damini

FUTURE TENSE

aditor
aditor

fertor
fertor

dator
dator

adeuntor

feruntor

dantor

623.

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

adiri

ferri

dari

PERFECT

aditus esse

lātus esse

datus esse

FUTURE

aditum iri

lātum iri

datum iri

624.

PARTICIPLE

PERFECT

aditus

lātus

datus

GERUNDIVE

adeundus

ferendus

dandus

DEPONENT VERBS

Present stems: cōnā-, pollicē-, ūte-, pate-, poti-

625.

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE¹

cōnor	polliceor	ūter	patior	potior
cōnāris (-re)	pollicēris (-re)	ūteris (-re)	pateris (-re)	potiris (-re)
cōnātur	pollicētur	ūtitur	patitur	potitur
cōnāmur	pollicēmur	ūtimur	patimur	potimur
cōnāmini	pollicēmini	ūtimini	patimini	potimini
cōnantur	pollicentur	ūtuntur	patiuntur	potiuntur

IMPERFECT TENSE

cōnābar	pollicēbar	ūtēbar	patiēbar	potiēbar
---------	------------	--------	----------	----------

FUTURE TENSE

cōnābor	pollicēbor	ūtar	patiar	potiar
---------	------------	------	--------	--------

PERFECT TENSE

cōnātus sum	pollicitus sum	ūsus sum	passus sum	potitus sum
-------------	----------------	----------	------------	-------------

PLUPERFECT TENSE

cōnātus eram	pollicitus eram	ūsus eram	passus eram	potitus eram
--------------	-----------------	-----------	-------------	--------------

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

cōnātus erō	pollicitus erō	ūsus erō	passus erō	potitus erō
-------------	----------------	----------	------------	-------------

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

cōner	pollicear	ūtar	patiar	potiar
-------	-----------	------	--------	--------

IMPERFECT TENSE

cōnārer	pollicērer	ūterer	paterer	potirer
---------	------------	--------	---------	---------

PERFECT TENSE

cōnātus sim	pollicitus sim	ūsus sim	passus sim	potitus sim
-------------	----------------	----------	------------	-------------

PLUPERFECT TENSE

cōnātus essem	pollicitus essem	ūsus essem	passus essem	potitus essem
---------------	------------------	------------	--------------	---------------

¹ Only the present indicative is here conjugated in full.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

cōnāre pollicēre ūtere patere potire

FUTURE TENSE

cōnātor pollicētor ūtitor patitor potitor

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

cōnāri pollicēri ūti pati potiri

PERFECT

cōnātus esse pollicitus esse ūsus esse passus esse potitus esse

FUTURE

cōnātūrus esse pollicitūrus esse ūsūrus esse passūrus esse potitūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

PRESENT

cōnāns pollicēns ūtēns patiēns potiēns

FUTURE

cōnātūrus pollicitūrus ūsūrus passūrus potitūrus

PERFECT

cōnātus pollicitus ūsus passus potitus

GERUNDIVE

cōnandus pollicendus ūtendus patiendus potiendus

GERUND

cōnandī, etc. pollicendī, etc. ūtendī, etc. patiendī, etc. potiendī, etc.

SUPINE

cōnātum, -tū pollicitum, -tū ūsum, -sū passum, -sū potitum, -tū

RULES OF SYNTAX

The following rules have been given in the body of this book, preceded by illustrative examples and notes. They are repeated here for convenience of reference. The numbers following the rules refer to the illustrative examples.

626. CASE OF THE SUBJECT. — The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case (23).

627. PREDICATE NOMINATIVE. — A noun in the predicate with an intransitive or passive verb agrees with the subject in case (96).

628. APPOSITIVE. — A noun limiting another noun and denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in case (96).

629. CASE RELATIONS. — Case relations in Latin are shown by case endings, not by the order of words (28).

630. THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE. — A noun denoting the owner or possessor of a thing limits the word denoting the thing possessed, and is in the genitive case (25).

631. THE POSSESSIVE AND THE GENITIVE CASE. — The possessive is sometimes used in connection with a genitive limiting the same noun (247).

632. THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE. — Words denoting a part are used with a genitive of the whole to which the part belongs (481).

NOTE. — Partitive words are nouns, pronouns, and adjectives and adverbs used substantively.

633. THE INDIRECT OBJECT. — The indirect object is in the dative case with verbs of *giving, telling, and announcing*, and others of similar meaning, to denote the person to whom anything is given, told, announced, etc. (33).

634. THE DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR. — The dative case is used with *sum* and similar verbs to denote the possessor. The name of the object possessed is in the nominative case (160).

635. THE DOUBLE DATIVE. — The Latin often uses a dative of the *person to or for whom*, together with the dative of the *object for which*, where in English a predicate noun and an indirect object are used (297).

636. THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. — The dative is used with adjectives denoting *resemblance, fitness, nearness*, and the like; also with their opposites (363).

NOTE. — Adjectives of fitness may be used with *ad* and the accusative.

637. THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS. — Some verbs, intransitive in Latin though transitive in English, are followed by a dative of the indirect object. Such are verbs signifying to *favor, please, trust, assist, command, obey, serve, resist, pardon, threaten, spare*, and others of similar nature (415).

638. THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS. — Many verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super* take the dative case of the indirect object (473).

NOTE. — Since this use of the dative is that of the indirect object, it follows that the original construction of the simple verb remains, if the meaning acquired in the compound is not suited to an indirect object.

639. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT. — To express the person upon whom a duty, obligation, or necessity rests, the second periphrastic conjugation with the dative of the agent is used (551).

640. THE CASE OF DIRECT OBJECT. — The direct object of a transitive verb represents that to which something is done, and is in the accusative case (28).

641. THE DIRECT AND INDIRECT OBJECT. — A direct object may be used in connection with an indirect object of the same verb (33).

642. TWO ACCUSATIVES. — Verbs of *calling, naming, appointing*, and the like take two accusatives in the active voice, and in the passive two nominatives, one a subject and the other a predicate (186).

643. THE ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE. — Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative case (289).

644. THE PLACE TO WHICH. — The *place to which* or *into which* is regularly expressed by the accusative with a preposition; but names of towns and small islands, also *domus* and *rūs*, omit the preposition (452).

645. THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. — Verbs denoting separation are used with the ablative case, either with or without a preposition (119).

NOTE. — This rule extends to adjectives of like meaning.

646. THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT. — The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative case without a preposition (136).

647. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. — The ablative without a preposition is used to express that in respect to which anything is or is done (154).

648. THE ABLATIVE OF THE PERSONAL AGENT. — The voluntary agent of an action is expressed with passive verbs by the ablative with *ā* or *ab* (167).

649. THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT. — The ablative with *cum* is used to express accompaniment, but in military phrases, especially when there is a qualifying adjective, *cum* may be omitted (180).

650. THE ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION OR QUALITY. — The ablative with an adjective in agreement with it is used to describe a noun or to express some quality belonging to it (211).

NOTE. — In descriptive expressions of measure the genitive, not the ablative, is used.

651. THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER. — The manner in which an action is performed is expressed by a noun in the ablative with *cum*, when the noun has no qualifying adjective, and by the ablative with or without *cum*, when it has a qualifying adjective (217).

652. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. — 1. A noun or pronoun limited by a participle is often used in the ablative absolute to express the time or other circumstances of an action (237).

2. Two nouns or a noun and an adjective may be used together in the ablative absolute (238).

653. THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — 1. The ablative without a preposition is used to express cause (265).

2. *Ob* and *propter* with the accusative, and *dē* or *ex* with the ablative, are also used to express cause (265).

654. THE ABLATIVE OF TIME AT OR WITHIN WHICH. — *Time at or within which* an act is performed is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (313).

655. THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON. — When **quam** is expressed in a comparison, the same case follows as precedes; but when **quam** is omitted, the ablative case follows the word of comparison (345).

656. THE ABLATIVE WITH SPECIAL DEONENTS. — Certain deponents, with their compounds, take the ablative. These verbs are: **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vēscor**. The ablative used with these verbs is an ablative of means (407).

657. THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH. — The *place from which* is regularly expressed by the ablative with a preposition, generally **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**; but names of towns and small islands, also **domus** and **rūs**, omit the preposition (450).

658. THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE IN WHICH. — The *place in which* is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in**; but names of towns and small islands, also **domus** and **rūs**, are put into the locative (454).

659. THE ABLATIVE OF THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. — The ablative is used without a preposition to express the degree of difference between two persons or things (459).

660. THE ABLATIVE WITH **quidam**, **ūnus**, ETC. — **Quidam** and the cardinal numerals (except **millia**) generally take the ablative with **ex** or **dē** to express the whole of which a part is taken; the ordinals generally take the genitive (483).

661. ADJECTIVE AGREEMENT. — Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case (48).

662. ADJECTIVES AS NOUNS.— Plural adjectives are quite freely used as nouns, the masculine to denote persons, the neuter to denote things (188).

NOTE. — This use occurs sometimes in the singular.

663. SPECIAL USES OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.— 1. The comparative is sometimes used to express a rather high or too high degree of the quality.

2. The superlative is often used to express a very high degree of the quality (347).

664. ADJECTIVES OF ORDER AND SUCCESSION.— Superlatives (sometimes also comparatives) are used in agreement with nouns to show what part of an object is designated. So also *cēterus*, *medius*, and *reliquus* (361).

665. VERB AGREEMENT.— A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number (38).

666. THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.— The infinitive is used with verbs meaning to *decide*, *hasten*, *begin*, *wish*, *be able*, and, in general, with those requiring a second act of the same subject to complete their meaning (125).

667. THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT.— The infinitive with a subject in the accusative case may be the object of a verb (127).

668. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.— The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be the subject or predicate of a verb. A predicate adjective used in this construction is in the neuter singular (129).

669. INDIRECT DISCOURSE.— Statements depending directly upon verbs of *saying*, *knowing*, *perceiving*, and the

like are expressed by the infinitive with the subject in the accusative. A predicate noun or adjective is also in the accusative (223-227).

670. ORDER OF WORDS. — The normal order in a Latin sentence is: Subject, Modifiers of Subject, Indirect Object, Direct Object, Adverb, Verb. But this order is constantly changed for the sake of emphasis (85, 86).

671. Suus, eius. — 1. **Suus** in all its forms agrees with the name of the thing possessed, but refers to the subject of its own sentence (247).

2. **Eius** limits the noun to which it belongs, but refers to some person or thing other than the subject of its own sentence (247).

672. Alius AND alter. — **Alius** and **alter** repeated in another case express briefly a double statement (380).

673. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN. — The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, person, and number, but its case depends upon its relation to other words in its own clause (256).

674. SPECIAL PREPOSITIONS. — 1. **Ab** is used where motion away from a place is to be expressed, **ex** where motion out of a place, and **dē** where motion down from a place is indicated.

2. **In** and **sub** govern the accusative with verbs of motion, the ablative with verbs of rest.

3. **Ad** is used where motion to a place and **in** where motion into a place is indicated.

a. The following are the most important prepositions governing the ablative case only: **ā** or **ab**, **cōram**, **cum**, **dē**, **ex** or **ē**, **prae**, **prō**, **sine**.

b. All others given in this book (and nearly all others in the language), except **in** and **sub**, govern the accusative (442, 443).

675. SEQUENCE OF TENSES. — In complex sentences a primary tense in the principal clause is followed by a primary tense in the subordinate clause, a secondary by a secondary (277).

676. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. — Adverbial clauses of purpose, with **ut** affirmative and **nē** negative, have their verbs in the subjunctive (283).

677. ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. — Adjectival clauses of purpose are introduced by relative pronouns and have their verbs in the subjunctive. The negative is **nōn** (283).

678. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. — Substantive clauses of purpose with their verbs in the subjunctive are used as the objects of verbs of *commanding*, *advising*, *persuading*, *asking*, and *demanding* (295).

NOTE. — **Iubeō**, *command*, is used with the complementary infinitive, not with the subjunctive.

679. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF RESULT. — Adverbial clauses of result are introduced by **ut** when affirmative and by **ut nōn** when negative. They have their verbs in the subjunctive (369).

680. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT. — Substantive clauses of result may be used with **ut** and **ut nōn** as the objects of verbs of *effecting*, *accomplishing*, and the like, and with **quīn** as the objects of verbs of *hindering*, *refusing*, and *preventing*, when they are negated (369).

NOTE. — Clauses of result are very often introduced by **ita**, **tālis**, **tantus**, and **tam**.

681. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC. — The subjunctive is used, especially after expressions of existence and non-existence and questions implying a negative answer, to express a characteristic of the subject (377).

682. INDIRECT QUESTIONS. — Indirect questions are used with words of *asking, saying, knowing*, and in general with verbs of mental action. They have their verbs in the subjunctive and follow the law of Sequence of Tenses (394).

683. Cum CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE. — *Cum* causal and concessive is followed by the subjunctive. The law of Sequence of Tenses is observed (461).

684. Cum TEMPORAL. — 1. *Cum* temporal is used with the indicative to fix or define the time of an action, and with the subjunctive to describe the circumstances under which it occurred. In narration *cum* almost always takes the subjunctive when the tense is imperfect or pluperfect (492).

2. *Cum* temporal referring to present time takes the present indicative, referring to future time, the future indicative (493).

685. CLAUSES WITH *postquam*, ETC. — *Postquam*, *ubi*, *simul ac* (*atque*), and *ut* temporal are used with the indicative, generally the perfect (490).

686. CONDITIONS OF FACT. — Conditions of fact are found in present, past, or future time, and take the indicative mood in any tense required by the nature of the thought. They are classed as Past, Present, and Future (507).

687. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT.— In conditions contrary to fact the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in both protasis and apodosis, the imperfect to express present time, the pluperfect to express past time (514).

688. CONDITIONS OF POSSIBILITY.— Conditions of possibility are found in future time. They take the present (or perfect) subjunctive in the protasis, and the present subjunctive in the apodosis (521).

689. THE IMPERATIVE.— The present imperative is used in affirmative commands, unless distinct reference is made to future time. In this case the future imperative is used. *Nē* with the second person of the perfect subjunctive or the present imperative of *nōlō* with a complementary infinitive is used to express a prohibition (527).

690. THE GERUND.— The gerund as a noun has the construction of other nouns, and as a verb retains its power of governing an object (427, 428).

691. THE GERUNDIVE.— The gerundive construction is used by preference instead of the gerund where the latter would, if used, take a direct object. This object is then put into the case in which the gerund, if used, would have been, and the gerundive agrees with it in gender, number, and case (436).

692. THE FORMER SUPINE.— The former supine is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion (540).

693. THE LATTER SUPINE.— The latter supine is used with some adjectives and a few other words to express the act in reference to which the quality is asserted (542).

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

<p><i>Ab., abl.</i> = ablative <i>abs.</i> = absolute <i>Ac., acc.</i> = accusative <i>act.</i> = active <i>adj.</i> = adjective <i>adv.</i> = adverb <i>card.</i> = cardinal <i>cf.</i> = compare <i>comp.</i> = comparative <i>Conj.</i> = conjugation <i>conj.</i> = conjunction <i>D., dat.</i> = dative <i>dem.</i> = demonstrative <i>der.</i> = derivative <i>e.g.</i> = for example <i>Eng.</i> = English <i>f., fem.</i> = feminine <i>fut.</i> = future <i>G., gen.</i> = genitive <i>imperf.</i> = imperfect <i>ind.</i> = indicative <i>indecl.</i> = indeclinable <i>indef.</i> = indefinite <i>inf.</i> = infinitive <i>interrog.</i> = interrogative <i>lit.</i> = literally <i>m., masc.</i> = masculine</p>	<p><i>n., neut.</i> = neuter <i>N., nom.</i> = nominative <i>num.</i> = numeral <i>ord.</i> = ordinal <i>part.</i> = participle, participial <i>pass.</i> = passive <i>per.</i> = person <i>perf.</i> = perfect <i>pers.</i> = personal <i>pl., plur.</i> = plural <i>pluperf.</i> = pluperfect <i>pos.</i> = positive <i>poss.</i> = possessive <i>pred.</i> = predicate <i>prep.</i> = preposition <i>pres.</i> = present <i>pron.</i> = pronoun <i>pronom.</i> = pronominal <i>reflex.</i> = reflexive <i>rel.</i> = relative <i>S., sing.</i> = singular <i>subj.</i> = subjunctive <i>subst.</i> = substantive <i>superl.</i> = superlative <i>V.</i> = vocative <i>Vocab.</i> = vocabulary <i>w.</i> = with</p>
--	---

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

ā or *ab*, *prep. w. abl.*, from, away from, by.

abdūcō, *ere, dūxī, ductus*, lead away, take away.

abstineō, *ēre, uī, tentus*, abstain from, refrain from, spare.

absum, *esse, āfui, āfutūrus*, be away from, be absent.

ac, *see atque*.

accēdō, *ere, cessī, cessūrus*, draw near, approach.

accidō, *ere, cidi*, —, happen, occur; *w. dat. of person*, happen to.

accipiō, *ere, cēpi, ceptus*, accept, receive, suffer, entertain (as guest).

ācer, *ācris, ācre, adj.*, sharp, eager, fierce.

ācerrimē, *superl. adv.*, most eagerly.

aciēs, *ēī, f.*, edge, line of battle, battle line.

ācritur, *adv.*, sharply, fiercely.

ad, *prep. w. acc.*, to, toward, near to, by, at, for.

addūcō, *ere, dūxī, ductus*, lead to or towards, induce, persuade, influence.

adeō, *ire, īi or īvī, itus*, go to, approach, visit.

adequitō, *āre, āvī, ātus*, ride towards or up, *w. ad*.

adferō, *ferre, attulī, adlātus*, bring to, report.

adficiō, *ere, fēcī, fectus*, visit with, affect.

adhibeō, *ēre, uī, itus*, bring in, admit.

aditus, *ūs, m.*, approach, access.

adiungō, *ere, iūnxī, iūnctus*, join to, add to.

administrō, *āre, āvī, ātus*, manage, perform, accomplish.

admīror, *ārī, ātus sum*, wonder at, admire.

adorior, *īrī, ortus sum*, approach, attack.

adrogantia, *ae, f.*, arrogance, pride.

adsum, *esse, fui, futūrus*, be near, be present; *w. dat.*, assist.

Aduatuci, *ōrum, m. pl.*, the Aduatuci, a people of Gaul.

adventus, *ūs, m.*, approach, arrival.

adversus, *a, um, adj.*, turned towards, opposite; **adversō colle**, uphill.

aedificium, **aedificī**, *n.*, building.

aedificō, *āre, āvī, ātus*, build.

Aedui, *ōrum, m. pl.*, the Aedui, a people of Gaul.

aequaliter, *adv.*, equally, uniformly.

aestās, *ātis, f.*, summer; **aestāte in- itā**, in the beginning of summer.

aetās, *ātis, f.*, life, age.

ager, *agri, m.*, field, territory.

agger, *eris, m.*, rampart, mound.

agmen, *inis, n.*, line, army on the march; **agmen claudere**, to bring up the rear.

agō, *ere, ēgī, āctus*, do, act, drive, move, set in motion, construct, plead.

- agricola**, *ae, m.*, farmer.
alacritās, ātis, f., eagerness, alacrity.
aliēnus, a, um, adj., belonging to another, strange, unfriendly, unfavorable.
aliquis, aliquid, indef. pron., some one, somebody, something.
alius, a, ud, pronom. adj., another, other; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another; **aliī aliam in partem**, some in one direction, others in another.
Allobrogēs, um, m. pl., the Allobroges, a warlike people in Gaul.
Alpēs, ium, f. pl., the Alps.
alter, era, erum, pronom. adj., the other of two, the other, the one of two; **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other.
altitudō, inis, f., height, altitude.
altus, a, um, adj., high, deep.
amicitiā, ae, f., friendship.
amicus, a, um, adj., friendly.
amicus, ī, m., friend.
āmittō, ere, misi, missus, send away, dismiss, lose.
amō, āre, āvī, ātus, love.
amplus, a, um, adj., large, wide, ample, spacious.
ancora, ae, f., anchor.
angustus, a, um, adj., narrow.
animadvertō, vertere, vertī, versus, turn the mind to, attend to, notice.
animal, ālis, n., animal.
animus, ī, m., mind, courage, disposition, spirit.
annus, ī, m., year.
ante, prep. w. acc., before, in front of.
ante, adv., before, previously.
- antepōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus**, place before, put before.
aper, apri, m., wild boar.
apertus, a, um, adj., open.
appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, call, address, call by name.
appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus, come near, approach.
apud, prep. w. acc., among, with.
aqua, ae, f., water.
Aquitānī, ōrum, m. pl., the Aquitani, the people of Aquitania.
Aquitānia, ae, f., Aquitania, a division of Gaul.
Arar, Araris, m., a river in Gaul, now the Saône.
arbitror, āri, ātus sum, think, suppose, believe.
arbor, oris, f., tree.
arcessō, ere, īvī, itus, send for, summon.
arduus, a, um, adj., high, steep.
Ariovistus, ī, m., Ariovistus, the king of a German tribe.
arma, ōrum, n. pl., arms.
armātī, ōrum, m. pl., armed men.
armiger, erī, m., armor bearer.
armō, āre, āvī, ātus, arm, equip.
arō, āre, āvī, ātus, plow.
ars, artis, f., art, skill.
ascendō, ere, ī, scēsus, go up, mount up, climb.
ascēsus, ūs, m., ascent.
Athēnae, ārum, f. pl., Athens.
atque, conj., and, and so, and even, and also.
auctōritās, ātis, f., authority, influence, reputation.
audācia, ae, f., boldness, daring, audacity, insolence.

audācius, *comp. adv.*, more boldly,
too boldly.

audāx, **ācis**, *adj.*, bold, daring.

audēō, **ēre**, **ausus sum**, dare.

audiō, **īre**, **īvi**, **ītus**, hear, hear of.

auferō, **ferre**, **abstulī**, **ablātus**, carry
off *or* away, lead away.

aut, *conj.* or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . .
or.

autem, *postpositive conj.*, but, more-
over, however.

auxilium, **auxiliī**, *n.*, aid, help.

āvertō, **ere**, **ī**, **versus**, turn away, avert,
turn aside.

Axona, **ae**, *f.*, a river in Gaul, now
the Aisne.

B

barbarus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, foreign, strange,
barbarous.

barbarus, **ī**, *m.*, foreigner, stranger,
barbarian.

Belgae, **ārum**, *m. pl.*, the Belgae, a
warlike people of northern Gaul.

bellicōsus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, warlike.

bellō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, wage *or* carry on
war, war.

Bellovacī, **ōrum**, *m. pl.*, the Bellovacī,
a people of Gaul.

bellum, **ī**, *n.*, war.

bene, *adv.*, well, successfully.

beneficium, **beneficī**, *n.*, kindness,
favor, benefit.

Bibrax, **actis**, *f.*, Bibrax, a town of
the Remi, now Bièvre.

biduum, **ī**, *n.*, space of two days, two
days.

bonus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, good.

brevis, **e**, *adj.*, short, brief.

breviter, *adv.*, briefly.

C

C., *abbreviation for Gāius.*

cadō, **ere**, **cecidī**, **casūrus**, fall, be
killed; happen.

caedēs, **is**, *f.*, slaughter, murder.

Caesar, **aris**, *m.*, C. Julius Caesar (100-
44 B.C.).

calamitās, **ātis**, *f.*, disaster, calamity.

calcar, **āris**, *n.*, spur.

cālō, **ōnis**, *m.*, soldier's servant, camp
follower.

capiō, **ere**, **cēpī**, **captus**, take, seize,
capture; choose, form.

captivus, **ī**, *m.*, captive, prisoner.

caput, **itis**, *n.*, head.

cārē, *adv.*, dearly.

carrus, **ī**, *m.*, two-wheeled wagon,
cart.

cārus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, dear, precious.

castellum, **ī**, *n.*, fort, stronghold, for-
tress, redoubt.

Casticus, **ī**, *m.*, Casticus, a Sequanian
nobleman.

castra, **ōrum**, *n. pl.*, camp.

cāsus, **ūs**, *m.*, chance, accident, event,
misfortune.

catēna, **ae**, *f.*, chain.

causa, **ae**, *f.*, cause, reason; **causā**, for
the sake of, *w. gen.*; *in this sense it
follows the word which it governs.*

celer, **eris**, **ere**, *adj.*, quick, swift.

celeritās, **ātis**, *f.*, swiftness, quickness,
speed.

celeriter, *adv.*, quickly.

cēlō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, conceal.

Celtae, **ārum**, *m. pl.*, the Celts, a peo-
ple of Gaul.

centum, *indecl. adj.*, a hundred.

centuriō, **ōnis**, *m.*, captain, centurion.

certē, *adv.*, certainly, surely, of course.

- certus, a, um, adj.**, certain, sure; **certior factus**, having been informed.
cēteri, ae, a, adj., pl., remaining, rest.
Cicerō, ōnis, m., Marcus Tullius Cicero (106-43 B.C.), a great Roman orator.
circiter, adv., about, near.
circum, prep. w. acc., around, about, near.
circumēō, ire, ii or ivi, itus, go around, surround.
circumveniō, ire, vēni, ventus, come around, surround.
cia, citrā, prep. w. acc., on this side of.
citerior, ius, comp. adj., hither.
civis, is, m. and f., citizen.
civitas, atis, f., state.
clam, adv., secretly.
clāmor, ōris, m., shout, clamor.
clārus, a, um, adj., clear, bright, famous, celebrated.
claudō, ere, clausi, clausus, close, shut, shut up; claudere agmen, to bring up the rear.
cliēns, entis, m., client.
coepi, isse, defective verb, began.
cōgitō, āre, āvi, ātus, plan, think, consider.
cōgnōscō, ere, nōvi, nitus, learn, find out; in perf., know, understand.
cōgō, ere, cōgē, coactus, drive together, collect, compel.
cohors, ortis, f., company of soldiers, cohort.
cohortor, āri, ātus sum, exhort, encourage.
collis, is, m., hill.
commeātus, ūs, m., a going to and fro; provisions, supplies.
commemorō, āre, āvi, ātus, call to mind, relate.
- committō, ere, misi, missus, commit, begin, join, wage.**
commoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus, move, excite, alarm, disturb.
communiō, ire, ivi, itus, fortify on all sides, fortify.
comparō, āre, āvi, ātus, get together, prepare, arrange, provide; compare.
compellō, ere, puli, pulsus, drive together, drive, move.
compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus, fill completely, fill.
compōnō, ere, posui, positus, place together, arrange, compare.
comportō, āre, āvi, ātus, bring together, collect.
cōnātus, ūs, m., attempt, trial, undertaking.
concedō, ere, cessi, cessus, retire, withdraw, yield, concede.
conciō, ere, cidi, cius, cut to pieces, kill, destroy.
concilium, concili, n., council.
conclāmō, āre, āvi, ātus, shout aloud, cry out, shout.
condiciō, ōnis, f., condition, agreement, terms.
condō, ere, didi, ditus, put together, found, establish, hide.
condūcō, ere, duxi, ductus, lead together.
cōnferō, cōnferre, contuli, conlātus, bring together.
cōnferus, a, um, adj., crowded; **cōn-fertissimō agmine**, in a densely compact body, in a solid mass.
cōnficiō, ere, fēci, fectus, complete, accomplish, finish.
cōnfidō, ere, fisus sum, rely upon, trust, w. dat.

- cōfirmō, āre, āvī, ātus**, confirm, establish, strengthen, fix.
- coniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus**, cast, hurl, throw together.
- coniungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctus**, join together, unite.
- coniūrātiō, ōnis, f.**, conspiracy.
- coniūrō, āre, āvī, ātus**, swear together, conspire.
- conligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus**, collect.
- conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus**, arrange, place, set, station.
- conloquium, conloquī, n.**, dialogue, conference.
- cōnor, āri, ātus sum**, try, attempt.
- cōnsanguineus, ī, m.**, relative, kinsman.
- cōnscribō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus**, enroll, enlist.
- cōnsentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus**, agree, conspire.
- cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātus**, preserve, save, spare.
- cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, sessus**, settle, encamp.
- cōnsilium, cōnsilī, n.**, counsel, plan.
- cōnsistō, ere, stitī, —**, make a stand, stop, halt; depend on.
- cōnspectus, ūs, m.**, sight, view.
- cōnstituō, ere, ui, ūtus**, station, agree upon, determine, decide, appoint.
- cōnsuēscō, ere, cōnsuēvī, consuētus**, become accustomed; *in pers.*, be accustomed.
- cōnsuētūdō, inis, f.**, custom, habit.
- cōnsul, is, m.**, consul, one of the two highest Roman magistrates chosen annually.
- contemptiō, ōnis, f.**, contempt, disdain.
- contendō, ere, tendī, tentus**, strive, contend, fight; hasten.
- contentus, a, um, adj.**, contented, content, satisfied.
- continenter, adv.**, continuously.
- contineō, ēre, ui, tentus, adj.**, hold in, restrain, contain, check, stay.
- continuus, a, um, adj.**, continuous, incessant.
- contrā, prep. w. acc.**, against, opposite.
- contumēlia, ae, f.**, abuse, reproach, affront, insult.
- conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus**, come together, assemble, meet.
- convertō, ere, ī, versus**, turn about, change.
- convocō, āre, āvī, ātus**, call together, summon.
- coōrior, orīri, ortus sum**, rise, break out (of war).
- cōpia, ae, f.**, supply, abundance; *pl.*, troops, supplies; **cōpiae domesticae, f. pl.**, supplies from home.
- cōram, prep. w. abl.**, in the presence of.
- Cornēlia, ae, f.**, Cornelia.
- cornū, ūs, n.**, horn, wing.
- corpus, oris, n.**, body.
- cotidiānus, a, um, adj.**, daily.
- cotidiē, adv.**, daily, each day.
- Crassus, ī, m.**, Crassus.
- crēber, bra, brum, adj.**, frequent, numerous.
- crēdō, ere, didī, ditus**, trust, believe, *w. dat.*
- culpa, ae, f.**, fault, blame.
- culpō, āre, āvī, ātus**, blame, censure.
- cum, prep. w. abl.**, with, along with, in company with.
- cum, conj.**, when, since, although, after, while.

cūctātīō, ōnis, *f.*, hesitation, delay.
 cupiditās, ātis, *f.*, desire, greed.
 cupidus, a, um, *adj.*, eager for, desirous of, *w. gen.*
 cūr, *adv.*, why.
 cūra, ae, *f.*, care, anxiety.
 Curēs, ium, *m. and f. pl.*, Cures, ancient town of the Sabines.
 currō, ere, cucurrī, cursūrus, run, hasten.
 currus, ūs, *m.*, chariot, car.
 cūstōs, ōdis, *m. and f.*, guard, attendant.
 cymba, ae, *f.*, boat, skiff.

D

damnō, āre, āvī, ātus, condemn, convict.
 dē, *prep. w. abl.*, down, down from, concerning, about, of, for.
 dea, ae, *f.*, goddess.
 dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus, owe, ought.
 decem, *indecl. num.*, ten.
 dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus, decide, decree.
 decimus, a, um, *ord. num.*, tenth.
 decumānus, a, um, *adj.*, rear; porta decumāna, the rear gate.
 dēcurrō, ere, cucurrī, —, run down.
 dēditīō, ōnis, *f.*, surrender.
 dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditus, yield, surrender.
 dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, lead down or away, withdraw.
 dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsus, defend.
 dēfēnsor, ōris, *m.*, defender.
 dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear down, report.
 dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, fail, be lacking.

dēficiō, ere, iēcī, iectus, hurl or throw down.
 dēinde, *adv.*, afterwards, then, next.
 dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, lay low, destroy, annihilate, blot out.
 dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, choose, select.
 Dēlos, ī, *f.*, Delos, an island in the Aegean Sea.
 dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, point out, show, prove, indicate.
 dēmōror, āri, ātus sum, delay.
 dēmum, *adv.*, at last, finally.
 dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally.
 dēns, dentis, *m.*, tooth.
 dēnsus, a, um, *adj.*, thick, dense.
 dēpellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, drive off, ward off.
 dēsistō, ere, stitī, stitūrus, cease, desist from.
 dēspiciō, ere, spēxī, spectus, look down upon, despise.
 dēstringō, ere, strīnxī, strictus, draw (a sword).
 dēsum, deesse, dēfui, futūrus, *w. dat.*, fail, be lacking to, be wanting, desert.
 dēterior, ius, *comp. adj.*, worse, of less value.
 dexter, tra, trum, *adj.*, right, on the right hand.
 Diāna, ae, *f.*, Diana, a goddess.
 dicō, ere, dixī, dictus, say, speak, relate, appoint, tell, mention.
 diēs, ēī, *m. and f.*, day; ad diem, to the day, promptly.
 difficilis, e, *adj.*, difficult, hard.
 diligenter, *adv.*, carefully, diligently, promptly.
 diligentia, ae, *f.*, diligence.

dīmittō, ere, mīsi, missus, send forth, send out.
discēdō, ere, cessi, cessurus, go away, depart, leave.
disiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, hurl asunder, disperse, scatter.
diapōnō, ere, posuī, positus, dispose, arrange, station, set, place.
dissimilis, e, adj., unlike, dissimilar.
distineō, ēre, uī, tentus, hold apart, keep asunder, separate.
diū, adv., for a long time, long.
diūtius, comp. adv., any longer, longer.
Diviciācus, ī, m., Diviciacus, an Aeduan nobleman.
Divicō, ōnis, m., Divico, a general of the Helvetians.
dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus, separate, divide.
dō, dare, dedi, datus, give, permit, yield, grant, offer.
doceō, ēre, uī, tus, teach, show.
doleō, ēre, uī, itūrus, feel pain, suffer pain, grieve for, be grieved.
dolus, ī, m., guile, fraud, deceit, trick.
domesticus, a, um, adj., domestic, private; *domesticæ cōpiae*, supplies from home.
domus, ūs or ī, f., house, home.
dubitō, āre, āvī, ātus, hesitate, doubt.
ducentī, ae, a, card. num., two hundred.
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, lead, draw, consider, think, extend.
dum, conj., while, until, till.
Dumnorix, īgis, m., Dumnorix, an Aeduan.
duo, duae, duo, card. num., two.
duplex, plicis, adj., twofold, double.
dux, ducis, m., leader, commander.

E

ē, ex, prep. w. abl., out of, from.
ēditus, a, um, adj., high, elevated.
ēdō, ere, didī, ditus, put forth, raise, elevate; disclose.
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, lead out.
efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, bring about, make, accomplish, effect.
effugiō, ere, fūgī, —, escape, run away.
ego, mei, pers. pron., I.
ēgredior, gredi, gressus sum, go out, march out.
ēgregiē, adv., excellently, exceedingly.
eiusmodī, gen., of this kind, such.
ēmittō, ere, mīsi, missus, send out, let out, hurl.
ēnim, postpositive conj., for.
eō, ire, īi or īvi, itūrus, go.
eō, adv., to that place, thither, there.
eques, itis, m., horseman; *pl.*, cavalry.
equester, tris, tre, adj., pertaining to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry; *equestrēs cōpiae, f. pl.*, cavalry forces.
equitātus, ūs, m., cavalry.
equus, ī, m., horse.
ērumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, burst forth, break out, make a sally.
ēruptiō, ōnis, f., breaking out, sally.
et, conj., and; *et . . . et*, both . . . and.
etiam, adv. and conj., also, and also even, and even, yet, still.
ēvadō, ere, vāsī, vāsurus, go forth, escape.
ēventus, ūs, m., event, result, issue.
ēvolō, āre, āvī, ātūrus, fly out, rush forth.
ex, prep. w. abl., out of, from.

exanimātus, a, um, adj., out of breath, breathless.
exeō, ire, ii or ivi, itūrus, go out or forth, go away, depart.
exercitiātio, ōnis, f., exercise, practice, skill.
exercitus, ūs, m., army.
existimō, āre, āvi, ātus, think, believe, suppose.
expeditus, a, um, adj., unencumbered, free.
explōrātor, ōris, m., scout.
expugnō, āre, āvi, ātus, take by assault, assault, storm, capture.
expectō, āre, āvi, ātus, await, expect, wait for.
extruō, ere, strūxi, strūctus, pile up, construct, raise.

F

fābula, ae, f., fable, story.
facile, adv., easily.
facilis, e, adj., easy.
faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, make, do, put, conclude, finish.
facultās, ātis, f., supply, opportunity.
fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus, deceive, cheat.
falsus, a, um, adj., false, groundless.
falx, falcis, f., a curved hook or blade.
fās, n., indecl., right.
faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, favor, be favorable to, *w. dat.*
fēlix, icis, adj., happy, fortunate.
fera, ae, f., wild beast.
ferāx, ācis, adj., fertile, productive.
ferē, adv., nearly, almost.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, endure, bring, carry.

ferus, a, um, adj., wild, fierce, barbarous, rough.
fidēs, eī, f., faith, protection, care.
fidō, ere, fisus sum, trust, rely upon, *w. dat.*
fidus, a, um, adj., faithful.
filia, ae, f., daughter.
filius, fili, m., son.
finis, is, m., end, limit; *pl.,* territory, country.
finitimus, a, um, adj., neighboring; *as subst., finitimi, ōrum, m. pl.,* neighbors.
fiō, fieri, factus sum, become, be made, happen, come to pass.
firmus, a, um, adj., firm, strong.
flagitō, āre, āvi, ātus, demand.
flūmen, inis, n., river, stream.
fōns, fontis, m., fountain.
fortis, e, adj., brave, powerful, courageous.
fortissimus, a, um, superl. of fortis, very brave, bravest.
fortiter, adv., bravely, courageously.
fortūna, ae, f., fortune, luck, chance, fate.
fossa, ae, f., trench, ditch, fosse.
frāter, tris, m., brother.
frīgus, oris, n., cold; *pl.,* cold weather.
frūgēs, um, f. pl., fruits of the field, produce of the fields.
frumentor, āri, ātus, get grain, forage.
frumentum, ī, n., grain; *pl.,* standing grain.
fruor, ī, fructus sum, enjoy, *w. abl.*
frustrā, adv., in vain, to no purpose.
fuga, ae, f., flight.

fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee, run away.

funditor, ōris, *m.*, slinger.

fungor, ī, fūnctus sum, perform, *v. abl.*

furor, ōris, *m.*, fury, madness.

G

Galba, ae, *m.*, Galba.

Gallī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Gauls.

Gallia, ae, *f.*, Gaul.

Gallus, ī, *m.*, a Gaul.

gaudeo, ēre, gāvisus sum, rejoice, take pleasure.

Genava, ae, *f.*, Geneva.

gēns, gentis, *f.*, tribe, nation.

genus, eris, *n.*, kind, class, race.

Germānī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Germans.

gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, wage, carry on, conduct, manage.

gladius, gladi, *m.*, sword.

glōria, ae, *f.*, glory, fame.

gracilis, e, *adj.*, graceful.

grātia, ae, *f.*, favor, influence, kindness.

grātulor, āri, ātus sum, congratulate, rejoice with.

grātus, a, um, *adj.*, grateful, welcome, pleasing, agreeable.

gravis, e, *adj.*, heavy, weighty, dignified, serious, severe.

gravissimē, *superl. adv.*, most severely, most seriously.

graviter, *adv.*, heavily, seriously, gravely.

H

habeō, ēre, uī, itus, have, hold, deliver, utter, consider.

habitō, āre, āvī, ātus, dwell, abide, remain, inhabit.

Harūdēs, um, *m. pl.*, the Harudes.

hasta, ae, *f.*, spear, lance.

haud, *adv.*, by no means.

Helvētīi, ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Helvetii, a people of Gaul.

hīberna, ōrum, *n. pl.*, winter quarters.

hic, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.*, this, he, the latter.

hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place.

hiemō, āre, āvī, ātus, winter, spend or pass the winter.

hiems, mis, *f.*, winter, winter time.

homō, inis, *m. and f.*, man, human being.

honor, ōris, *m.*, honor.

hōra, ae, *f.*, hour.

hospitium, hospitī, *n.*, hospitality, friendship.

hostis, is, *m. and f.*, stranger, enemy.

hūc, *adv.*, hither, to this place.

humilis, e, *adj.*, humble.

I

iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus, throw, cast, hurl.

iam, *adv.*, now, already, long since.

ibi, *adv.*, there.

iccus, iccī, *m.*, Iccius.

īdem, eadem, idem, *dem. pron.*, the same.

identidem, *adv.*, again and again, repeatedly.

idōneus, a, um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted, convenient.

igitur, *adv.*, therefore.

ignis, is, *m.*, fire.

ignōsco, ere, nōvī, nōtus, pardon, forgive, *v. dat.*

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron., that, he, that well-known, the former.
Īlyricum, ī, n., Illyricum, on the east shore of the Adriatic.
impedimentum, ī, n., hindrance, impediment; *pl.*, baggage.
impediō, ire, ivi, itus, impede, hinder, check, entangle.
imperātor, ōris, m., commander, general.
imperātum, ī, n., command, order.
imperium, imperī, n., command, power, dominion, government.
imperō, āre, āvi, ātus, command, order, *w. dat.*; *w. ut and the subj.*
impetus, ūs, m., attack, charge, assault, force.
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus, place upon, put upon, impose, assign, *w. dat.*
importō, āre, āvi, ātus, import, bring in.
improbus, a, um, adj., bad, wicked.
in, prep. w. acc., into, against, upon, among; *w. abl.*, in, on, over, among.
incendō, ere, cendi, cēnsus, set on fire, kindle, burn.
incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus, begin.
incitō, āre, āvi, ātus, urge on, incite, arouse.
incola, ae, m., inhabitant.
incolō, ere, ui, —, dwell; live in, inhabit, *w. acc.*
incolumis, e, adj., uninjured, safe, unharmed.
incrēdibilis, e, adj., incredible.
incursiō, ōnis, f., attack, invasion, hostile inroad.
incūsō, āre, āvi, ātus, accuse, blame, find fault with.

inde, adv., thence, then.
indignitās, ātis, f., indignity, insulting treatment.
ineō, ire, ii or ivi, itus, go in or into, enter.
inermis, e, adj., unarmed, defenseless.
inferior, ius, comp. adj., lower.
inferō, ferre, intulī, inlātus, bring upon, inflict, *w. dat.*
īnfirmitas, a, um, adj., infirm, weak.
ingēns, entis, adj., huge, vast, large.
iniciō, ere, iēci, iectus, hurl or throw into, inspire.
inimicus, a, um, adj., unfriendly, hostile; *as subst.*, personal foe.
iniquitās, ātis, f., unevenness, roughness; unfavorableness.
iniquus, a, um, adj., unjust, unfavorable, uneven.
initium, initi, n., beginning; **initium facere,** to begin.
infūria, ae, f., injury, wrong, injustice.
innāscor, ī, nātus sum, follow, grow, spring up.
inopia, ae, f., want, lack, scarcity.
insequor, ī, cūtus sum, follow after, pursue.
īnsidiae, ārum, f. pl., snare, ambush, ambushcade.
instō, stāre, stitī, statūrus, be at hand; press on.
instruō, ere, strūxi, strūctus, draw up, form, arrange.
īnsula, ae, f., island.
integer, gra, grum, adj., whole; **integris viribus,** with fresh strength.
intellegō, ere, lēxi, lēctus, know, understand, perceive.
intentus, a, um, adj., intent, eager.

inter, *prep. w. acc.*, among, between; **inter sē**, to one another.
intercēdō, *ere, cessi, cessurus*, come between, be between, intervene.
interclūdō, *ere, clūsi, clūsus*, cut off, shut off, hinder, prevent.
interdiū, *adv.*, by day.
intereā, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile.
interficiō, *ere, fēci, fectus*, kill, destroy.
intericiō, *ere, iēcī, iectus*, throw between, put between, intersperse.
interior, *ius, comp. adj.*, inner, interior of.
intermittō, *ere, misī, missus*, interrupt, cease, leave vacant.
interneciō, *ōnis, f.*, destruction, extermination, annihilation.
interscindō, *ere, scidi, scissus*, cut or break down, destroy.
intrōdūcō, *ere, dūxi, ductus*, lead within or into, introduce.
inveniō, *ire, vēni, ventus*, come upon, find, find out.
ipse, *a, um, intensive pron.*, that or this very; self, himself, herself, very.
iracundus, *a, um, adj.*, irritable, passionate, angry.
is, ea, id, *dem. pron.*, that or this person; he, she, it; *adj.*, this, that, it.
iste, *a, ud, dem. pron.*, this or that person; he, she, it, *referring especially to that which is near, or to the person addressed.*
ita, *adv.*, thus, so; yes, it is so, true.
Italia, *ae, f.*, Italy.
itaque, *conj.*, and so, therefore.
item, *adv.*, likewise, again, also.
iter, itineris, *n.*, journey, road, right

of way, march; **ex itinere**, on the march; **iter facere**, to march.
iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time.
iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus, order, bid, command, *w. inf.*
iucundus, a, um, adj., pleasing, agreeable, entertaining.
iūdex, icis, m., judge.
iūdicō, āre, āvi, ātus, judge, decide.
iugum, ī, n., yoke.
Iūlius, Iūli, m., Julius.
iumentum, ī, n., beast of burden, draft animal.
iūnior, ius, comp. adj., younger.
Iūra, ae, m., Jura, a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone.
iūs, iūris, n., right, justice, law.
iūstitia, ae, f., justice.
iūstus, a, um, adj., just, right, fair, equitable.
iuvenis, is, m., young man.
iuvō, āre, iuvi, iūtus, assist, help, aid, *w. acc.*

L

L., *abbreviation for Lūcius.*
Labiēnus, ī, m., Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
labor, ōris, m., labor, work, toil.
laccēsō, ere, ivī, itus, excite, attack, harass, irritate.
lacrima, ae, f., tear.
lacus, ūs, m., lake.
laetus, a, um, adj., joyful, glad.
lapis, idis, m., stone.
lātitūdō, inis, f., width, breadth.
lātus, a, um, adj., wide, broad.
latus, eris, n., side, flank, wing (of an army).

laudō, āre, āvī, ātus, praise.
 lēgātīō, ōnis, *f.*, embassy, legation.
 lēgātus, ī, *m.*, lieutenant, ambassador.
 legiō, ōnis, *f.*, legion, consisting of ten cohorts, from 4000 to 6000 men.
 legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, gather, collect; read.
 lēniter, *adv.*, smoothly, gently.
 levis, e, *adj.*, light.
 lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law.
 libenter, *adv.*, gladly, willingly.
 liber, brī, *m.*, book.
 liber, era, erum, *adj.*, free.
 liberālitās, ātis, *f.*, kindness, generosity, liberality.
 liberī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, children (of free-born parents).
 liberō, āre, āvī, ātus, free, deliver, liberate.
 Liger, eris, *m.*, the Loire.
 Lingonēs, um, *m. pl.*, the Lingones.
 Liscus, ī, *m.*, Liscus.
 locus, ī, *m.*, place, position; *in pl. n.*, loca, ōrum.
 longē, *adv.*, far away, distant.
 longitūdō, inis, *f.*, length.
 longus, a, um, *adj.*, long.
 loquor, ī, cūtus sum, speak, plead, talk.
 lūdō, ere, sī, sus, play, sport, make fun of, ridicule.
 lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light; primā lūce, at daybreak.

M

M., abbreviation for Mārcus.
 magis, *comp. adv.*, more.
 magister, trī, *m.*, teacher, master.
 magnitūdō, inis, *f.*, greatness, size, magnitude.

magnopere, *adv.*, greatly, very much, exceedingly.
 magnus, a, um, *adj.*, great, large; magnis itineribus, by forced marches.
 maior, ius, *comp. of magnus*, greater, larger.
 maiōrēs, um, *m. pl.*, ancestors.
 male, *adv.*, badly, ill, wickedly.
 maleficium, malefici, *n.*, evil deed, injury, wrong.
 mālō, mālle, mālui, —, prefer, wish rather.
 malum, ī, *n.*, evil thing, misfortune, calamity.
 malus, a, um, *adj.*, evil, wicked, bad, injurious.
 mandātum, ī, *n.*, injunction, command, order.
 mandō, āre, āvī, ātus, order, command, commit, intrust.
 maneō, ēre, mānsī, sūrus, remain, await.
 manus, ūs, *f.*, hand, band.
 mare, is, *n.*, sea.
 maritimus, a, um, *adj.*, pertaining to the sea, maritime.
 māter, tris, *f.*, mother.
 mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, hasten, make haste.
 mātūrus, a, um, *adj.*, ripe, fit, early.
 maximē, *superl. adv.*, especially.
 maximus, a, um, *superl. adj.*, greatest, largest, very large.
 medius, a, um, *adj.*, middle; mediō colle, on the middle of the hill.
 melior, ius, *comp. adj.*, better.
 memoria, ae, *f.*, memory.
 Menapiī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Menapii.
 mēns, mentis, *f.*, mind, soul.

mēnsis, *is, m.*, month.
 mercātor, ōris, *m.*, merchant, trader.
 metus, ūs, *m.*, fear.
 meus, a, um, *poss. pron.*, my, mine.
 miles, itis, *m.*, soldier.
 militāris, e, *adj.*, pertaining to a soldier, military.
 mille, thousand; *pl. milia, ium, n.*, thousands.
 minimē, *superl. adv.*, not at all, by no means, least; *minimē vērō*, certainly not.
 minimus, a, um, *adj., superl. of parvus*, very small, least.
 minor, us, *comp. adj.*, less, younger.
 mirus, a, um, *adj.*, wonderful, strange, remarkable.
 miser, era, erum, *adj.*, wretched, unhappy.
 mittō, ere, misī, missus, send, dismiss; hurl, cast.
 modus, ī, *m.*, manner, end, limit; way.
 moenia, ium, *n. pl.*, walls, walls of a city, ramparts.
 molestus, a, um, *adj.*, annoying, disagreeable, unpleasant, troublesome.
 moneō, ēre, uī, itus, warn, advise.
 mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain.
 mora, ae, *f.*, delay.
 Morini, ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Morini.
 morior, morī, mortuus sum, die.
 moror, āri, ātus sum, delay, wait, hinder.
 mors, mortis, *f.*, death.
 mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom, manner; *pl.*, manners, character.
 moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move, excite, disturb.
 mulier, eris, *f.*, woman.

multitūdō, inis, *f.*, multitude, great number.
 multum, *adv.*, much.
 multus, a, um, *adj.*, much; *pl.*, many.
 mūniō, ire, īvī, itus, fortify, defend with a wall, defend.
 mūnitīō, ōnis, *f.*, fortification, defense.
 mūnitus, a, um, *adj.*, defended, fortified.
 mūnus, eris, *n.*, duty, present, work.
 mūrus, ī, *m.*, wall.
 mūs, mūris, *m.*, mouse.
 mūsa, ae, *f.*, a muse.
 mūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, change, alter.

N

nam, *conj.*, for.
 nanciscor, ī, nactus or nactus sum, get, obtain, find.
 nārrō, āre, āvī, ātus, tell, relate, narrate.
 nātiō, ōnis, *f.*, race, nation, people.
 nātūra, ae, *f.*, nature, character, disposition.
 nauta, ae, *m.*, sailor.
 nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātus, sail, set sail.
 nāvis, is, *f.*, ship, boat.
 nē, *conj.*, that not, that, lest; *with a participle*, from; *nē . . . quidem*, not . . . even.
 -ne, *enclitic, used in asking questions.*
 necesse, n. *adj.*, necessary, unavoidable.
 necessitūdō, inis, *f.*, necessity, alliance, friendship.
 negō, āre, āvī, ātus, deny, say not.
 negōtium, negōtī, *n.*, business, occupation; trouble, difficulty.

nēmō, *dat. nēmīni, m. and f.*, no one, nobody.

neque or **nec**, *conj.*, and not, nor; **neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor.

Nerviī, **ōrum**, *m. pl.*, the Nervii, a warlike people of Gaul.

nesciō, **īre**, **ivī**, —, not know, be ignorant.

neuter, **tra**, **trum**, *adj.*, neither.

nihil, *n., indecl.*, nothing.

nimum, *adv.*, too much.

nisi, *conj.*, unless, if not, except.

nō, **āre**, **āvī**, —, swim.

nōbilitās, **ātis**, *f.*, nobility, nobles.

nocēō, **ēre**, **uī**, **itūrus**, injure, do harm to, *w. dat.*

noctū, *adv.*, by night.

nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, —, be unwilling, not to wish.

nōmen, **inis**, *n.*, name.

nōminō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, name, call by name.

nōn, *adv.*, not; **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.

nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.

nōnne, *adv.*, not? *expecting an affirmative answer.*

nōnus, **a**, **um**, *ord. num.*, ninth.

nōs, **nostrum**, *pers. pron.*, we.

noster, **tra**, **trum**, *poss. pron.* our, ours; **nostrī**, **ōrum**, *m. pl.*, our men.

novem, *card. num.*, nine.

Noviodūnum, **ī**, *n.*, Noviodunum, a city in Gaul.

novus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, new, young.

nox, **noctis**, *f.*, night; **primā nocte**, at nightfall.

nūbēs, *is, f.*, cloud.

nūdus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, bare, stripped, exposed, deprived of.

nūllus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, none, no, not any.

num, *adv.*, in direct questions expects the answer no; in indirect it is translated whether.

numerus, **ī**, *m.*, number, quantity.

nunc, *adv.*, now, at this time.

nunquam (**numquam**), *adv.*, never.

nūntiō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, announce, report, declare.

nūntius, **nūntī**, *m.*, messenger.

nūper, *adv.*, recently.

O

ob, *prep. w. acc.*, on account of.

obses, **idis**, *m. and f.*, hostage.

obsidēō, **ēre**, **sēdī**, **sessus**, besiege, blockade.

obsistō, **ere**, **stītī**, **stītūrus**, stand in the way of, oppose, resist, *w. dat.*

obsum, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, be a disadvantage to, injure, *w. dat.*

obtinēō, **ēre**, **uī**, **tentus**, hold, obtain, possess, occupy.

occāsus, **ūs**, *m.*, setting, falling;

occāsus sōlis, sunset.

occidō, **ere**, **cidī**, **cisus**, strike down, kill.

occupātus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, busy, occupied.

occupō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, seize, hold, occupy.

occurrō, **ere**, **currī**, **cursūrus**, run to meet, meet, come upon, find, *w. dat.*

octāvus, **a**, **um**, *ord. num.*, eighth.

octō, *card. num.*, eight.

oculus, **ī**, *m.*, eye; **ex oculis**, out of sight.

omnīnō, *adv.*, altogether, wholly, at all.

omnis, **e**, *adj.*, all, every; **sua omnia**,

n. pl., all their property.

onus, **eris**, *n.*, burden, weight.

opiniō, ōnis, f., opinion, reputation.
oppidāni, ōrum, m. pl., townsmen, inhabitants of the town.
oppidum, ī, n., town.
opprimō, ere, pressi, pressus, oppress, crush, overwhelm, overpower.
oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātus, storm, attack, assault, besiege.
optimus, a, um, superl. adj., best.
opus, eris, n., work, labor.
ōra, ae, f., shore, coast; **ōra maritima**, seashore.
ōrātiō, ōnis, f., speech, oration.
ōrātor, ōris, m., speaker, orator.
ōrdō, inis, m., rank, row, order, arrangement.
Orgetorix, igis, m., Orgetorix, leader of the Helvetii.
orior, iri, ortus sum, arise, rise, begin.
ōrnō, āre, āvi, ātus, adorn, equip, furnish.
ostendō, ere, dī, tus, show, display, exhibit.

P

P., abbreviation for **Pūblius**.
pābulum, ī, n., fodder, forage.
pācō, āre, āvi, ātus, pacify, subdue.
paene, adv., almost, nearly.
pāgus, ī, m., district, canton.
palūs, ūdis, f., swamp, marsh.
parātus, a, um, adj., ready, prepared.
parcō, ere, peperci, parsus, spare, *w. dat.*
parō, āre, āvi, ātus, get ready, prepare; procure.
pars, partis, f., part, direction.
parum, adv., too little, not enough.
parvus, a, um, adj., small, little.
passus, ūs, m., pace, *consisting of five*

Roman feet; **passūs mille**, thousand paces, (a Roman) mile.
patefaciō, ere, fēci, factus, open, throw open.
pater, tris, m., father.
patior, ī, passus sum, allow, suffer, endure.
patria, ae, f., native country, fatherland.
paucī, ae, a, pl. adj., few.
paucitās, ātis, f., smallness, small number.
pāx, pācis, f., peace.
pecūnia, ae, f., money.
pedester, tris, tre, adj., belonging to a foot soldier, pedestrian; **pedestrēs cōpiae**, infantry forces.
Pedius, Pedī, m., Quintus Pedius.
peior, ius, comp. adj., worse.
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, beat, strike, rout, drive.
per, prep. w. acc., through, over, across, by, during.
peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus, finish, complete, accomplish.
perdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, lead through, lead, prolong.
perferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bring through, bring to an end; endure.
perfringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus, break through, destroy.
perfuga, ae, m., deserter.
periculōsus, a, um, adj., dangerous.
periculum, ī, n., danger.
peritus, a, um, adj., experienced, skilled, familiar with.
permittō, ere, misi, missus, give up, intrust, permit.
permovēō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, alarm, move thoroughly, excite.

perpetuus, a, um, *adj.*, perpetual, everlasting.
 perspicĭo, ere, spĕxĭ, spectus, see through, perceive.
 persuādĕo, ĕre, suāsĭ, suāsŭrus, persuade, *w. dat.*
 perterreō, ĕre, uĭ, itus, terrify thoroughly, frighten.
 pertineō, ĕre, uĭ, tentus, extend, pertain to, belong to.
 perturbō, ĕre, āvĭ, ātus, throw into confusion, disturb.
 perveniō, ĭre, vēnĭ, ventŭrus, come to, arrive at, reach.
 pĕs, pedis, *m.*, foot.
 pessimus, a, um, *superl. adj.*, worst.
 petō, ere, ĩvĭ or ĩi, ĩtus, seek, beg, entreat, attack.
 phalanx, angis, *f.*, phalanx, battalion.
 pĭlum, ĩ, *n.*, javelin.
 plānĕ, *adv.*, plainly, clearly.
 plānitĭs, ĕi, *f.*, plain.
 plĕbs, ĕbis, *f.*, the common people.
 plŭrimus, a, um, *superl. adj.*, very much, most; *pl.*, very many.
 plŭs, plŭris, *comp. adj.*, more.
 poĕta, ae, *m.*, poet.
 polliceor, ĕrĭ, itus sum, promise.
 pōnō, ere, posuĭ, positus, place, put, pitch, set, establish.
 pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge.
 populor, ārĭ, ātus sum, lay waste, ravage, devastate.
 populus, ĩ, *m.*, people.
 porta, ae, *f.*, gate, door.
 portō, ĕre, āvĭ, ātus, carry, bear.
 poscō, ere, poposcĭ, —, demand.
 possessiō, ōnis, *f.*, possession.
 possum, posse, potuĭ, —, be able, can.

post, *prep. w. acc.*, after, behind; *adv.*, after.
 posterus, a, um, *adj.*, next, following.
 postquam, *conj.*, after.
 postridiĕ, *adv.*, on the day after, *w. gen.*
 postulātum, ĩ, *n.*, demand, request.
 postulō, ĕre, āvĭ, ātus, demand, request.
 potĕns, entis, *adj.*, powerful.
 potentia, ae, *f.*, power.
 potestās, ātis, *f.*, power, authority.
 potior, ĩrĭ, itus sum, become master of, get control of, *w. abl.*
 potius, *adv.*, rather, more.
 prae, *prep. w. abl.*, in front of, before.
 praebeō, ĕre, uĭ, itus, furnish, offer, show, present.
 praiceps, ĩpitis, *adj.*, headlong.
 praedicō, ĕre, āvĭ, ātus, assert, declare.
 praefectus, ūs, *m.*, prefect, a Roman officer.
 praeficiō, ere, fĕcĭ, fectus, place in command of, *w. acc. and dat.*
 praemittō, ere, misi, missus, send forward or ahead.
 praemium, praemi, *n.*, reward.
 praesertim, *adv.*, especially, particularly.
 praesidium, praesidi, *n.*, defense, guard, garrison, protection.
 praestō, ĕre, stitĭ, stitus, stand out, be superior, excel.
 praesum, esse, fuĭ, —, be at the head of, be over, command, *w. dat.*
 praeter, *prep. w. acc.*, before, in front of, beyond.
 praeterea, *adv.*, in addition, besides.
 primō, *adv.*, at first, at the beginning.

primum, *adv.*, first, in the first place;
primum omnium, first of all.
primus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, first.
princeps, **ip̄is**, *m.*, chief, leading man.
principatus, **ūs**, *m.*, chief place, leadership.
prior, **ius**, *comp. adj.*, former, previous.
pristinus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, former.
priusquam, *conj.*, before; *often prius . . . quam.*
privātus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, private.
privō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, deprive, rob.
prō, *prep. w. abl.*, in front of, before, in behalf of, for, instead of, as.
probō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, approve.
prōcēdō, **ere**, **cessī**, **cessūrus**, go forward, advance, proceed.
Procellus, **i**, *m.*, Procellus.
procul, *adv.*, in the distance, at a distance.
prōdūcō, **ere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**, lead forth or forward, bring forward.
proelium, **proelī**, *n.*, battle; **proelium committere**, to engage or join in battle.
profectiō, **ōnis**, *f.*, setting out, departure.
proficiscor, **i**, **fectus sum**, set out, advance, depart, march.
prohibeō, **ēre**, **uī**, **itus**, restrain, hinder, prevent, keep from, prohibit.
prōiciō, **ere**, **iēcī**, **iectus**, throw down, throw, sling forward; abandon.
prōmittō, **ere**, **misī**, **missus**, send forth, promise.
prōmoveō, **ēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtus**, move forward, advance.
prope, *adv.*, near, nearly.
properō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, hasten.

propior, **ius**, *comp. of prope*, nearer.
propter, *prep. w. acc.*, because of, on account of.
prōsum, **prōdesse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, be of use, benefit, profit, *w. dat.*
prōvideō, **ēre**, **vidī**, **vīsus**, look before, provide, foresee.
prōvincia, **ae**, *f.*, province.
proximē, *superl. adv.*, very near, most recently, last.
proximus, **a**, **um**, *superl. adj.*, very near, nearest, next, last.
prūdentē, *adv.*, prudently, wisely.
puella, **ae**, *f.*, girl.
puer, **erī**, *m.*, boy; *pl.*, children.
pugna, **ae**, *f.*, battle, fight.
pugnō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, fight; **pugnātum est**, they fought.
pulcher, **chra**, **chrum**, *adj.*, beautiful.
pulchrē, *adv.*, beautifully.
putō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, think, suppose, reckon, consider.

Q

Q., *abbreviation for Quintus.*
quā, *adv.*, by which place, where;
quā dē causā, *prepositional phrase*, for this reason, therefore, why.
quaerō, **ere**, **quaesivī** or **īī**, **ītus**, ask, seek, inquire.
quam, *conj.*, than; *adv.*, how, as much as, as, than; **quam minimum**, as small as possible.
quamquam, *conj.*, although, and yet.
quandō, *adv.*, at what time, when.
quantus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, how great.
quārē, *adv.*, by what means, wherefore, why, therefore.
quārtus, **a**, **um**, *ord. num.*, fourth.
quattuor, *card. num.*, four.

-que, *particle affixed to the word it annexes, and.*

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron., who, which, what, that.*

quidam, quaedam, quoddam, *indef. pron., a certain, certain one, some.*

quidem, *adv., indeed, even.*

quin, *conj., that not, but that, lest ; with a participle, from.*

quindecim, *card. num., fifteen.*

quingenti, ae, a, *card. num., five hundred.*

quingūāgintā, *card. num., fifty.*

quīnque, *card. num., five.*

quīntus, a, um, *ord. num., fifth.*

quis, quae, quid, *interrog. pron., who ? which ? what ? as indef. pron. after sī, nē, num, any one, anything.*

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or quidquam, *indef. pron., any one, anybody, anything.*

quisque, quaeque, quodque or quidque, *indef. pron., each, every, each one, everybody, everything.*

quō, *adv., whither, where.*

quod, *conj., because.*

quondam, *adv., once, at one time, formerly.*

quoque, *adv., also, too, placed after the emphatic word.*

R

ratio, ōnis, *f., reason, method, plan, manner.*

recēns, entis, *adj., fresh, recent.*

recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, take back, recover ; sē recipere, to betake themselves, retire, retreat.

recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, refuse, decline.

reddō, ere, didī, dītus, give back, return, restore, surrender.

redigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, lead back, render, reduce.

redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, buy off, release, ransom.

redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, lead back.

referō, ferre, rettulī, relātus, bear or bring back, report, announce.

reficiō, ere, fēcī, factus, refresh, repair.

refringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus, break open, break in pieces, break down.

rēgīna, ae, *f., queen.*

regiō, ōnis, *f., region, district.*

rēgnum, ī, *n., royal power, throne, kingdom.*

regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, rule, guide, direct, govern.

relanguēscō, ere, langūī, —, grow languid or faint, become weary or weak.

relinquō, ere, liquī, lictus, leave, leave behind ; *pass., remain.*

reliquus, a, um, *adj., remaining, rest of ; reliquī, ōrum, m. pl., the rest.*

remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, remain.

Rēmī, ōrum, *m. pl., the Remi, a people of Gaul.*

removēō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, remove.

rēmūs, ī, *m., oar.*

renovō, āre, āvī, ātus, renew.

repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus, drive back, repulse.

repentinus, a, um, *adj., sudden, unexpected.*

reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus, find out, find, discover, ascertain.

reprehendō, ere, ī, hēnsus, blame, censure, find fault with.
rēs, rei, f., thing, matter, affair, fact, event, circumstances; **rēs frūmentāria, f.**, grain supply; **rēs militāris, f.**, military affairs.
resistō, ere, stitī, —, resist, oppose, *w. dat.*
respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus, reply, respond, answer.
respōnsū, ī, n., reply, response.
restituō, ere, uī, ūtus, restore, rebuild, give back.
retineō, ēre, uī, tentus, hold back, restrain, retain.
revertor, ī, versus sum, *deponent except in the perf. system which has revertī, reverteram, etc., from revertō, ere, ī*, turn back, return; come or go back.
revocō, āre, āvī, ātūs, call back, withdraw.
rēx, rēgis, m., king.
Rhēnus, ī, m., the Rhine, the dividing river between Gaul and Germany.
Rhodanus, ī, m., the Rhone.
ripa, ae, f., bank, river bank.
rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, ask, question.
Rōma, ae, f., Rome.
Rōmānus, a, um, adj., Roman.
rosa, ae, f., rose.
rūmor, ōris, m., rumor, report.
rūrsus, adv., again.
rūs, rūris, n., country (*opposed to city*).

S

Sabīnus, ī, m., Sabinus.
saepe, adv., often.
saepēs, is, f., hedge.

saepius, comp. adv., more often.
sagitta, ae, f., arrow.
sagittārius, sagittārī, m., archer, bowman.
salūs, ūtis, f., safety.
salvus, a, um, adj., safe.
sānē, adv., by all means, truly, of course, certainly.
sapiēns, entis, adj., wise.
sarcina, ae, f., bundle; *pl.*, personal baggage.
satis, adj. and adv., enough, sufficiently.
scientia, ae, f., knowledge, skill, science.
sciō, ire, ivī, itus, know, understand.
scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, write.
scūtum, ī, n., shield.
sē, see suī; sē suaque omnia, themselves and all their belongings.
secundus, a, um, adj., second, favorable.
sed, conj., but.
sēdēs, is, f., seat, abode, dwelling place.
sedile, is, n., seat, abode.
semper, adv., always.
senātus, ūs, m., senate.
senex, senis, adj., old, aged; *as subst., m.*, old man.
senior, ius, comp. adj., older.
sentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, know.
septem, card. num., seven.
septimus, a, um, ord. num., seventh.
Sēquanī, ōrum, m. pl., the Sequani.
sequor, ī, cūtus sum, follow, pursue.
servitūs, ūtis, f., slavery, servitude.
servus, ī, m., slave, servant.
sescentī, ae, a, card. num., six hundred.

sex, *card. num.*, six.
 sextus, a, um, *ord. num.*, sixth.
 si, *conj.*, if.
 signifer, eri, *m.*, standard bearer.
 signum, i, *n.*, standard, signal.
 silva, ae, *f.*, wood, woods, forest.
 similis, e, *adj.*, like, similar.
 simul ac, *conj.*, as soon as.
 sine, *prep. w. abl.*, without.
 singularis, e, *adj.*, singular, extraordinary, remarkable.
 singuli, ae, a, *num. distributive adj.*, single, individual, separate; one by one.
 sinister, tra, trum, *adj.*, left.
 socius, soci, *m.*, ally.
 sol, solis, *m.*, sun.
 soleo, ere, itus sum, be wont, be accustomed, use.
 solus, a, um, *adj.*, alone, only.
 Sontiatēs, um, *m. pl.*, the Sontiates.
 soror, oris, *f.*, sister.
 spatium, spatii, *n.*, space, distance, time.
 speciēs, ei, *f.*, appearance, sight.
 speculātor, oris, *m.*, spy.
 spēs, spei, *f.*, hope.
 spīritus, ūs, *m.*, spirit, pride, insolence.
 sponte, *abl.*, of one's accord, voluntarily; meā sponte, of my own accord.
 statim, *adv.*, suddenly, immediately, at once.
 statūra, ae, *f.*, stature, height.
 stella, ae, *f.*, star.
 stipendiārius, a, um, *adj.*, tributary; *pl.*, as *subst.*, stipendiārii, ōrum, tributaries.
 strepitus, ūs, *m.*, noise, din, roar.

studeō, ēre, uī, —, desire, pay attention to, *w. dat.*
 studium, studii, *n.*, desire, zeal.
 sub, *prep. w. acc. and abl.*, under; sub monte, at the foot of the mountain.
 subito, *adv.*, suddenly.
 subitus, a, um, *adj.*, sudden.
 subsidium, subsidii, *n.*, help, assistance, relief, reinforcement.
 succēdō, ere, cessi, cessurus, come up, approach, take the place of, succeed.
 Suessionēs, um, *m. pl.*, the Suessiones.
 sui, sibi, se, se, *reflex. pron.*, of himself, herself, itself, themselves; inter se, to one another.
 sum, esse, fui, futurus, be.
 summa, ae, *f.*, leadership.
 summus, a, um, *superl. adj.*, highest, top of, greatest, utmost.
 super, *prep. w. acc. and abl.*, over, above, upon, on the top of.
 superior, ius, *comp. adj.*, former, higher, upper.
 superō, āre, āvi, ātus, overcome, conquer, surpass, pass over, ascend.
 supersum, esse, fui, futurus, be over, remain, survive.
 suppetō, ere, ivi or ii, iturus, be at hand.
 supplex, icis, *m. and f.*, suppliant.
 supplicātiō, ōnis, *f.*, supplication, prayer, entreaty, thanksgiving.
 suprēmus, a, um, *see summus.*
 sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus, sustain, endure, hold out.
 suus, a, um, *poss. pron.*, his, hers, its, her; their, theirs; his own, etc.

T

T., abbreviation for Titus.

tālis, e, *adj.*, such a.

tam, *adv.*, so.

tamen, *conj.*, yet, nevertheless.

tandem, *adv.*, at last, at length, finally.

tantus, a, um, *adj.*, so great.

Tarusātēs, ium, *m. pl.*, the Tarusates.

tēlum, ī, *n.*, missile, dart, weapon, javelin, spear.

tempestās, ātis, *f.*, storm, tempest, weather.

temptō, āre, āvī, ātus, try, tempt, attempt.

tempus, oris, *n.*, time.

teneō, ēre, uī, tus, hold, keep, possess.

tergum, ī, *n.*, the back; *terga vertere*, to turn the back, flee, retreat.

terra, ae, *f.*, land.

terreō, ēre, uī, itus, terrify, frighten.

terror, ōris, *m.*, terror, fright.

tertius, a, um, *ord. num.*, third.

testūdō, inis, *f.*, shed, shelter, tortoise-shaped covering; roof of shields.

Tigurīnus, ī, *m.*, Tigurinus, a district in Helvetia.

timeō, ēre, uī, —, fear, be afraid of.

timor, ōris, *m.*, fear.

tormentum, ī, *n.*, an engine for hurling missiles, hurling engine.

tōtus, a, um, *adj.*, whole, entire.

trādō, ere, didī, dītus, give up, surrender.

trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, lead or carry across, transport.

trāns, *prep. w. acc.*, across, over, beyond.

trānseō, ire, īī or īvī, itus, go across, cross.

trānsgridior, ī, gressus sum, go over, cross.

trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātus, carry across or over, transport.

trēs, tria, *card. num.*, three.

Trēverī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Treveri.

tribūnus, ī, *m.*, tribune.

trīgintā, *card. num.*, thirty.

triplex, icis, *adj.*, threefold, triple.

trīstis, e, *adj.*, sad.

tū, tuī, *pers. pron.*, thou, you.

tuba, ae, *f.*, trumpet.

tum, *adv.*, then, at that time.

tumultus, ūs, *m.*, tumult, uprising, confusion.

tumulus, ī, *m.*, mound, hill.

turpitūdō, inis, *f.*, disgrace, shame.

turris, is, *f.*, tower.

tūtō, *adv.*, safely, in safety.

tūtus, a, um, *adj.*, safe.

tuus, a, um, *poss. pron.*, thy, thine, your, yours.

U

ubi, *conj.*, where, when.

ūllus, a, um, *adj.*, any.

ulterior, ius, *comp. adj.*, farther.

ultimus, a, um, *superl. adj.*, last, farthest, most remote.

ultrā, *prep. w. acc.*, on the other side, beyond.

unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence.

ūndecim, *card. num.*, eleven.

undique, *adv.*, from all sides.

ūniversus, a, um, *adj.*, all together, whole, entire.

ūnus, a, um, *card. num.*, one.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.

urgedō, ēre, ursī, —, urge, press hard, beset.
ūsque, adv., even, as far as, all the way to.
ūsus, ūs, m., experience, use.
ut, conj., that, in order that, so that; *after verbs of fearing*, that not; *w. ind.*, as, when; *w. subj.*, often translated by the present infinitive; **ut primum, conj.**, as soon as, *w. ind.*
uter, utra, utrum, adj., which of two.
uterque, utraque, utrumque, adj., each, either, each one, both.
utinam, adv. w. subj., I wish that! would that!
ūtōr, ī, ūsus sum, use, enjoy, employ, w. abl.

V

vadum, ī, n., ford.
valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, be well, be strong, avail; valē, farewell.
vallēs or vallis, is, f., valley.
vāllum, ī, n., wall, rampart.
varius, a, um, adj., various, different.
vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus, lay waste, devastate.
vāstus, a, um, adj., vast.
vectigal, ālis, n., tax, revenue, tribute.
vehementer, adv., eagerly, violently, vehemently.
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus, carry, bear; pass., currū vehī, to ride in a chariot; equō or equīs vehī, to ride on horseback.
vēlum, ī, n., sail.
Venetī, ōrum, m. pl., the Veneti.
veniō, ire, vēnī, ventūrus, come.

Verbigenus, ī, m., Verbigenus.
vereor, erī, itus sum, fear, be afraid.
Vergilius, ī, m., Vergil (70-19 B.C.), a great Latin poet.
vergō, ere, —, —, turn, be situated, slope.
vērō, postpositive adv., in truth, surely, certainly, yes, but, though.
vertex, icis, m., top, summit.
vertō, ere, ī, versus, turn; sē vertere, to wheel about.
vēscor, ī, —, —, take food, eat, feed upon, w. abl.
Vesontio, ōnia, m., Vesontio, a city in Gaul.
vesper, erī, m., evening; **sub vesperum, towards evening.**
vester, tra, trum, poss. pron., your, yours.
vetus, eris, adj., old, former, of long standing.
vēxillum, ī, n., banner, flag.
via, ae, f., road, way.
victōria, ae, f., victory.
vīcus, ī, m., village.
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see; pass., be seen, seem.
vigilanter, adv., watchfully.
vigilantia, ae, f., vigilance, watchfulness.
vigilia, ae, f., watch of the night (fourth part of the night).
vīgintī, card. num., twenty.
villa, ae, f., farmhouse.
vīnciō, ire, vīnxī, vinctus, bind.
vīncō, ere, vicī, victus, conquer, overcome.
vīnea, ae, f., shed (*for protecting besiegers*).
vīnum, ī, n., wine.

vir, viri, m., man.	vix, adv., hardly, scarcely, with difficulty.
virgō, inis, f., virgin, maid.	Vocātēs, ium, m. pl., the Vocates.
Viridovix, icis, m., Viridovix, a chief of the Venelli.	vocō, āre, āvi, ātus, call, summon.
virtūs, ūtis, f., manhood, bravery, courage, valor, virtue.	volō, velle, volui, —, wish, be willing.
vīs, (vīs), f., strength, force, power; <i>pl.</i> , vīrēs, ium, strength.	vōs, vestrum, pl. of tū, you.
vīta, ae, f., life.	vōx, vōcis, f., voice, word.
vivō, ere, vixī, victūrus, live.	vulgus, i, n., crowd, common people.
	vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātus, wound.
	vulnus, eris, n., wound.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

- abandon**, relinqūō, ere, liquī, lictus.
able: be able, possum, posse, potuī.
abode, sēdēs, is, *f.*
about, dē, *w. abl.*; circum, *w. acc.*;
 circiter, *adv.*; about to, *sign of first*
periphrastic conjugation.
absent: be absent, absum, esse, āfui,
 āfutūrus.
accept, accipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus.
accomplish, cōficiō, ere, fēci, fectus.
accord: of his own accord, of my
 own accord, suā sponte, meā sponte.
account: on account of, propter, *w.*
acc.: *abl. of cause.*
accustomed: be accustomed, *perf.*
of consuēscō, ere, suēvi, consuētus;
 soleō, ēre, itus sum.
across, trāns, *w. acc.*
Aduatuci, Aduatuci, ōrum, *m. pl.*
advance, prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessūrus.
advise, moneō, ēre, ui, itus.
Aeduans, Aeduī, ōrum, *m. pl.*
affect, adficiō, ere, fēci, fectus.
after, post, *w. acc.*; postquam, *conj.*
again, iterum.
against, in or contrā, *w. acc.*
ago, ante.
aid, auxilium, auxili, *n.*
all, omnis, e; tōtus, a, um; at all,
 omnīnō.
Allobroges, Allobrogēs, um, *m. pl.*
ally, socius, soci, *m.*
- almost**, paene, prope.
along, per, *w. acc.*; secundum, *w. acc.*
Alps, Alpēs, ium, *f. pl.*
also, quoque, *following emphatic*
word; etiam.
although, cum, *w. subj.*; *sign of abl.*
abs.
always, semper.
am, sum, esse, fui, futūrus.
ambassador, lēgātus, ī, *m.*
ambush, insidiac, ārum, *f. pl.*
among, in, *w. abl.*; apud or inter, *w. acc.*
anchor, ancora, ac, *f.*
and, et, -que, atque; and so, itaque.
announce, nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātus;
 praedicō, āre, āvi, ātus.
annoy, lacessō, ere, īvi, itus.
annoying, molestus, a, um.
another, alius, a, ud; to one another,
 inter sē; of another, aliēnus, a, um.
answer, respondeō, ēre, di, spōnsus.
any (person or thing), ūllus, a, um;
 aliquis, qua, quid (quod); quis-
 quam, quidquam.
approach, appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātus;
 adeō, īre, īi, itus; accēdō, ere, cessi,
 cessūrus.
Aquitania, Aquitānia, ac, *f.*
Aquitanians (Aquitani), Aquitāni,
 ōrum, *m. pl.*
Arar, Arar, aris, *m.*
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī, *m.*
arm, armō, āre, āvi, ātus.

armed men, armātī, ōrum, *m. pl.*
arms, arma, ōrum, *n. pl.*
army, exercitus, ūs, *m.*
arrival, adventus, ūs, *m.*
arrogance, adrogantia, ae, *f.*
arrow, sagitta, ae, *f.*
as, ut, *sign of double dat.*; **as soon as**, simul ac or atque, cum primum.
ask, quaerō, ere, sivi, situs.
assault, oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātus; **take by assault**, expugnō, āre, āvi, ātus.
assist, iuvō, āre, iūvi, iūtus, *w. acc.*; **adsum**, esse, fui, futūrus, *w. dat.*
at, ad, *w. acc.*; sub, *w. acc.*; in, *w. abl.*; *sign of abl.*
Athens, Athēnae, ārum, *f. pl.*
attack, impetus, ūs, *m.*; **make an attack**, impetum faciō, ere, feci, factus, *w. in and acc.*
attack, oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātus; **impetum faciō**, ere, feci, factus, *w. in and acc.*
attempt, cōnātus, ūs, *m.*
away: **be away**, absum, esse, āfui, āfutūrus.

B

bad, malus, a, um; **improbus**, a, um.
baggage, impedimenta, ōrum, *n. pl.*
band, manus, ūs, *f.*
bank (of river), rīpa, ae, *f.*
barbarous, barbarus, a, um.
battle, proelium, proeli, *n.*; pugna, ae, *f.*
be, sum, esse, fui, futūrus.
bear, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.
bear against, inferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, *w. dat.*
bear away or off, auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus.

beast of burden, iumentum, ī, *n.*
beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrom.
because, quod; **because of**, propter, *w. acc.*
become, fiō, fieri, factus sum.
become master of, potior, iri, itus sum, *w. abl.*
become weak, relanguēscō, ere, languī, —.
before, prae or prō, *w. abl.*; ante, *w. acc.*; *adv.*, ante.
beg: **beg for**, petō, ere, ivi or ii, itus.
begin, initium faciō, ere, feci, factus; **began**, coepi, isse.
beginning, initium, initii, *n.*
Belgae, Belgae, ārum, *m. pl.*
best, optimus, a, um.
better, melior, ius.
between, inter, *w. acc.*; **be between**, intercēdō, ere cessi, cessurus.
beyond, praeter or ultrā, *w. acc.*
bind, dēligō, āre, āvi, ātus.
blame, culpō, āre, āvi, ātus; **reprehendō**, ere, i, hēnsus; **incūsō**, āre, āvi, ātus.
blot out, dēleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus.
boar: **wild boar**, aper, aprī, *m.*
boat, nāvis, is, *f.*; cymba, ae, *f.*
body, corpus, oris, *n.*
bold, audāx, ācis.
boldness, audācia, ae, *f.*
book, liber, brī, *m.*
both, uterque, utraque, utrumque; **both . . . and**, et . . . et.
boy, puer, eri, *m.*
brave, fortis, e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
break down, refringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus.

bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
 briefly, breviter.
 bright, clārus, *a, um.*
 bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus; portō,
 āre, āvī, ātus.
 bring down, dēferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.
 bring over, trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 bring to an end, cōnficiō, ere, fēcī,
 fectus.
 bring together, cōnferō, ferre, tuli,
 lātus; condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus;
 comportō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 bring upon, inferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.
 bring up the rear, agmen claudō, ere,
 clausī, clausus.
 broad, lātus, *a, um.*
 brother, frāter, tris, *m.*
 build, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus; aedificō,
 āre, āvī, ātus.
 building, aedificium, aedificī, *n.*
 but, sed, autem (*postpositive*); but
 that, quīn, *w. subj.*
 by, ā or ab, *w. abl.*; *abl. of means.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, aris, *m.*
 call, vocō, āre, āvī, ātus; appellō, āre,
 āvī, ātus.
 call together, convocō, āre, āvī,
 ātus.
 camp, castra, ōrum, *n. pl.*
 camp follower, cālō, ōnis, *m.*
 can, possum, posse, potui, —.
 captive, captīvus, ī, *m.*
 capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.
 care, cūra, *ae, f.*
 carry, portō, āre, āvī, ātus; ferō,
 ferre, tuli, lātus.
 carry on, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.
 cart, carrus, ī, *m.*

cast, iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus.
 cast down, dēciō, ere, iēcī, iectus.
 cast into, iniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus.
 cavalry, equitātus, ūs, *m.*; equitēs,
 um, *m. pl.*; cavalry battle, proe-
 lium equestre, *n.*; cavalry forces,
 cōpiae equestrēs, cōpiārum eque-
 strium, *f. pl.*
 Celts, Celtae, ārum, *m. pl.*
 centurion, centuriō, ōnis, *m.*
 certain, certus, *a, um.*
 certain: a certain one, quīdam,
 quaedam, quoddam (quiddam).
 chain, catēna, *ae, f.*
 chariot, currus, ūs, *m.*
 chief, princeps, ipis, *m.*
 chief command, summa, *ae, f.*
 chief men, principēs, um, *m. pl.*
 children, liberī, ōrum, *m. pl.*
 citizen, cīvis, is, *m. and f.*
 city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
 close array, in, cōnfertissimō agmine.
 cohort, cohors, ortis, *f.*
 cold, frīgus, oris, *n.*; cold weather,
 frīgora, um, *pl.*
 collect, comportō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 come, veniō, ire, vēnī, ventūrus.
 come out, ēveniō, ire, vēnī, ventūrus.
 come together, conveniō, ire, vēnī,
 ventus.
 command, imperium, imperī, *n.*;
 mandātum, ī, *n.*
 command: be in command of, prae-
 sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *w. dat.*
 commander, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperā-
 tor, ōris, *m.*; commander in chief,
 imperātor, ōris, *m.*
 concerning, dē, *w. abl.*
 conference, conloquium, conloquī, *n.*
 congratulate, grātulor, āri, ātus sum.

conquer, vincō, ere, vicī, victus ;
superō, āre, āvī, ātus.
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, ōnis, *f.*
conspire, coniūrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
consul, cōsul, ulis, *m.*
contend, contendō, ere, ī, tentus.
content, contentus, a, um.
continually, continenter.
continuous, continuus, a, um.
country, terra, ae, *f.*; finēs, ium,
m. pl.; native country, patria, ae,
f.; country (*opposed to city*), rūs,
rūris, *n.*
courage, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
crops of grain, frūgēs, um, *f. pl.*;
frūmenta, ōrum, *n. pl.*
cross, trānseō, ĩre, ĩi, ĩtus ; trāns-
gredior, ī, gressus sum.
cross over, trānseō, ĩre, ĩi, ĩtus.
cut down, interscindō, ere, scidi,
scissus.
cut off, interclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus.

D

daily, cotidiānus, a, um ; cotidiē,
adv.
danger, periculum, ī, *n.*
dangerous, periculōsus, a, um.
dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.
daughter, filia, ae, *f.*
day, diēs, ēī, *m.*; by day, interdiū ;
every day, cotidiē, in diēs ; to
the day, ad diem ; on the day
after that day, postridiē eius diēi.
decide, cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus.
decree, dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus.
deed: evil deed, malefċium, male-
fici, *n.*
deep, altus, a, um.
defend, dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsus.

defense, subsidium, subsidi, *n.*; prae-
sidium, praesidi, *n.*
delay, mora, ae, *f.*
Delos, Dēlos, ī, *f.*
demand, postulātum, ī, *n.*
demand, postulō, āre, āvī, ātus ;
flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātus ; poscō, ere,
poposcī, —.
dense, dēnsus, a, um.
depart, discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus.
deprive, prīvō, āre, āvī, ātus.
desire, cupiditās, ātis, *f.*; studium,
studī, *n.*
destroy, dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus.
destruction, interneciō, ōnis, *f.*
devastate, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus.
Diana, Diāna, ae, *f.*
difficult, difficilis, e.
disagreeable, molestus, a, um.
disaster, calamitās, ātis, *f.*
disgrace, malum, ī, *n.*; turpitūdō,
inis, *f.*
disposition, animus, ī, *m.*
district, pāgus, ī, *m.*
ditch, fossa, ae, *f.*
do, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus ; agō, ere,
ēgī, āctus ; *sign of present indica-
tive.*
door, porta, ae, *f.*
down from, dē, *w. abl.*
draw near, accēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus.
draw up, ĩnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus.
drive, agō, ere, ēgī, āctus ; pellō, ere,
pepulī, pulsus.
drive out, expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus.
Dumnorix, Dumnorix, ĩgis, *m.*
during, per, *w. acc.*; *acc. of duration
of time.*
dwell in, habitō, are, āvī, ātus ;
incolō, ere, coluī, —, *w. acc.*

E

each (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque.
 each (one), quisque, quaeque, quid-
 que.
 each day, cotidiē.
 eagerness, alacritās, ātis, *f.*
 easily, facile.
 easy, facilis, *e.*
 embassy, lēgatiō, ōnis, *f.*
 encamp, cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, sessūrus.
 encourage, cohortor, āri, ātus sum.
 endure, sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
 enemy, hostis, *is, m. and f., generally
 in pl.*
 enjoy, fruor, ī, fructus sum, *w. abl.*;
 ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*
 enough, satis.
 enroll, cōnscribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus.
 equip, ōrnō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 establish, cōfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 even: not even, nē . . . quidem.
 even up to, ūsque ad, *w. acc.*
 evening, vesper, erī, *m.*; at or
 toward evening, sub vesperum.
 everything, omnia, ium, *n. pl.*
 evil deed, maleficium, malefici, *n.*
 excel, praestō, āre, stitī, —; superō,
 āre, āvi, ātus.
 excellently, egregiē.
 extend, pertineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
 eye, oculus, ī, *m.*

F

fail, dēficiō, ere, fecī, fectus; dēsūm,
 deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus.
 faithful, fidus, *a, um.*
 false, falsus, *a, um.*
 famous, clārus, *a, um.*
 far, far away, longē.

farmer, agricola, *ae, m.*
 farmhouse, villa, *ae, f.*
 father, pater, tris, *m.*
 favor, faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *w. dat.*
 fear, timeō, ēre, uī, —; vereor, erī,
 itus sum.
 feel, sentiō, Ire, sēnsī, sēnsus.
 fertile, fertilis, *e.*
 few, pauci, *ae, a.*
 field, ager, agri, *m.*
 fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre; ferus, *a, um.*
 fiercely, ācriter.
 fifth, quīntus, *a, um.*
 fight, pugnō, āre, āvi, ātus; con-
 tendō, ere, tendī, tentus.
 finally, dēnique, dēmum.
 find, inveniō, ire, vēni, ventus.
 find out, cōgnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus.
 finish, cōficiō, ere, fecī, fectus.
 fire, ignis, *is, m.*
 five, quīnque, *indecl.*
 flee, fugiō, ere, fugī, fugitūrus.
 flight, fuga, *ae, f.*
 fodder, pābulum, ī, *n.*
 foe, inimicus, ī, *m.*
 follow, sequor, ī, cūtus sum.
 foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*; at the foot of,
 sub, *w. abl.*; on foot, pedibus.
 for, nam, enim, *postpositive; sign of
 dat.; sign of acc. of duration of time;
 sign of abl. of cause.*
 forced marches, magna itinera, mag-
 nōrum itinerum, *n. pl.*
 forces, cōpia, ārum, *f. pl.*
 ford, vadum, ī, *n.*
 forest, silva, *ae, f.*
 former, prīstinus, *a, um;* (*in con-
 trast with latter*) ille, *a, ud.*
 fortified, mūnitus, *a, um.*
 fortify, mūniō, ire, ivī, itus.

fortune, good fortune, fortuna, ae, *f.*
 fountain, fons, fontis, *m.*
 four, quattuor, *indecl.*
 free, liber, era, erum.
 free, liberō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 frequent, crēber, bra, brum.
 fresh, recēns, entis; integer, gra-
 grum; with fresh strength, integris
 vīribus.
 friend, amicus, *i, m.*
 friendly, amicus, *a, um.*
 friendship, amicitia, ae, *f.*
 frighten, terreō, ēre, uī, itus.
 from, ā or ab, *w. abl.*; dē, *w. abl.*;
 ex, *w. abl.*
 fury, furor, ōris, *m.*

G

garrison, praesidium, praesidī, *n.*
 gate, porta, ae, *f.*
 Gaul, Gallia, ae, *f.*
 Gauls, Gallī, ōrum, *m. pl.*
 general, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperātor,
 ōris, *m.*
 generosity, liberālitās, ātis, *f.*
 Germans, Germānī, ōrum, *m. pl.*
 Germany, Germānia, ae, *f.*
 girl, puella, ae, *f.*
 give, dō, dare, dedī, datus.
 give up, dēdō, ere, didī, ditus; trādō,
 ere, didī, ditus.
 go, eō, īre, ii or ivī, itūrus.
 go away, discēdō, ere, cessī, cessū-
 rus; abeō, īre, ii, itūrus.
 go out of, exeō, īre, ii, itūrus.
 goddess, dea, ae, *f.*
 good, bonus, a, um.
 grain, frūmentum, *i, n.*; grain sup-
 ply, rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmen-
 tāriae, *f.*

great, magnus, a, um.
 greatly, magnopere.

H

hasten, properō, āre, āvī, ātus; mā-
 tūrō, āre, āvī, ātus; contendō, ere,
 dī, tus.
 have, habeō, ēre, uī, itus; sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus, *w. dat. of possessor.*
 have to, sign of second periphrastic
 conjugation.
 he, is, ea, id; hic, haec, hoc; ille, a,
 ud.
 hear, audiō, īre, ivī, itus.
 height, altitudō, inis, *f.*
 help, auxilium, auxiliī, *n.*
 help, adsum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *w.*
dat.; iuvō, are, iūvī, iūtus, *w.*
acc.
 Helvetians (Helvetii), Helvētīi,
 ōrum, *m. pl.*
 high, altus, a, um.
 higher, superior, ius.
 hill, collis, is, *m.*; uphill, adversō
 colle.
 himself, see self.
 hinder, impediō, īre, ivī, itus.
 his, eius, huius, illius; *reflex.*, his
 (own), suus, a, um.
 hither, hūc; ceterior, ius.
 hold, teneō, ēre, uī, tus.
 hold back, retineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
 home, domus, ūs or ī, *f.*; at home,
 domī; home supplies, rēs do-
 mesticāe, rērum domesticārum, *f.*
pl.
 hope, spēs, speī, *f.*
 horse, equus, ī, *m.*
 horseman, eques, itis, *m.*
 hostage, obses, idis, *m. and f.*

hostile, inimicus, a, um.
 hour, hōra, ae, f.
 house, domus, ūs or ī, f.
 hundred, centum, *indecl.*
 hurl, iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus.
 hurl down, dēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus.
 hurling engine, tormentum, ī, n.

I

I, ego, meī.
 if, si; *sign of the abl. abs.*
 if not, nisi.
 immediately, statim.
 import, importō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 in, in, w. *abl.*
 incite, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 incredible, incrēdibilis, e.
 infantry forces, cōpiāe pedestrēs,
 cōpiārum pedestrium, f. *pl.*
 inflict, inferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, w. *dat.*
 and *acc.*
 influence, grātia, ae, f.
 inform, certiōrem faciō, ere, fēcī,
 certior factus.
 inhabit, incolō, ere, uī, cultus; ha-
 bitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 inhabitant, incola, ae, m. and f.
 injustice, iniūria, ae, f.
 inspire (in), iniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus,
 w. *dat* and *acc.*
 intend to, *sign of first periphrastic*
conjugation.
 into, in, w. *acc.*
 intrust, permittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
 invasion, incursiō, ōnis, f.
 island, insula, ae, f.
 it, is, ea, id.
 Italy, Italia, ae, f.
 itself, *see self.*

J

javelin, tēlum, ī, n.
 join battle, proelium committō, ere,
 misī, missus.
 join with or together, coniungō, ere,
 iūnxī, iūunctus.
 judge, iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 just, iūstus, a, um.
 justice, iūstitia, ae, f.

K

keep apart, distineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
 keep back, retineō, ēre, uī, tentus;
 contineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
 keep from, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus.
 keep in, contineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
 kept, *sign of imperfect of repeated*
action.
 kill, interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus; occidō,
 ere, cidī, cīsus.
 kindness, beneficium, beneficī, n.
 king, rēx, rēgis, m.
 know, intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus; sciō,
 ire, ivī, itus; cōgnōscō, ere, nōvī,
 nitus.

L

Labienuus, Labiēnus, ī, m.
 lack, inopia, ae, f.
 lack: be lacking, dēsum, deēsse, dē-
 fui, dēfutūrus, w. *dat.*
 lake, lacus, ūs, m.
 land, terra, ae, f.
 large, magnus, a, um.
 latter, hic, haec, hoc.
 law, lēx, lēgis, f.
 lay down, trādō, ere, didī, ditus.
 lay waste, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus.

lead, dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead across, trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead away, abdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead back, redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead down, dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead forward, prōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead out, ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead through, perdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead together, condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
leadership, prīncipātus, ūs, *m.*; summa, ac, *f.*
learn, cōgnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus.
leave, relinquō, ere, liquī, lictus.
leave behind, relinquō, ere, liquī, lictus.
left, sinister, tra, trum.
legion, legiō, ōnis, *f.*
less, minor, us.
lest, nē, *w. subj.*
let, *sign of imperfect or of hortatory subj.*
liberality, liberalitās, ātis, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, ī, *m.*
life, vīta, ac, *f.*
line of battle, aciēs, ēī, *f.*
line of march, agmen, inis, *n.*
little, parvus, a, um.
live, vīvō, ere, vixī, vīctūrus.
live in, incolō, ere, uī, cultus; habitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *w. acc.*
Loire, Liger, eris, *m.*
long, longus, a, um; magnus, a, um; *adv.*, diū; **long time**, diū.
longer, diūtius; **any longer**, diūtius.
lose, āmittō, ere, mīsi, missus.
love, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.

M

make, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus; efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus; **make a march**, iter faciō.
man, vir, virī, *m.*; (*human being*) homō, inis, *m. and f.*
manner, modus, ī, *m.*
many, multī, ac, a, *pl.*
march, iter, itineris, *n.*; **on the march**, ex or in itinere.
march, iter faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
marsh, palūs, ūdis, *f.*
meet, occurō, ere, curri, cursūrus, *w. dat.*
memory, memoria, ac, *f.*
merchant, mercātor, ōris, *m.*
messenger, nūntius, ī, *m.*
middle of, medius, a, um.
mile, mille passūs.
military affairs, rēs militāris, rei militāris, *f.*
mind, mēns, mentis, *f.*
mine, meus, a, um.
misfortune, malum, ī, *n.*
money, pecūnia, ac, *f.*
month, mēnsis, is, *m.*
more, magis, *adv.*; *sign of comp.*
most, plūrimus, a, um; *sign of superl.*
mount, mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus; com-moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
much, multus, a, um; *adv.*, multō, multum; **too much**, nimium.
must, *sign of second periphrastic conjugation.*
my, meus, a, um.

N

name, nōmen, inis, *n.*
native country, patria, ac, *f.*

near, *prope*, ad, *w. acc.*
 nearest, *proximus*, a, um.
 necessary, *neccesse*, *indecl.*
 neighboring, *finitimus*, a, um.
 neighbors, *finitimī*, ōrum, *m. pl.*
 Nervii, *Nerviū*, ōrum, *m. pl.*
 never, *numquam* or *numquam*.
 new, *novus*, a, um.
 next, *proximus*, a, um.
 night, *nox*, *noctis*, *f.*; by night, *noctū*.
 nine, *novem*.
 no, *nōn*, *w. verb repeated*. See 401.
 no (one), nobody, *nullus*, a, um ;
nēmō, *dat.* *nēmīni*.
 nobles, *nōbilitās*, ātis, *f.*
 not, *nōn*.
 not even, *nē . . . quidem*.
 not to, *nē*, *w. subj.*
 not yet, *nōndum*.
 nothing, *nihil*, *indecl.*

O

O, O, *interjection*.
 oar, *rēmus*, ī, *m.*
 occupy, *occupō*, āre, āvi, ātus.
 of, *sign of gen.*; *dē*, *w. abl.*; *sign of*
abl. of description; *sign of double*
dat.
 often, *saepe*.
 on, in, *w. abl.*
 one, *ūnus*, a, um; one . . . another,
alius . . . alius; the one . . . the
 other, *alter . . . alter*; to one
 another, *inter sē*.
 open, *apertus*, a, um.
 order, *mandātum*, ī, *n.*; (rank) *ōrdō*,
inis, *m.*
 order, *iubeō*, ēre, *iussī*, *iussus*, *w. in-*
finitive; *imperō*, āre, āvi, ātus, *w.*
subjunctive.

order: in order to or that, *ut*, *w. subj.*
 Orgetorix, *Orgetorix*, *igis*, *m.*
 other, *alius*, a, ud.
 ought, *dēbeō*, ēre, *uī*, *itus*; *sign of*
second periphrastic conjugation.
 our, *noster*, tra, *trum*; our men,
nostrī, ōrum, *m. pl.*
 out of, *ē*, *ex*, *w. abl.*
 outcry, *clāmor*, ōris, *m.*
 over, in, *w. abl.*
 over: be over, *praesum*, *esse*, *fui*,
futūrus, *w. dat.*
 own: his, her, its or their own,
suus, a, um.

P

pace, *passus*, ūs, *m.*
 pardon, *ignōscō*, ere, *nōvī*, *nōtus*, *w.*
dat.
 part, *pars*, *partis*, *f.*
 passionate, *irācundus*, a, um.
 peace, *pāx*, *pācis*, *f.*
 people, *populus*, ī, *m.*
 perceive, *intellegō*, ere, *lēxī*, *lēctus*.
 persuade, *persuādeō*, ēre, *suāsī*, *suā-*
sūrus, *w. dat.*
 pitch, *pōnō*, ere, *posuī*, *positus*.
 place, *locus*, ī, *m.*; *pl.*, *n.*, *loci*, ōrum.
 place, *pōnō*, ere, *posuī*, *positus*;
conlocō, āre, āvi, ātus; place in
 command of, *praeficiō*, ere, *feci*,
fectus, *w. acc. and dat.*
 plain, *campus*, ī, *m.*; *plānitēs*, ēī, *f.*
 plan, *cōnsilium*, *cōnsilī*, *n.*
 pleasant, *grātus*, a, um; *iūcundus*,
 a, um.
 pleasing, *grātus*, a, um.
 position, *locus*, ī, *m.*
 power, *potestās*, ātis, *f.*; royal
 power, *rēgnum*, ī, *n.*

powerful, potēns, entis.
 practice, exercitātiō, ōnis, *f.*
 praise, laudō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 precious, cārus, a, um.
 prefer, mālō, mälle, mālūi, —.
 prepare, parō, āre, āvī, ātus; com-
 parō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 present: be present, adsum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus.
 prevent, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus.
 pride, spīritus, ūs, *m.*
 private, privātus, a, um.
 promptly, dīligerter.
 property: all their property, sua
 omnia, *n. pl.*
 protection, praesidiū, praesidī, *n.*;
 fidēs, eī, *f.*
 provide, comparō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 province, prōvincia, ae, *f.*
 provisions, cōpiae, ārum, *f. pl.*; com-
 meātus, ūs, *m.*
 provoke, laccessō, ere, ivī, itus.
 prudent, prūdēns, entis.
 purpose: for the purpose of, ad,
w. acc. of gerund or gerundive.
 pursue, insequor, ī, cūtus sum.
 push up, agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.

Q

quantity, numerus, ī, *m.*
 queen, rēgīna, ae, *f.*
 quickly, celeriter.
 quite, *sign of comp. degree.*

R

race, gēns, gentis, *f.*
 rampart, vāllum, ī, *n.*
 rather, *sign of comp. degree.*
 read, legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.

reason, causa, ae, *f.*; for this rea-
 son, quā dē causā.
 receive, accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus.
 redoubt, castellum, ī, *n.*
 reduce, redigō, ere, ēgī, āctus.
 reēnforcement, subsidium, subsidī, *n.*
 refuse, recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 rejoice, gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum.
 remain, maneō, ēre, mānsī, sūrus.
 Remi, Rēmī, ōrum, *m. pl.*
 renew, renovō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 repeatedly, identilem.
 reply, respōsum, ī, *n.*
 reply, respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōn-
 sus.
 report, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
 resist, resistō, ere, stitī, —.
 rest of, reliquus, a, um.
 restore, restituō, ere, uī, ūtus.
 retain, retineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
 retreat, recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *w.*
reflex.
 return, redeō, īre, īi, itūrus; revertor,
 ī, versus sum; *in the perf. system,*
 revertī, reverteram, etc.
 revenue, vectigal, ālis, *n.*
 reward, praemium, praemī, *n.*
 Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, *m.*
 ride, *pass. of vehō*, ere, vēxī, vectus.
 ride on horseback, equō or equīs
 vehor, vehī, vectus sum.
 ride towards or up, adequitō, āre,
 āvī, ātus.
 right, dexter, tra, trum.
 ripe, mātūrus, a, um.
 river, flūmen, inis, *n.*
 river bank, ripa, ae, *f.*
 road, via, ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*
 Roman, Rōmānus, a, um.
 Rome, Rōma, ae, *f.*

rose, rosa, ac, *f*.
 royal power, rēgnum, *i, n*.
 rule, regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus.
 rumor, rūmor, ōris, *m*.
 run down, dēcurrō, ere, cucurrī *or*
 curri, cursūrus.

S

safety, salūs, ūtis, *f*.
 sail, nāvigō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 sailor, nauta, ac, *m*.
 sally, ēruptiō, ōnis, *f*.
 same, idem, eadem, idem.
 save, servō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 say, dicō, ere, dixi, dictus.
 say not, negō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 scarcity, inopia, ac, *f*.
 scout, explōrātor, ōris, *m*.
 sea, mare, is, *n*.
 seashore, ōra maritima, ōrac mari-
 timae, *f*.
 second, secundus, a, um.
 second : a second time, iterum.
 secretly, clam.
 see, videō, ēre, vidī, visus.
 seek, petō, ere, ivi, itus.
 seem, videor, ēri, visus sum.
 seize, occupō, āre, āvi, ātus ; capiō,
 ere, cēpi, captus.
 select, dēligō, ere, lēgi, lēctus.
 self, ipse, a, um, *intensive*; suī, *reflex*.
 senate, senātus, ūs, *m*.
 send, mittō, ere, misi, missus.
 send ahead *or* forward, praemittō,
 ere, misi, missus.
 Sequani, Sēquanī, ōrum, *m. pl.*
 serious, gravis, e.
 seriously, graviter.
 set on fire, incendō, ere, di, cēnsus.
 set out, proficiscor, i, fectus sum.

seventh, septimus, a, um.
 she, ea ; illa.
 shed, vinea, ac, *f*.
 shield, scūtum, *i, n*.
 ship, nāvis, is, *f*.
 short, brevis, e.
 show, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 sight, cōspectus, ūs, *m*.
 signal, signum, *i, n*.
 since, cum, *w. subj.*; *abl. abs.*
 sister, soror, ōris, *f*.
 six, sex, *indecl.*
 skill, exercitiō, ōnis, *f*.
 slope, vergō, ere, —, —.
 small, parvus, a, um.
 so, ita, tam ; so great, tantus, a, um.
 soldier, miles, itis, *m*.
 some (one), aliquis, qua, quid (quod) ;
 some . . . others, alii . . . alii ; some
 in one direction, some in another,
 alii aliam in partem.
 son, filius, filii, *m*.
 soon, mox ; as soon as, simul atque
or ac ; cum primum.
 spare, parcō, ere, peperci, parsūrus,
w. dat.
 speak, loquor, i, cūtus sum ; dicō, ere,
 dixi, dictus.
 spear, tēlum, *i, n*.
 speed, celeritās, ātis, *f*.
 spy, speculātor, ōris, *m*.
 standard, signum, *i, n*.
 standard bearer, signifer, eri, *m*.
 star, stella, ac, *f*.
 state, civitās, ātis, *f*.
 station, statuō, ere, uī, ūtus ; dispōnō,
 ere, posuī, positus.
 stature, statūra, ac, *f*.
 steep, arduus, a, um.
 storm, tempestās, ātis, *f*.

storm, oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātus.
strange, aliēnus, a, um; mirus, a, um.
strength, vis, (vis), *f.*; with fresh strength, integris viribus.
sudden, subitus, a, um.
suitable, idōneus, a, um.
sunset, sōlis occāsus, ūs, *m.*; at sunset, sub occāsū sōlis.
suppliant, supplex, icis, *m. and f.*
supplies from home, rēs domesticae, rērum domesticārum, *f. pl.*
supply, cōpia, ae, *f.*
surrender, dēditō, ōnis, *f.*
surrender, trādō, ere, didi, ditus.
surround, circumeō, ĩre, ĩi, itus; circumveniō, ĩre, vēni, ventus.
survive, supersum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
swift, celer, eris, ere.
sword, gladius, gladi, *m.*

T

take, capiō, ere, cēpi, captus.
take by assault or storm, expugnō, āre, āvi, ātus.
talk, loquor, ĩ, cūtus sum.
tall, magnus, a, um.
ten, decem, *indecl.*
tenth, decimus, a, um.
terms, condiciō, ōnis, *f.*
terrify, terreō, ĩre, uī, itus.
terrify greatly or thoroughly, perterreō, ĩre, uī, itus.
territory, finēs, ium, *m. pl.*
terror, terror, ōris, *m.*
than, quam; *abl. after comp.*
thanksgiving, supplicatiō, ōnis, *f.*
that, is, ea, id; ille, a, ud; *rel.*, quī, quae, quod; in order that, so that, ut, *w. subj.*; but that, quān, *w. subj.*; after verbs of fearing, nē,

w. subj.; that not, nē, ut nōn, *w. subj.*
their, suus, a, um, *reflex.*; eōrum, eārum, eōrum, *gen. pl. of is.*
themselves, see self.
then, tum, deinde.
there, adv., ibi; *expletive, not translated.*
therefore, itaque, quārē, quā dē causā.
they, illi, ae, a; ĩi, eae, ea.
thing, rēs, rei, *f.*
think, existimō, āre, āvi, ātus; putō, āre, āvi, ātus.
third, tertius, a, um.
thirty, trīgintā.
this, hic, haec, hoc.
thousand, mille; *pl.*, mīlia, ium, *n.*;
six thousand, sex mīlia, ium, *n.*
three, trēs, tria.
through, per, *w. acc.*
thus, ita.
till, dum, *w. subj.*; ūsque ad, *w. acc.*
time, tempus, oris, *n.*
time: long time, diū.
to, sign of *dat.*; ad, *w. acc.*; sign of *subj. of purpose.*
too, sign of *comp. adj. or adv.*
too much, nimium.
top, vertex, icis, *m.*
top of, summus, a, um.
toward (towards), ad, *w. acc.*
tower, turris, is, *f.*
town, oppidum, ĩ, *n.*
townsman, oppidānus, ĩ, *m.*
trench, fossa, ae, *f.*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
tribune, tribūnus, ĩ, *m.*
triple, triplex, plicis.
troops, cōpiae, ārum, *f. pl.*
trouble, negōtium, negōtī, *n.*

trust, cōfidō, ere, fīsus sum, *w. abl.*
turn aside, āvertō, ere, vertī, versus.
two, duo, ac, o.
two hundred, ducentī, ac, a.

U

unarmed, inermis, e.
under, sub, *w. acc. or abl.*
uneven, inīquus, a, um.
unfavorable, inīquus, a, um.
unfriendly, inimicus, a, um.
unharméd, incolumis, e.
uniformly, aequāliter.
unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis, e.
until (till), ūsque ad, *w. acc.*
unwilling: **be unwilling**, nōlō,
 nōlle, nōlūf, —.
uphill, adversō colle.
upon, in, *w. acc. and abl.*
us, *proper form of nōs*, nostrum.
use, ūsus, ūs, m.
use, ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*
used to, *sign of imperfect tense.*

V

valor, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
value: of less value, dēterior, ius.
vast, vāstus, a, um.
very, *sign of superl. adj. or adv.*
victory, victōria, ac, *f.*
village, vicus, ī, m.
violently, vehementer.
visit, adeō, ĩre, ĩi, ĩtus; adfīciō, ere,
 fēcī, fectus.

W

wage, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus; **wage**
war, bellum gerō; bellō, āre, āvī,
 ātus.

wall, mūrus, ī, m.; vāllum, ī, n.
war, bellum, ī, n.
warlike, bellicōsus, a, um.
warn, moneō, ēre, ūi, ĩtus.
waste: **lay waste**, vāstō, āre, āvī,
 ātus.
watch, vigilia, ac, *f.*
watchfully, diligenter; **vigilanter**.
way, via, ac, *f.*
we, nōs, nostrum, *pl.*
weapon, tēlum, ī, n.
weather, tempestās, ātis, *f.*
what, *rel.*, quī, quae, quod; *interrog.*,
 quis, quae, quid.
when, *rel. and interrog.*, cum, ubi.
where, *rel. and interrog.*, ubi, quō.
which, *rel.*, quī, quae, quod; *in-*
terrog., quis, quae, quid.
while, dum.
who, quī, quae; quis, quae.
whole, tōtus, a, um.
whose, cuius, *sing.*; quōrum, quārum,
 quōrum, *pl.*
why, cūr, quārē, quā dē causā.
wicked, improbus, a, um.
wide, lātus, a, um.
width, lātitudō, ĩnis, *f.*
wild animal, fera, ac, *f.*
willing: **be willing**, volō, velle,
 voluī, —.
willingly, libenter.
wine, vīnum, ī, n.
wing, cornū, ūs, n.
winter, hiemō, āre, āvī, ātus.
winter quarters, hiberna, ōrum, n. *pl.*
wise, sapiēns, entis.
wish, volō, velle, voluī, —.
with, cum, *w. abl.*; *abl. alone.*
within, ĩtrā, *w. acc.*; *sign of abl. of*
time.

without, sine, *w. abl.*

wonder at, mīror, āri, ātus sum.

wont : be wont, *perf. of cōnsuēscō,*
ere, suēvi, suētus ; soleō, ēre, itus
sum.

woods, silva, ac, *f.*

work, opus, eris, *n.* ; labor, ōris, *m.*

would that, utinam, *w. subj.*

wound, vulnus, eris, *n.*

wound, vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātus.

wretched, miser, era, erum.

Y

year, annus, ī, *m.*

yes, *see 401.*

yet, tamen.

yoke, iugum, ī, *n.*

you, tū, tui ; vōs, vestrum.

younger, minor, us.

your, tuus, a, um ; vester, tra, trum.

Z

zeal, studium, studī, *n.*

INDEX

(The numbers refer to the sections in the main part of the book.)

- Ablative Case, 41**
 Absolute, 236-240
 of Accompaniment, 180, 181
 of Cause, 265, 266
 of Degree of Difference, 459, 460
 of Description or Quality, 211, 212
 of Manner, 217, 218
 of Means or Instrument, 136, 137
 of Personal Agent, 167, 168
 of Place, 450, 451
 of Separation, 119, 120
 of Specification, 154, 155
 of Time at or within Which, 313, 314
 with Certain Deponents, 407, 408
 with Certain Prepositions, 42
 with **quidam** and Cardinals, 483, 484
- Accent, 14**
- Accompaniment, Ablative of, 180, 181**
- Accusative Case, 27-29**
 of Direct Object, 27-29
 of Duration of Time and Extent of Space, 289, 290
 of Place to Which, 452, 453
 Two Accusatives, 186, 187
- acer, declension of, 194**
- Active Personal Endings, 68, 72**
- Active Voice, 60**
- ador, conjugation of, 620-624**
- Adjectival Clauses of Purpose, 283, 284**
- Adjectives, 17, 48, 49, 51**
 Agreement of, 48, 49
 as Nouns, 188, 189
 Comparison of, 342-344, 360
 Dative with, 363, 364
 Irregular (**ŭllus, nŭllus, etc.**), 376
 of Order and Succession, 361, 362
 of the 1st and 2d Declensions in **-er, -a, -um**, 134, 135
- of the 1st and 2d Declensions in **-us, -a, -um**, 113, 114
 of the 3d Declension, 193
 of the 3d Declension of one termination, 196
 of the 3d Declension of two terminations, 195
 of the 3d Declension of three terminations, 194
 Tables of, 576-582
- Adverb, 17**
- Adverbial Clauses of Purpose, 283, 284**
 of Result, 369, 370
- Adverbs, formation and comparison of, 385-387**
- Agent, Ablative of the Personal, 167, 168**
 Dative of the, 551, 552
- Agreement of Adjectives, 48, 49**
 of Verb, 38, 39
- aliquis, declension of, 479, 590**
- alius and alter, 380, 381**
- Alphabet, 1-3**
- Answers, 401**
- Antecedent, 255**
- Base, 22**
- Cardinal Numerals, 287, 288**
 Ablative with, 483, 484
- Case, 23**
 Ablative, 41
 Accusative, 27-29
 Dative, 33, 34
 Genitive, 25, 26
 Locative, 454, 455
 Nominative, 23, 24
 Vocative, 43
- Causal Clauses with cum, 461, 462**

- Cause, Expressions of, 265, 266
certūrem facere, 501
 Classes of Pronouns, 319
 Classification of Sentences, 190
 Clauses of Purpose, Adjectival, 283, 284
 Adverbial, 283, 284
 Substantive, 295, 296
 of Result, Adverbial and Substantive,
 369, 370
 with *postquam*, *ubi*, *simul ac* and *ut*
 temporal, 490, 491
 Commands and Prohibitions, 527
 Comparatives and Superlatives, Special
 Uses of, 347, 348
 Comparison of Adjectives, 342-344, 360
 of Adverbs, 385-387
 Table of, 584
 Complementary Infinitive, 125, 126
 Completed Action, Tenses of, 204
 Compounds, Dative with, 473, 474
 of *sum*, 467
 Concessive Clauses with *cum*, 461, 462
 Conditional Sentences, 507
 Conditions Contrary to Fact, 514-516
 of Fact, 508, 509
 of Possibility, 521
 Conjugation, 59
 First, 70-80, 95, 207, 264
 Second, 83, 84, 95, 216, 264
 Third, 118, 166, 216, 264
 Third in *-ō*, 158, 171, 216, 264
 Fourth, 152, 153, 166, 216, 264
 Conjugations, Table of, 591-625
 Periphrastic, 549
 Conjunction, 17
 Constructions of Place, 450-455
cum, Ablative with, 180, 181
cum, Causal and Concessive, 461, 462
 Temporal, 493, 494
 Dative Case, 33, 34
 Double, 297, 298
 of the Agent, 551, 552
 of the Indirect Object, 33, 34
 of the Possessor, 160, 161
 with Adjectives, 363, 364
 with Compounds, 473, 474
 with Special Verbs, 415, 416
de, declension of, 57
 Declension, 20
 ā or First, 55-57
 o or Second, nouns in *-us* and *-um*,
 104-106
 o or Second, nouns in *-ins* and *-ium*,
 109, 110
 o or Second, nouns in *-er* and *-īr*,
 123, 124
 Third, Consonant Stems, 141-143,
 147-149
 I-Stems, 176-179
 General Rules for Gender, 306
 u or Fourth, 253, 254
 ē or Fifth, 312
 Tables of, 569-575
 Degree of Difference, Ablative of, 459,
 460
 Demonstrative Pronoun, 243
 is, 243-245
 hic, *ille*, *idem*, 421
 Deponent Verbs, 406
 Ablative with Certain, 407, 408
 Semi-deponents, 414
 Description, Genitive of, 212
 Description or Quality, Ablative of, 211,
 212
 Direct Object, 27-29
 Questions, 400
dō, conjugation of, 613-624
domus, declension of, 254
 Double Dative, 297, 298
duo, declension of, 288, 583
 Duration of Time, 289, 290

ego, declension of, 320
eō, conjugation of, 499
 Expressions of Cause, 265, 266
 of Purpose, 544
 Extent of Space, 289, 290

facilis, declension of, 195
ferāx, declension of, 196
ferō, conjugation of, 472, 534
filia, declension of, 57
fiō, conjugation of, 500
 Formation and Comparison of Adverbs,
 385-387
 Future Perfect Tense, 204
 Future Tense, 79, 80

- Gender**, 46, 47
 General Rules for, 306
Genitive Case, 25, 26
 of Description, 212
 of Possession, 25, 26
 of the Whole, 481, 482
 with Ordinals, 483, 484
Gerund, 426-429, 435, 436
Gerundive, 434-437
- hic**, declension of, 421
 How to translate, 102
- Idem**, declension of, 421
ille, declension of, 421
Imperative Mood, 526, 527, 534
Imperfect Tense, 77, 78
Indefinite Pronouns, 479, 480
Indicative Mood, 62
Indirect Discourse, 223-230, 354, 556-558
 Object, 33, 34
 Questions, 394, 395, 550
Infinitive, 63, 210, 353, 354
 as object, 127, 128
 as subject and predicate, 129, 130
 Complementary, 125, 126
Inflection, 20
Intensive Pronoun, 319, 421
Interjection, 17
Interrogative Pronoun, 392, 393
ipse, declension of, 421
Irregular Adjectives, 376
 Verbs, 472, 489, 499, 500, 534, 603-624
is, declension of, 244
iter, declension of, 307
- Locative Case**, 454, 455
- malō**, conjugation of, 489
 Manner, Ablative of, 217, 218
Means or Instrument, Ablative of, 136, 137
miŕle, declension of, 288, 583
Mood, 61
 Imperative, 526, 527, 534
 Indicative, 62
 Infinitive, 63, 210, 353, 354
 Subjunctive, 269
- nōlō**, conjugation of, 489, 534
Nominative Case, 23, 24
nōnne, num, -ne, 400
Noun, 17
Nouns, Adjectives used as, 188, 189
 1st Declension, 55-57
 2d Declension in **-us** and **-um**, 104-106
 2d Declension in **-ius** and **-ium**, 109, 110
 2d Declension in **-er** and **-ir**, 123, 124
 3d Declension, Consonant Stems, 141-143, 147-149
 3d Declension, I-Stems, 176-179
 General Rules for Gender, 306
 4th Declension, 253, 254
 5th Declension, 312
Number, 35, 67
Numerals, Cardinal, 287, 288
 Ablative with, 483, 484
 Ordinal, 311
 Genitive with, 483, 484
- Object**, 28
Optative Subjunctive, 271
Order and Succession, Adjectives of, 361, 362
Ordinal Numerals, 311
- Participial Stem**, 264
Participle, 64, 233
 Future, 434-437
 Perfect, 234
 Present, 197-199
Participles, Table of, 234, 595, 602
Parts of Speech, 17
Passive Personal Endings, 92
Passive Voice, 60
Perfect Endings, 206
 Infinitive, 210
 Participle, 234
 Stem, 205
 Tense, 204
Periphrastic Conjugations, 549
Person, 67
Personal Agent, Ablative of, 167, 168
Personal Endings of Active Voice, 68, 72

- Personal Endings of Passive Voice, 92
 Personal Pronouns, 320, 321
 Place, Ablative of, 450, 451
 Accusative of, 452-453
 Constructions of, 450-455
 Pluperfect Tense, 204
 Possession, Genitive of, 25, 26
 Possessive Pronouns, 246-248
 Possessor, Dative of the, 160, 161
possum, conjugation of, 355
 Potential Subjunctive, 271
 Predicate, 18
 Appositive, 96, 97
 Nominative, 96, 97
 Prepositions, 442-444
 with Ablative, 42
 Present Stem, 69, 75
 Tense, 66, 70
 Principal Parts, 74, 91
 Prohibitions, 527
 Pronoun, 17
 Pronouns, Classes of, 319
 Demonstrative, 243, 421
 Indefinite, 479, 480
 Intensive, 319, 421
 Interrogative, 392, 393
 Personal, 320, 321
 Possessive, 246-248
 Reflexive, 321
 Relative, 255-258
 Table of, 585-590
 Pronunciation, 4-6
prōsum, conjugation of, 467
 Purpose, Clauses of, 283, 284, 295, 296,
 544

 Quality, Ablative of, 211, 212
 Quantity, 12, 13
 Questions, Direct, 400
 Indirect, 394, 395, 550
qui, declension of, 255
quidam with Ablative, 483, 484
quis (indefinite), declension, of, 479
 (interrogative), declension, of, 393

 Reflexive Pronouns, 321
 Relative Pronouns, 255-258
 Result, Clauses of, 369, 370
 Rules of Syntax, 626-693

 Semi-deponent Verbs, 414
 Sentence, 16
 Sentences, Classification of, 190
 Separation, Ablative of, 119, 120
 Sequence of Tenses, 277-278
 Special Uses of Comparatives and Superlatives, 347, 348
 Specification, Ablative of, 154, 155
 Stem, 21
 Participial, 264
 Perfect, 205
 Present, 69, 75
 Subject, 18
 Subjunctive, 269
 in Indirect Questions, 394, 395, 550
 of 1st Conjugation, 276
 of 2d Conjugation, 282
 of 3d Conjugation, 294
 of 3d Conjugation in -6, 302
 of 4th Conjugation, 302
 of Characteristic, 377, 378
 of Purpose, 283, 284, 295, 296
 of Result, 369, 370
 Table of, 592, 599, 609, 614, 621
 Uses of, 271
 with Verbs of Fearing, 303
qui, declension of, 321
sum, conjugation of, 159, 208, 270
 Compounds of, 467
 Superlatives, 343, 344, 348
 Supine, 539-543
suis and **eius**, 247, 248
 Syllables, 7-11
 Synopsis, 173
 Table of Partial, 172

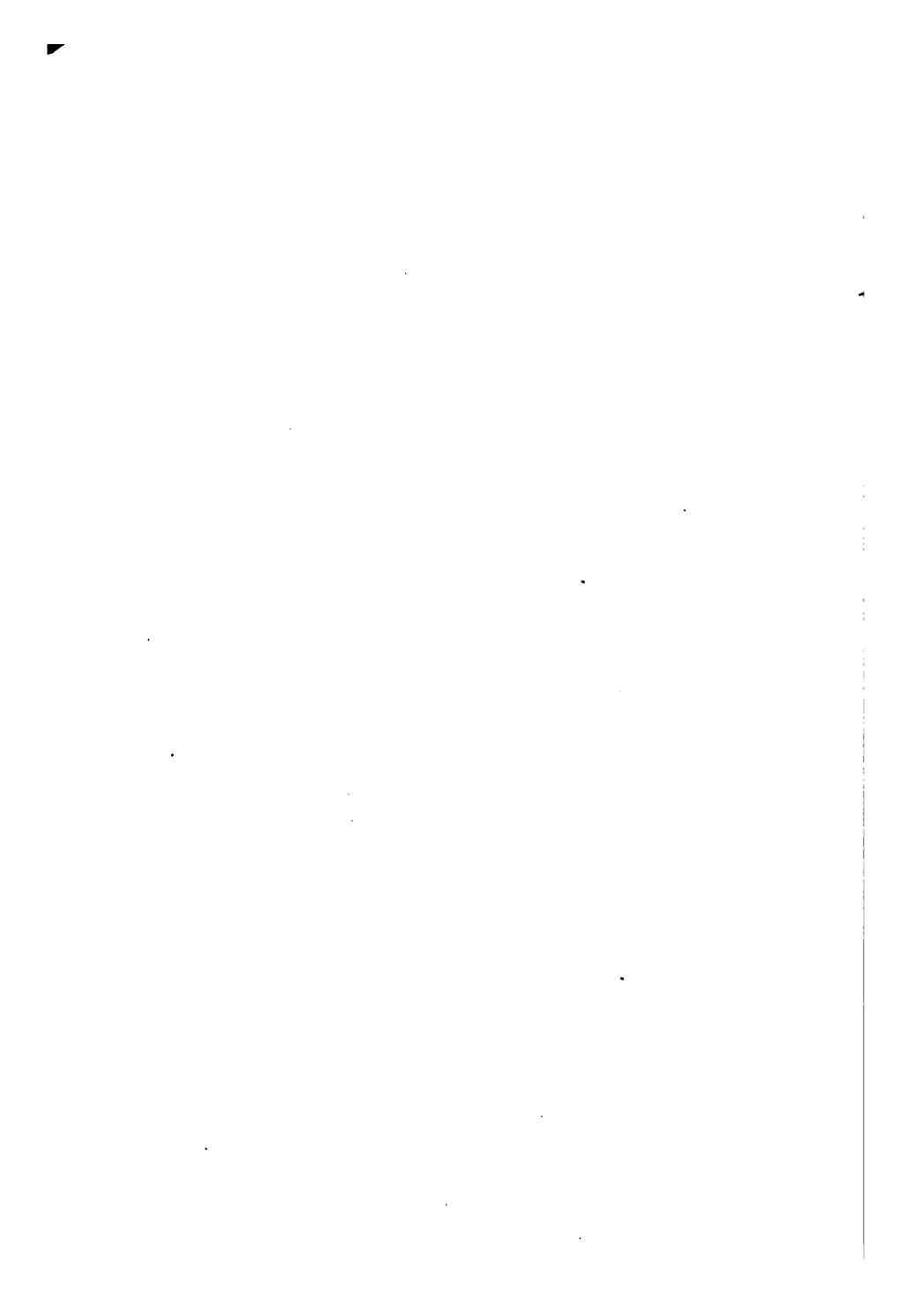
 Temporal Clauses, 490-494
 Tense, 65
 Future, 79, 80
 Future Perfect, 204
 Imperfect, 77, 78
 Perfect, 204
 Pluperfect, 204
 Present, 66, 70
 Time at or within Which, 313, 314
 Duration of, 289, 290
trēs, declension of, 288, 583
tū, declension of, 320

illus, declension of, 376
uter, declension of, 376
utinam with Subjunctive, 271
utor, use of, 407, 408

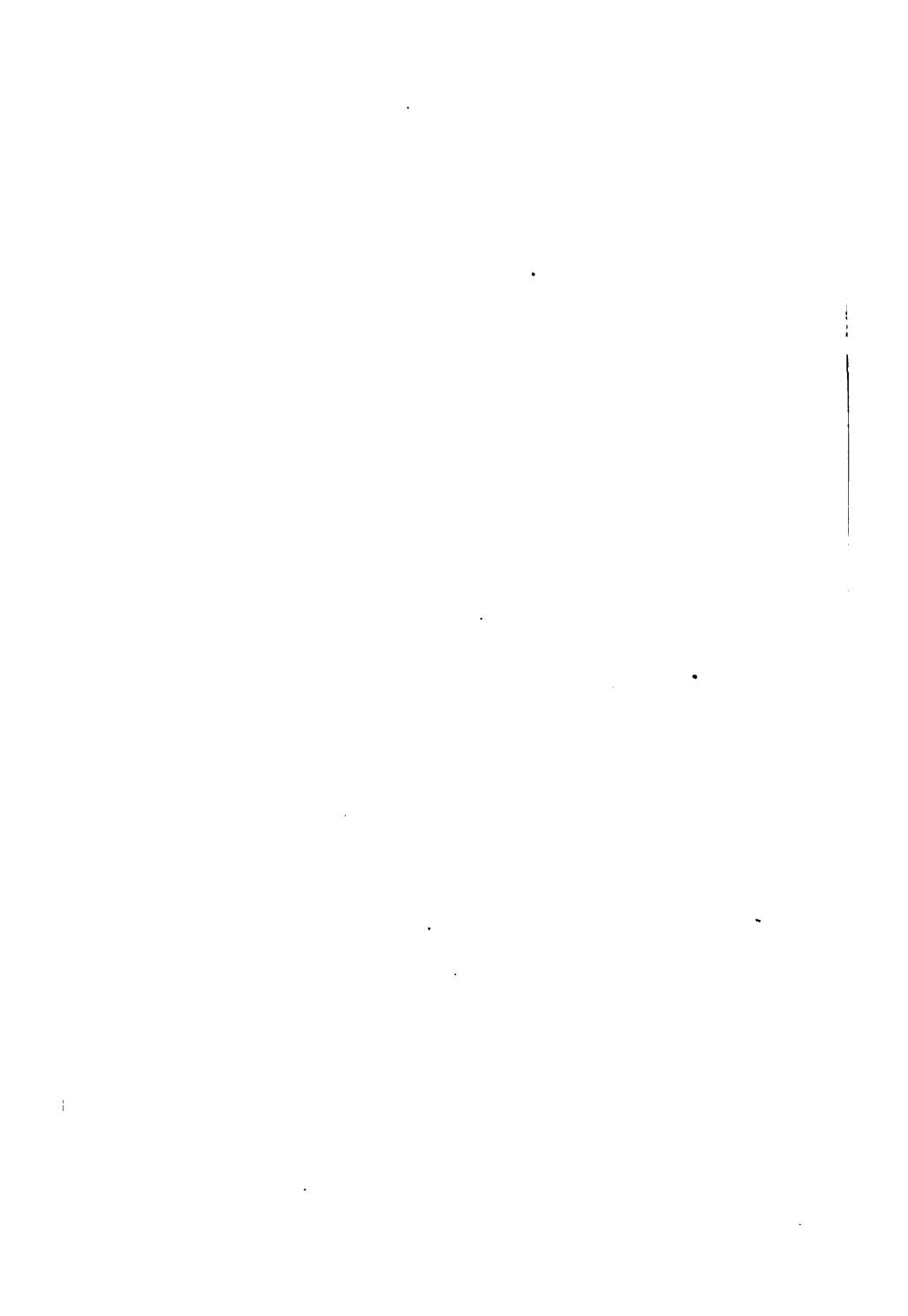
Verb, 17
vis, declension of, 307
Vocative Case, 43
Voice, 60
Volitive Subjunctive, 271
volō, conjugation of, 489

Whole, Genitive of the, 481, 482
Word Formation, 325-341

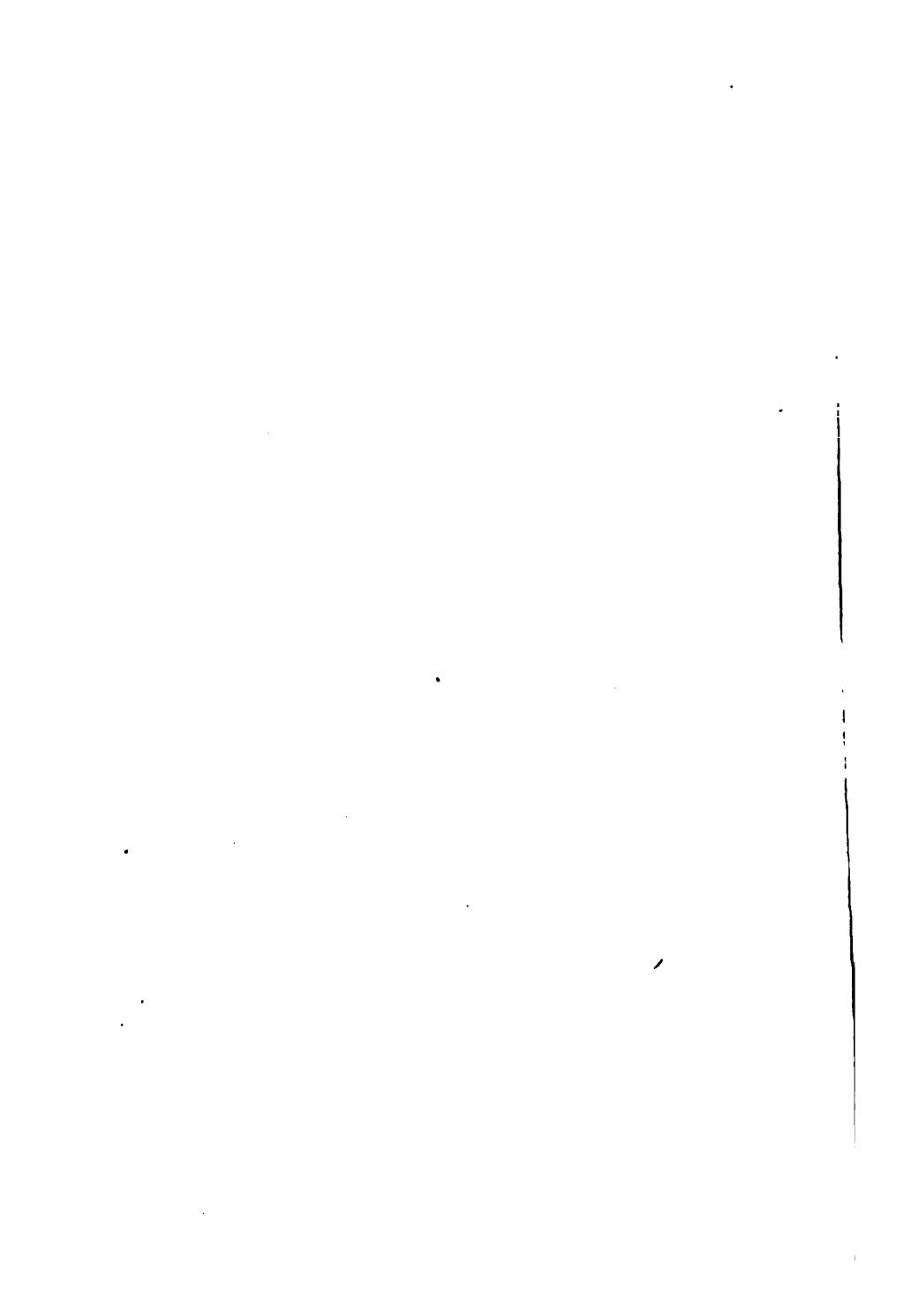
Word List,	100
I,	101
II,	140
III,	165
IV,	203
V,	275
VI,	318
VII,	375
VIII,	413
IX,	449
X,	506
XI,	533
XII,	568
Word Order,	85-88



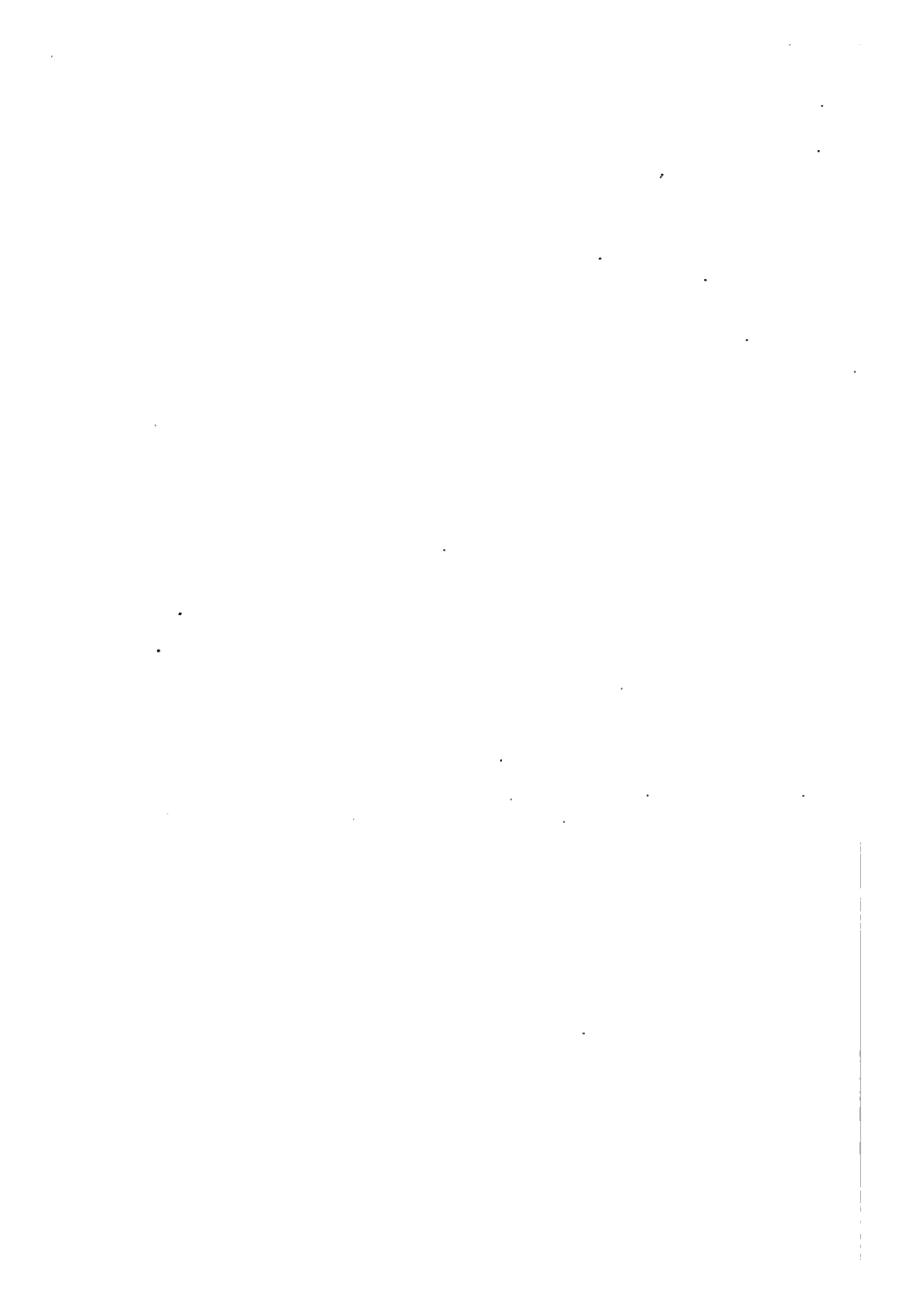
Vertical line on the left side of the page.











This textbook may be borrowed for two weeks, with the privilege of renewing it once. A fine of five cents a day is incurred by failure to return a book on the date when it is due.

The Education Library is open from 9 to 6.30 every week day except Saturday, when it closes at 4.

DUE

DUE

MAR 14 1924

